GAC MOTOR

Owner's Manual

New Second-generation GS8

Foreword

Thank you for choosing the GS8 from GAC MOTOR. To better enjoy the driving pleasure provided by your GS8 vehicle, please carefully read this User's Manual. The use instructions on the GS8 provided in this Manual will allow you to fully understand its operations and important notes. The proper use of the car will improve driving safety and increase service life.

The on-board Warranty Manual describes the warranty services provided by GAC MOTOR which you can enjoy, as well as regular maintenance of your GS8 vehicle. Read the manual thoroughly so you can understand your rights and responsibilities.

Please keep this Manual in your car for your reference.

Your dealer is dedicated to your satisfaction and will be pleased to answer any questions and concerns.

If you have any advice or comments, welcome to call GAC MOTOR customer service email: gacservice@gacmotor.com.

Thank you for your support and great kindness to GAC MOTOR. Wish you a happy driving!

Instructions About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of passengers, is very important. Therefore, operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you be familiar with relevant safety notes, we have provided operating steps and other instructions on signboards of the car and in this manual. These instructions alert you to warn potential hazards that could hurt you or passengers.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to list all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgment.

You will find these important safety instructions in a variety of forms, including:

- Safety Signboards - Attached to the vehicle.
- Safety Information - Words preceded by a safety warning symbol and one of the three signal words: Warning, Note , or Hint.

Instruction for important or possible personal injury.

Instruction for important or possible vehicle damage.

Instruction for potential risks that will not cause injury or damage.

This manual includes important safety information - please read it carefully.

The following safety precautions describe the safety features and correct use of the vehicle. We think all of them are very important.

◆ Be sure to wear the seat belt.

In all types of crashes, seat belts are protective devices that perform best. Air bags are designed to enhance safety provided by seat belts rather than take the place of seat belts. Thus even if the vehicle is equipped with air bags, make sure that you and other occupants always correctly wear seat belts.

◆ Protect all children

Children 12 years old and under must never ride in the front seat. They shall be correctly restrained in the second-row seats. For infants and babies, child safety seats shall be used. For older children, both child safety seats and three-point seat belts shall be used. When they can independently use the seat belts correctly, it is permitted not using the child safety seats.

◆ Note that air bag could cause danger

Air bags can save lives. However, deployment of air bags could result in serious or fatal injury to the occupant too close to them or improperly restrained. Air bags present greatest threats to infants, babies, and short adults. Therefore, be sure to observe all instructions and warnings contained in this manual.

◆ Never drive after drinking alcohol.

Never drive after drinking alcohol. Even drinking a little alcohol can suppress capability of dealing with changing situations, besides, it takes longer time for doing so. Never drive after drinking alcohol. Do not let your friends drive after drinking alcohol either.

◆ Observe road traffic safety regulations and be polite while driving.

◆ Pay due attention to driving safety.

Making calls or doing other things while driving could cause you to pay no attention to road conditions, other vehicles and pedestrians. This could result in accidents. Keep in mind that avoid distraction while driving

◆ Control the vehicle speed

Vehicle speed being too fast is one of the main causes for injury and death in crashes. Generally, the faster the vehicle speed, the greater the risk. Nonetheless, sometimes accidents with relatively slow vehicle speeds can also lead to serious injury or death. Regardless of the highest speed permitted by the regulation, never drive faster than the permission by actual road conditions for safety purpose.

◆ Keep the vehicle at a safe status

Tire burst or mechanical fault can be very dangerous. To reduce possibility of these problems, check tire pressures and conditions from time to time, and have the vehicle serviced periodically according to the Service Manual.

Pictorial References 1

Interior 1

Exterior 6

Engine compartment 8

1. Safety Operating Instructions 9

1.1 Safety Driving 9

1.1.1 General Instructions 9

1.1.2 Correct Sitting Position of Passengers 10

1.1.3 Pedal Area 12

1.2 Seat belt system 13

1.2.1 General instructions 13

1.2.2 Why Wear Seat Belts 16

1.2.3 Seat Belt 18

1.3 Airbag System 23

1.3.1 General Instructions 24

1.3.2 Front Seat Frontal Airbag 27

1.3.3 Front Seat Side Airbags (Apply to Certain Models) 29

1.3.4 Side Curtain Airbag (Apply to Certain Models) . 31

1.3.5 Knee airbag (Apply to Certain Models). 32

1.3.6 Cases When Airbags Could Deploy: 34

1.3.7 Cases When Airbags Could Not Deploy 35

1.4 SafetyRules for Children 37

1.4.1 General Instructions 37

1.4.2 Child Seat 38

1.4.3 Install a Child Seat Properly 41

1.5 Dangerous Exhaust Gases 46

1.6 Safety Labels 47

Operating System and Equipment 49

2.1 Cab 49

2.1.1 Instrument Cluster 49

2.1.2 Indicator Light 53

2.1.3 Steering wheel 60

2.2 Start and Stop Vehicle 70

2.2.1 Smart Key 70

2.2.2 Emergency Mechanical key 78

2.2.3 Central Locking System 79

2.2.4 Door 85

2.2.5 Hatchback Door....86
2.2.6 Electric Windows....91
2.2.7 Electric Sunroof....94
2.2.8 Engine Hood....100
2.2.9 Basic Operations of Anti-Theft on Vehicle Body102
2.3 Headlights and Visual Field....103
2.3.1 Exterior Lights....103
2.3.2 Interior Light....109
2.3.3 Windshield Wiper....113
2.3.4 Windshields....116
2.3.5 Rearview Mirror....117
2.3.6 View....122
2.4 Seats and Storage Equipment....123
2.4.1 Importance for Adjusting the Seat Correctly...123
2.4.2 Headrest....124
2.4.3 Front Seats....127
2.4.4 The Second/Third Row Seats....135
2.4.5 Storage Equipment....137
2.4.6 Cigarette Lighter/Power Outlet....143
2.4.7 Mobile Phone Wireless Charging System....145
2.4.8 Trunk....148
2.4.9 Luggage Rack....150
2.4.10 Accessories and Modifications....151
2.5 A/C System....153
2.5.1 General Instructions....153
2.5.2 Control Panel....154
2.5.3 Air Outlets....167
2.6 Sound System....168
2.6.1 Control Panel....168
2.6.2 Control Buttons on the Steering Wheel....170
2.6.3 Basic Operations....172
2.6.4 Radio....176
2.6.5 USB Play....180
2.6.6 Bluetooth....189
2.6.7 iPod Play....196
2.6.8 System Settings....197
2.6.9 Vehicle Setting....204
2.6.10 Voice....211
2.6.11 Precautions for Product Use....212

3. Driving Directions.....213

3.1 Starting and driving.....213

3.1.1 Start Switch 213

3.1.2 Starting the Engine.....215

3.1.3 Shutting Down the Engine.....216

3.1.4 Gear and Driving Descriptions 218

3.1.5 Electronic Parking Brake System (EPB) 225

3.2 Service Electronic Brake System.....231

3.2.1 Anti-lock Braking System (ABS).....231

3.2.2 Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD) 233

3.2.3 Vehicle Body Electronic Stability Program(ESP)234

3.2.4 Traction Control System (TCS) 237

3.2.5 Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA).....238

3.2.6 Hill Hold Control System (HHC) 239

3.2.7 Downhill Assist Control System (HDC).....240

3.3 Driving Assistance System.....242

3.3.1 Smart Start/Stop System.....242

3.3.2 Cruise Control System 246

3.3.3 Adaptive cruise control system.....249

3.3.4 Front Collision Warning System 258

3.3.5 Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEB)260

3.3.6 Lane Departure Warning System 264

3.3.7 Lane Change Assist System 267

3.3.8 Tire Pressure Monitoring System 269

3.4 Reverse Assist System 271

3.4.1 Reversing Radar System 271

3.4.2 Reversing rear-view system 275

3.4.3 Panorama parking system.....279

3.5 Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 281

3.6 Smart Four-Wheel Drive System.....282

3.7 All Terrain Feedback Control System (ATS) 285

3.8 Driving Skills.....287

3.8.1 Check of Driving Safety.....287

3.8.2 Driving During Running-in Period.....288

3.8.3 Essentials for Driving underVarious Conditions290

3.8.4 Efficient Use of the Vehicle.....292

3.8.5 Fire prevention 293

Contents

4.Usage and Maintenance.....295

4.1 Maintenance Instructions 295

4.2 Interior Maintenance..... 296

4.3 Exterior Maintenance 298

4.4 Checking and Adding Fluids 304

4.4.1 Fuel oil.....304

4.4.2 Engine Oil.....307

4.4.3 Coolant.....312

4.4.4 Windshield Washing Liquid and Wiper Blade.316

4.4.5 Brake Fluid 318

4.4.6 Battery 321

4.5 A/C Filter..... 324

4.6 Replacing Bulbs..... 325

4.7 Wheels 334

4.8 Tire Chain 342

4.9 Maintenance Instructions for Car Body Anti-Theft 343

5.Technical data.....345

5.1 Identi ication Numbers..... 345

5.2 Vehicle Parameters..... 347

6.Handling of Accident.....355

6.1 Vehicle Tools and Spare Tire 355

6.2 Usage of Warning Triangle 358

6.3 Replacing the Flat Tire 359

6.4 Fuse 363

6.4.1 Fuses in the Instrument Panel Fuse Box 365

6.4.2 Fuse in the Fuse Box of Engine Compartment368

6.5 Emergency Start 371

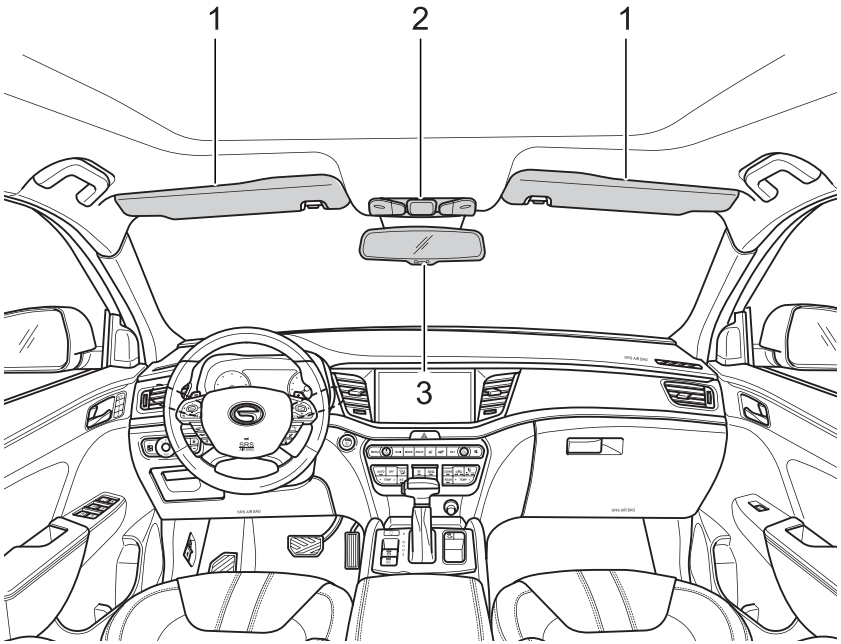
6.6 Emergency Towing 373

7.Type Approval Information 379

7.1 Type Approval Number..... 379

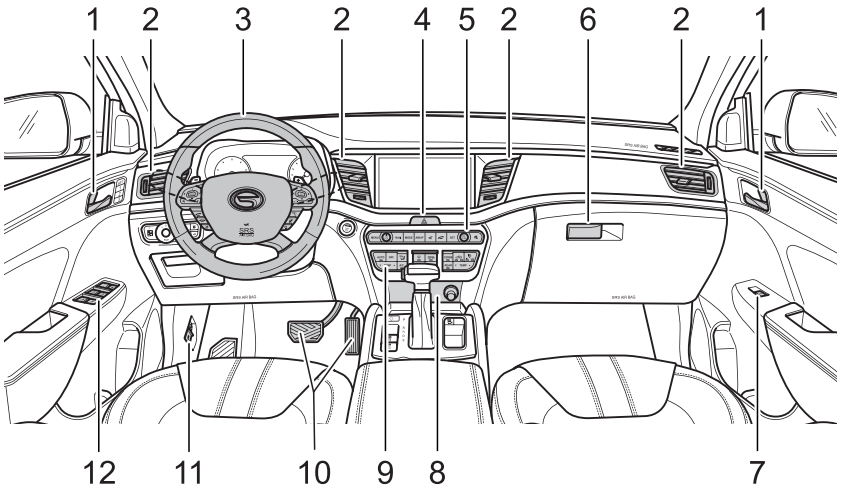
7.2 Type Approval Information 380

Interior



1. Sun visor (Please refer to page 124)
2. Front ceiling lights (Please refer to page 111)
   – Electric sunroof switch (Please refer to page 96)
   – T-Box emergency contact button (Please refer to page 229)
3. Automatic anti-glare interior rear-view mirror (Please refer to page 119)

Pictorial References

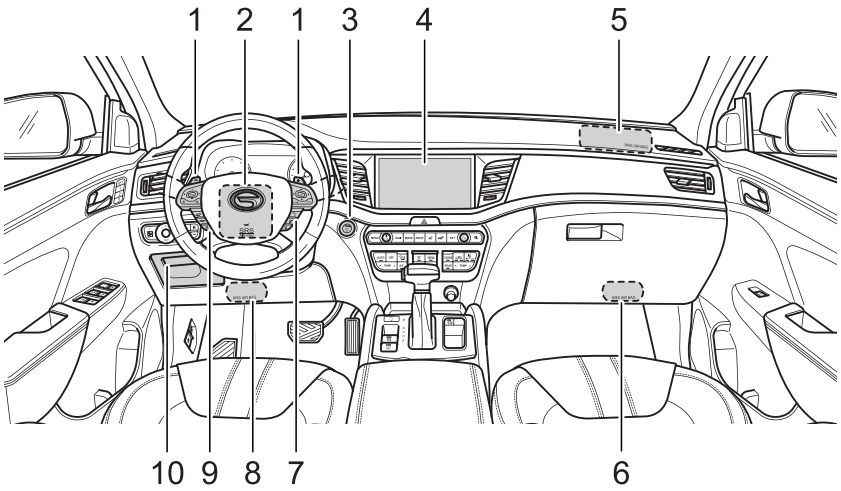


1. Door latch and door inner handle (Please refer to page 83)
2. Air Outlets (Please refer to page 169)
3. Steering wheel (Please refer to page 62)
4. Hazard warning light switch (Please refer to page 109)
5. Control panel of audio system (Please refer to page 170)
6. Handle of glove box on the front passenger’ s side (Please refer to page 142)
7. Passenger side electric window button (Please refer to page 94)
8. Central console cigarette lighter/power outlet (Please refer to page 145)

– Jack socket for USB (Please refer to page 143)

9. Control panel of air conditioning system (Please refer to page 155)
10. Pedal area (Please refer to page 14)
11. Engine hood open handle (Please refer to page 102)
12. Electric window button on the driver's side (Please refer to page 93)

– Central door locking button (Please refer to page 84)



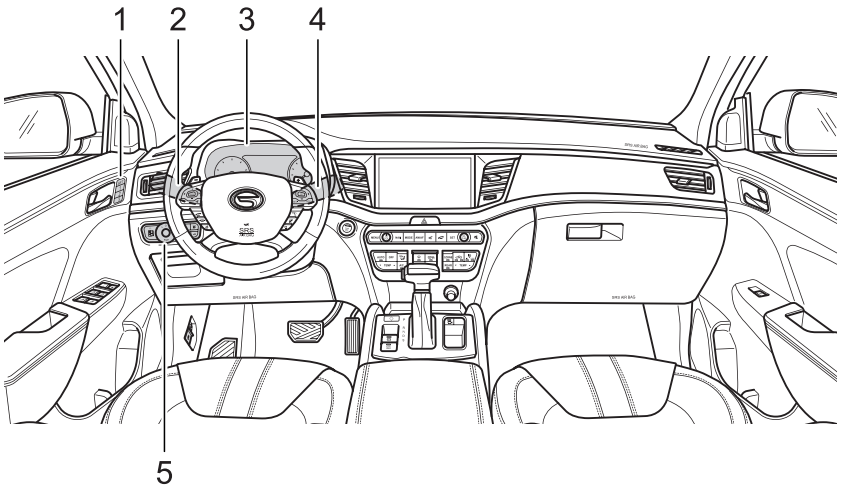
1. Gearshift paddle on steering wheel (Please refer to page 64)
2. Driver front airbag (Please refer to page 29)

– Gearshift paddle on steering wheel (Please refer to page 63)

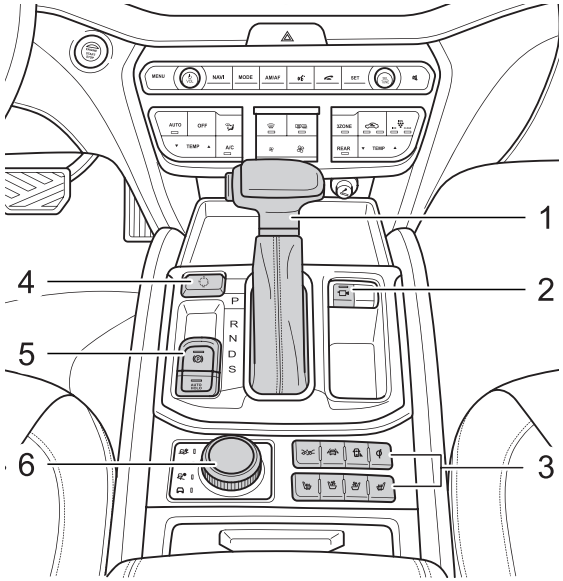
3. Start switch (Please refer to page 257)
4. Audio system display screen (Please refer to page 170)
5. Front occupant front airbag (Please refer to page 29)
6. Front occupant knee airbag (Please refer to page 34)
7. Steering wheel button (right) (Please refer to page 64)
8. Driver knee airbag (Please refer to page 34)
9. Steering wheel button (left) (Please refer to page 63)
10. Storage shelf for lower panel in the cab (Please refer to page 139)

– Instrument panel fuse box (Please refer to page 411)

Pictorial References

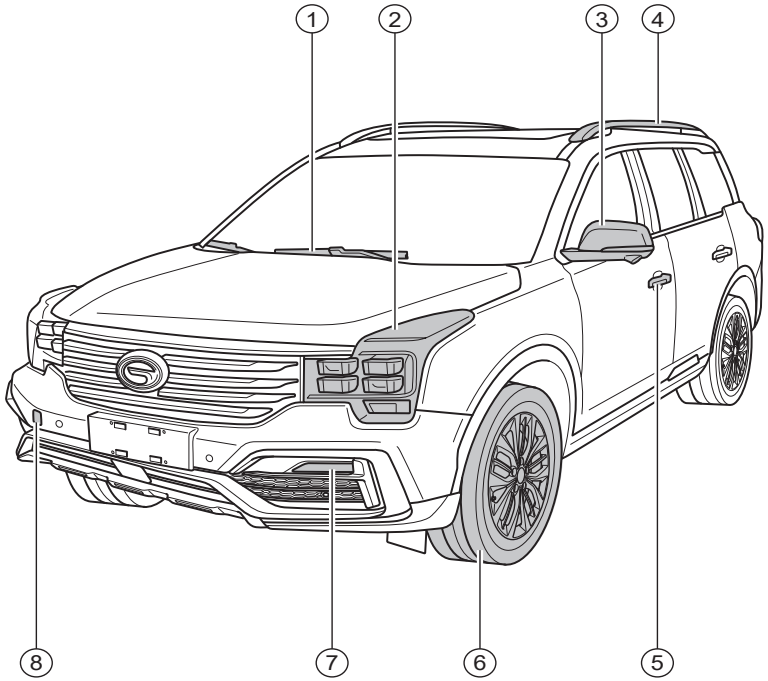


1. Seat / Exterior rear-view mirror memory system button (Please refer to page 133)
2. Light combination switch (Please refer to page 105)
3. Instrument cluster (Please refer to page 51)
   – Indicator light (Please refer to page 55)
4. Wiper combination switch (Please refer to page 115)
5. Keypad:
   – Exterior rear-view mirror adjusting knob (Please refer to page 120)
   – Smart Start/Stop system OFF button (Please refer to page 286)
   – Downhill assist control system button (Please refer to page 284)
   – Oil tank lid opening button (Please refer to page 352)
   – Electronic stability program (ESP) OFF button (Please refer to page 278)
   – Reversing radar system button (Please refer to page 319)
   – Hatchback door release button (Please refer to page 88)
   – Headlight height manual adjustment knob (Please refer to page 108)

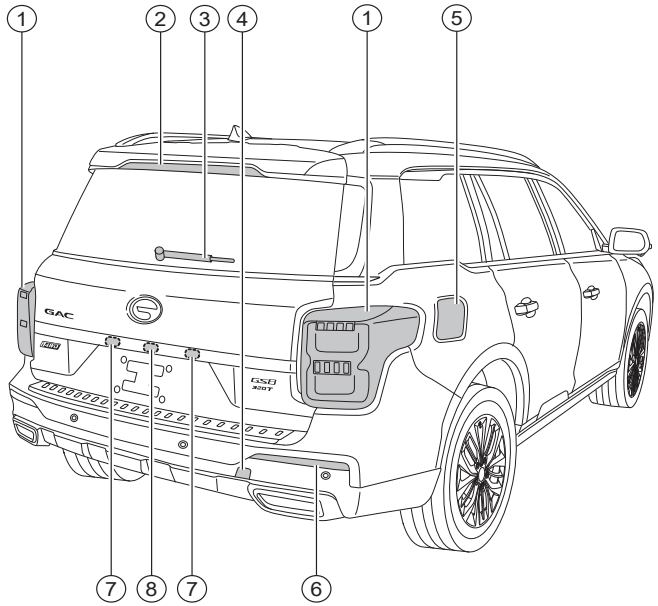


1. Transmission shift lever (Please refer to page 262)
2. Panorama parking system button (Please refer to page 325)
3. Keypad:
   - Froward collision warning system button (Please refer to page 302)
   - Active brake assist system button (Please refer to page 304)
   - Lane departure warning system button (Please refer to page 308)
   - Mobile phone wireless charging system button (Please refer to page 147)
   - Seat heating button (Please refer to page 132)
   - Seat ventilation button (Please refer to page 133)
   - Lane change assist system button (Please refer to page 315)
4. Driving mode button (Please refer to page 264)
5. Electronic parking brake system button (Please refer to page 269)
6. All-terrain response system knob (Please refer to page 333)

Exterior



① Replace the front windscreen wiper
② Front assembled lamp
- Turn on the light
- Replace the lamp bulb
- Specification of the bulb of the front assembled lamp
③ Outer rearview mirror
- Side turn signal light
- Specification of the side turn signal light
④ Roof rack
⑤ Keyless entry
- Door lockhole
⑥ Wheel
⑦ Front fog lamp
- Specification of the front fog lamp
⑧ Front traction



① Rear assembled lamp

- Specification of the lamp bulb

② High-position brake light

- Specification of the high-position brake light

③ Replace the rear wiper blade

④ Rear traction

⑤ Fuel tank cover plate

⑥ Rear fog lamp

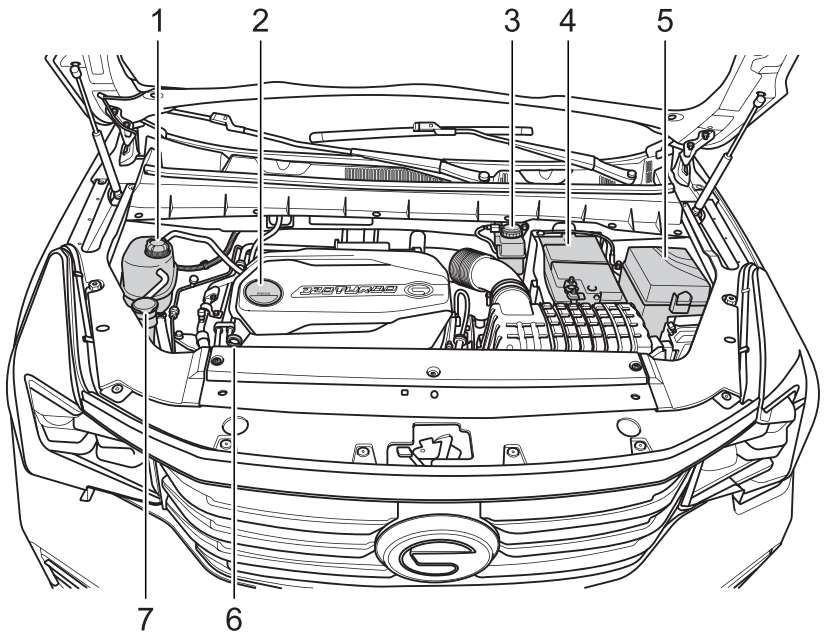
- Specification of the rear fog lamp

⑦ License plate lamp

-Specification of the license plate lamp

⑧ Hatch-back door opening key

Engine compartment



1. Engine coolant expansion tank (Please refer to page 361)
2. Engine oil filler cap (Please refer to page 357)
3. Brake fluid tank (Please refer to page 366)
4. Battery (Please refer to page 369)
5. Engine compartment fuse box (Please refer to page 411)
6. Engine oil dipstick (Please refer to page 356)
7. Windshield washing liquid storage tank (Please refer to page 364)

1.1 Safety Driving

1.1.1 General Instructions

This section describes important information, operating essentials, recommendations and safety precautions for safety driving. For your safety and the safety of your passengers, please read it carefully and observe the relevant regulations.

Warning

Keep this Owner's Manual in your vehicle. Please make sure the Manual stays with the vehicle if you lend or sell it to the next owner. It is an integral part of the vehicle.

You should do the following inspections before driving your vehicle:

- Make sure that all car lights are under normal working condition.
- Ensure sufficient fuel level.
- Ensure sufficient coolant level
- Ensure sufficient brake fluid level
- Ensure sufficient windshield washer fluid level
- Make sure that tire pressure is under normal condition.
- Make sure all windows are clean and unobstructed.
- Make sure that no items obstruct the pedal movement in the footwell.
- Adjust the seats, headrest and rear view mirrors according to height and body type.
- Make sure the child is protected with suitable child seat and properly worn the seat belt.
- Wear your seat belt correctly. Check that your passengers have fastened their seat belts.

Note

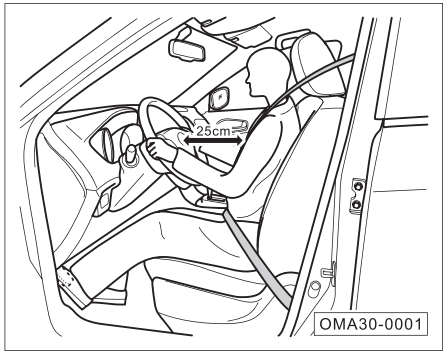
- Do not let yourself be distracted from driving because of external factors.
- Do not drive your vehicle when your reaction capacity weakens. Medicines, alcohol, drugs and other will impair your reaction capacity.
- Follow the traffic laws and speed limits strictly.

1.1.2 Correct Sitting Position of Passengers

Correct Sitting Position of the Driver

Correct driving position has a direct influence on driving safety and fatigue.

For the safety of yourself and the passenger and to reduce the risk of accidental injuries and deaths, the driver is recommended to do the following operation:



– Adjust the seat in forward and backward direction. Make your leg slightly bent, and take active operation to accelerator pedal and brake pedal.

– Adjust the seat backrest to proper position, so that your back can fully contact with the seat backrest.

– Adjust the headrest properly (Please refer to page 126).

– Adjust steering wheel to ensure that the distance between steering wheel and your breast should not be less than 25cm.

– Wear seat belts properly (Please refer to Page 20)

⚠ Warning

Incorrect driving position can lead to the following serious consequences:

- Adjusting the steering wheel until it faces your chest, which can effectively reduce the injury caused by an inflating front airbag.
- If your chest is too close to the steering wheel, you cannot get effective protection from airbags, and can be seriously injured by an inflating front airbag.
- Your hands should always hold the steering wheel outside edge (at Point 9 and Point 3) to ensure you can see all instruments and indicator lights on the instrument cluster.
- While driving, do not recline the backrest too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting position to avoid injury caused by emergency braking.

Correct Sitting Position of Front Seat Passenger

To ensure the safety of front seat passenger and reduce the risk of accidental injury and death, front seat passenger should do the following operations:

– The front seat passenger should adjust the seat as far as possible, leave suitable distance between his/her chest and the instrument panel, so as to get the most safety protection when airbag is triggered.
– Adjust the headrest properly (Please refer to page 126).
– Adjust the seat backrest to proper position, so that your back can fully contact with the seat backrest.
– Wear seat belts properly (Please refer to Page 20).
– Keep feet in the footwell in front of the front seat.

⚠ Warning

Incorrect sitting position of the front seat passenger can lead to serious consequences:

- If the front passenger sits too close to the instrument panel, he/she cannot get effective protection from airbags.
- While driving, do not allow the front seat passenger to put his/her feet on the instrument panel, outside the window or on the seat. But always keep his/her feet in the footwell. Otherwise, he/she can be injured easily during emergency braking or in a crash.
- While driving, do not recline the backrest too far. Wear the seat belt correctly and keep correct sitting position to avoid injury caused by emergency braking.

Correct Sitting Position of Rear Seat Passengers

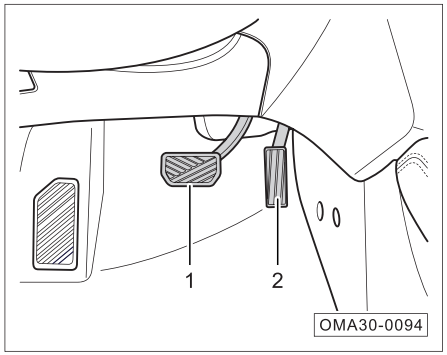
To ensure the safety of rear seat passengers and reduce the risk of accidental injuries and deaths, rear seat passengers should do the following matters:

– Adjust the headrest properly (Please refer to Page 126).
– Sit upright and make sure the back contacts with seat back as much as possible.
– Keep feet in the footwell in front of the rear seat.
– Wear seat belts properly (Please refer to Page 20).
– Whenever an infant or child rides in your vehicle, take appropriate measures in accordance with the relevant provisions, e.g., using a suitable child seat to restrain the infant or child (Please refer to Page 40).

⚠ Warning

Sitting improperly or wearing the seat belts improperly can increase the chance of injury during an accident.

1.1.3 Pedal Area



1. Brake pedal
2. Accelerator pedal

– Before driving, make sure all the pedals can be depressed to their extreme position all the way.
– Make sure all the pedals can return to the original position without obstruction.

When there is a fault in the brake circuit, the brake pedal needs a larger travel to stop the vehicle.

Warning

The pedal being obstructed may cause serious accidents and even damage to people.

- Do not place any objects in the driver's footwell. Otherwise, objects may slide into pedal area and hinder the driver's operation to the pedal. If emergency brake or urgent cases occur, the driver can't operate brake pedal, which may cause accidents.

Wear Proper Shoes

The driver must wear a pair of fit shoes to feel the pedal movement sensitively.

Foot Mat on the Driver's Side

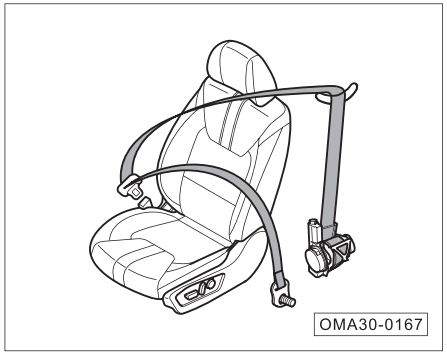
The foot mat should be fixed in the footwell, and cannot interfere with the pedal movement.

Warning

- Make sure the foot mat is fixed in the driver's footwell securely.
- Do not lay other mat or covering on the foot mat installed in place. Doing so can shrink the pedal travel, hindering the pedal movement.
- After cleaning the foot mat removed from the vehicle, be sure to re-fix it during re-installation.

1.2 Seat belt system

1.2.1 General instructions



Wearing a seat belt properly can effectively reduce the risk of serious injury or death in a crash.

Note

For your and passengers' safety, be sure to wear seat belts when the vehicle is moving. In the process of using your vehicle, read carefully and comply with all information and warnings in this chapter, and wear your seat belt correctly.

Warning

Not wearing a seat belt or not wearing a seat belt properly increases the risk of serious injury or death in a crash.

- When the vehicle is running, be sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly and keep correct sitting position, which can greatly reduce personal injuries during emergency braking or an accident.
- Pregnant women and disabled people must wear the seat belts properly as well.
- When an infant or child rides in your vehicle, be sure to use the suitable child safety seats to restrain the infant or child according to his/her body type.

Warning

- Make sure seat belts are in place and positioned properly.
- Two people (even two children) should never use the same seat belt.
- Make sure the seat belts are in good condition. Always prevent the seat belts from being damaged or stuck or rubbing sharp edges.
- To wear your seat belt properly, try not to wear loose and bulky clothing as far as possible (if you have worn one, take off it.) to ensure the seat belt to fit your body.
- Keep the seat belt system clean and in good condition. Never get foreign matter or liquid into the buckles.
- Never remove, maintain or adjust the seat belts by yourself.

Seat Belt System Components

Seat belt system in the vehicle consists of three-point seat belts and seat belt indicator light on the instrument cluster (all the seats).

Seat Belt Indicator Light

Driver seat belt indicator light （ ）

If the driver has not worn the seat belt with the starter switch at the “ON” position, the driver seat belt telltale on the instrument cluster illuminates and text appears to remind the driver to wear the seat belt.

Front passenger seat belt indicator light （ ）

If the front occupant has not yet worn the seat belt with the starter switch at the “ON” position, the front occupant seat belt telltale on the instrument cluster illuminates and text appears to remind the front occupant to wear the seat belt.

Note

Before starting driving, check the front seat and make sure there is no heavy on the seat to prevent the system from mistaking that there is occupant on it and giving a false alarm.

When the start switch is in the "on" position and the vehicle speed is less than 20km/h, if the driver or front passenger does not fasten his/her seat belt, the corresponding indicator light on the instrument cluster will flash about 6 seconds and then stay on.

Note

When the seat belt device fails, the indicator light will also flash about 6s and then stay on. In this case, go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your vehicle checked and repaired.

When the start switch is in the "on" position and the vehicle speed is equal or more than 20km/h, if the driver or the front passenger does not fasten the seat belt, the corresponding indicator light on the instrument cluster will flash about 20 seconds and then stay on, and the beeper also sounds until the front passenger does.

Note

When the seat belt device fails, the indicator light will also flash about 20 seconds and then stay on, and the beeper also sounds. In this case, go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your vehicle checked and repaired.

Seat Belt Pretensioner Device

The configuration of seat belt pretensioner equipments may vary with different vehicle models.

– The safety belt restrains the driver to sit in a suitable position, preventing its body over tilting forward before the collision.
– The seat belt pretensioners will be activated by the electronic control unit in the event of a severe collision, and then the pretensioner will drive the seatbelt webbing tighten by immediate pulling back.
– In the event of collision, the driver's body will move forward then the safety belt pretensioners activate, to make the restraining force to the body at a certain range, preventing a further injury towards the driver; at the same time, the seat belt pretensioners activate in conjunction with the airbag to provide an optimal protection.

1.2.2 Why Wear Seat Belts

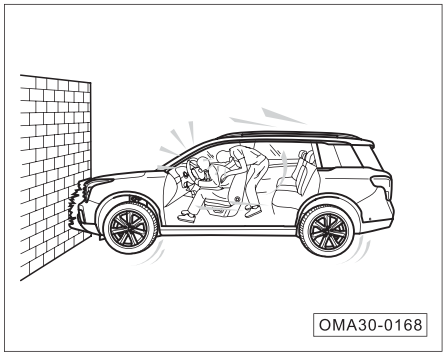
Protection from Seat belts

In case of crash, correctly wearing seat belts can restrict the driver and passengers at proper positions, reducing inertia of forward motion, to prevent loss of control of motion and being ejected out of the vehicle, and minimize injury due to impact.

The seat belts can absorb most of the kinetic energy resulting from a collision. In addition, the crumple zones and other passive safety systems can absorb the energy at the same time to reduce the risk of injury further together with the seat belts.

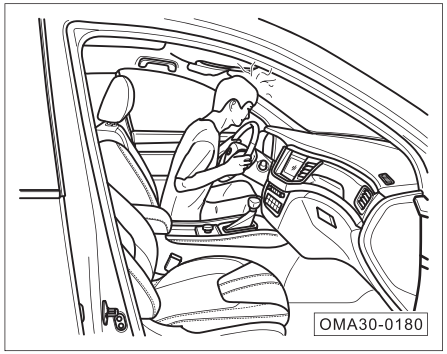
Physical Principles of Frontal Collision

While driving, both the vehicle and the occupants have energy (kinetic energy) which depends on the vehicle speed and the occupants' mass. The larger the vehicle speed and the mass, the more the energy upon collision. In which, the vehicle speed is decisive. For example, the released kinetic energy at 50km/h is 5 times that at 25km/h.

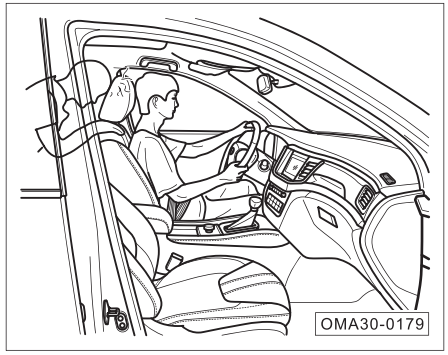


After a collision, the occupants not wearing the seat belts still move forward due to inertia at the speed before the collision, but the vehicle dose not. Thus the occupants would be seriously injured.

Consequences Arising from not Wearing Seat Belts



Even if the car is at low speed, the force exerted on human body, when a collision occurs, is big, and the passenger can not control his own body by hands. The unrestrained passengers will be thrown forward and injured once colliding with other objects in the car.



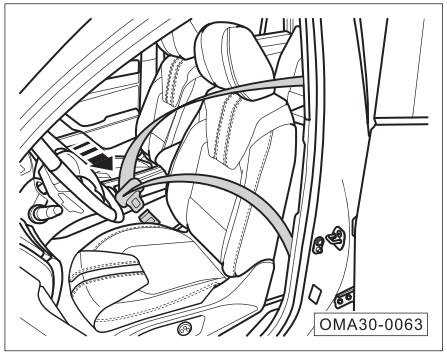
The rear seat passengers must wear the seat belts properly as well. Otherwise, the passengers can be thrown forward during a crash. The rear seat passengers not wearing the seat belts can be injured and endanger other occupants.

Warning

- Do not get your body under control by hand. Doing so can increase the chance of being seriously injured.
- Airbags do not replace your seat belts. Whether the airbag is equipped or not, it is essential to make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts properly.

1.2.3 Seat Belt

Wear Front Seat Belt



– Adjust the front seat properly (Please refer to Page 129).
– Adjust the headrest properly (Refer to Page 126).
– Gradually draw the seat belt out at constant speed, and draw it over your shoulder and hip. Insert the latch plate into the corresponding buckle until you hear a click.
– Then, pull the shoulder portion of the belt upward parallel to your upper body. Strain the hip portion of the belt and make sure that the latch plate is locked securely.

Wear Second-Row/Third-Row Seat Belt

– Adjust the headrest properly (Please refer to page 126).
– Gradually draw the seat belt out at constant speed, and draw it over your shoulder and hip. Insert the latch plate into the corresponding buckle until you hear a click.
– Then, pull the shoulder portion of the belt upward parallel to your upper body. Strain the hip portion of the belt and make sure that the latch plate is locked securely.

Warning

- Be sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly before driving.
- Be sure to insert the latch plate into its own buckle. Never insert it into other buckles.

Note

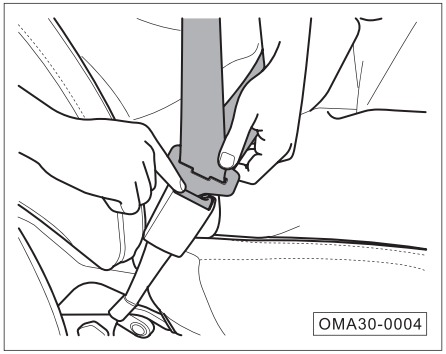
- When pulling out your belt to insert it into buckle, make sure it remains parallel to your body. Make sure it is not twisted.
- Insert the latch plate into the buckle and tug on the belt to make sure the latch is securely locked.
- Grasp the upper end of the belt and quickly pull it out to check whether the belt retractor can lock. Normally, the retractor can lock quickly.

Warning

The seat belt not fastened properly cannot provide good protection during a crash, resulting in serious personal injury.

- To let the seat belt play a full role, make sure the seat back is upright and the occupant sits well back in the seat and wears the seat belt properly.

Unbuckle the Seat Belt



– When the red PRESS button near the buckle is pushed, the latch plate pops up automatically.

– Hold the latch plate and return the seat belt to allow the retractor to retract the belt.

Warning

When the vehicle is running, do not unfasten the seat belt. Doing so can cause serious injury or death during a crash.

Note

- Do not unfasten the seat belt until the vehicle is completely stationary.
- To unlatch the belt, unlock the latch plate and then manually guide the belt to retract slowly. Prevent the belt from retracting fast. Failure to do so can cause personal injury by the metal latch plate.

Adjust theSeat Belt

– The shoulder portion of seat belt must pass over roughly the shoulder center rather on the neck.
– The lap portion of seat belt must be in close contact with pelvis rather than the stomach.
– Tension the seat belt as required.

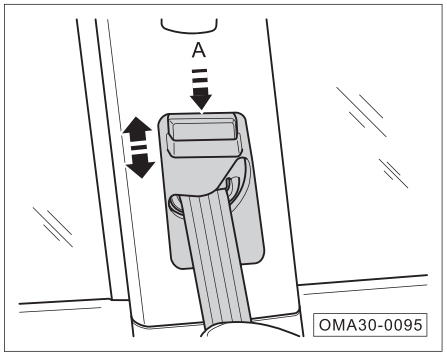
Warning

Do not pull out the seat belt and hinder it from retracting intentionally. The belt should be tensioned by its retractor freely.

Note

Only the seat belts positioned properly can provide the most protection.

Adjusting the Front Seat Belt Height



– Press the belt guide part in the direction of Arrow A.
– Hold the guide part and move it up and down to adjust the front seat belt to the desired height.
– Release the seat belt guide part.
– After the completion of adjustment, tug on the belt to make sure the guide part is securely locked.

Warning

- Make sure the shoulder part of the seat belt rests across the center of your shoulder. Do not let the seat belt cross your neck.
- Make sure the seat belt is flat and fits over your upper body.
- Make sure the waist part of the belt goes across your pelvic bones tightly without twisting.
- The belt cannot be too loose.

A pregnant Woman Must Wear Seat Belt Correctly

– Adjust the front seat and its headrest to the desired position.

– Hold the latch plate and pull the shoulder part of the belt to go across your shoulder slowly, and position the waist part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, not across your abdomen.

– Insert the latch plate into the corresponding buckle until you hear a click.

– Pull up the shoulder part of the belt parallel to your upper body, and tug on the hip part of the belt to make sure the latch plate is securely locked.

Warning

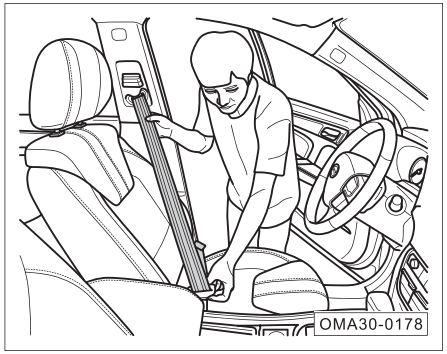
When pregnant woman wear seat belt, ensure that the waist belt across the hips as low as possible, not across the abdomen to prevent the unborn child from being affected.

Note

Unlike the average person, pregnant should pay more attention to safety of herself and unborn child. Therefore, a pregnant woman should wear seat belt correctly when driving or riding in a vehicle.

Maintenance of Seat Belts

During daily use, be sure to check the belts regularly and maintain them properly to prolong their service life.



– Pull out the seat belt and insert the latch plate into the buckle, and then check the belt webbing for damage.

– If the webbing is dirty, wipe its surface using the towel damped by warm soapy water. If the dirt is wiped off, wipe it with the towel damped by clear water.

– Wipe the belt webbing and retract the belt when it is dry.

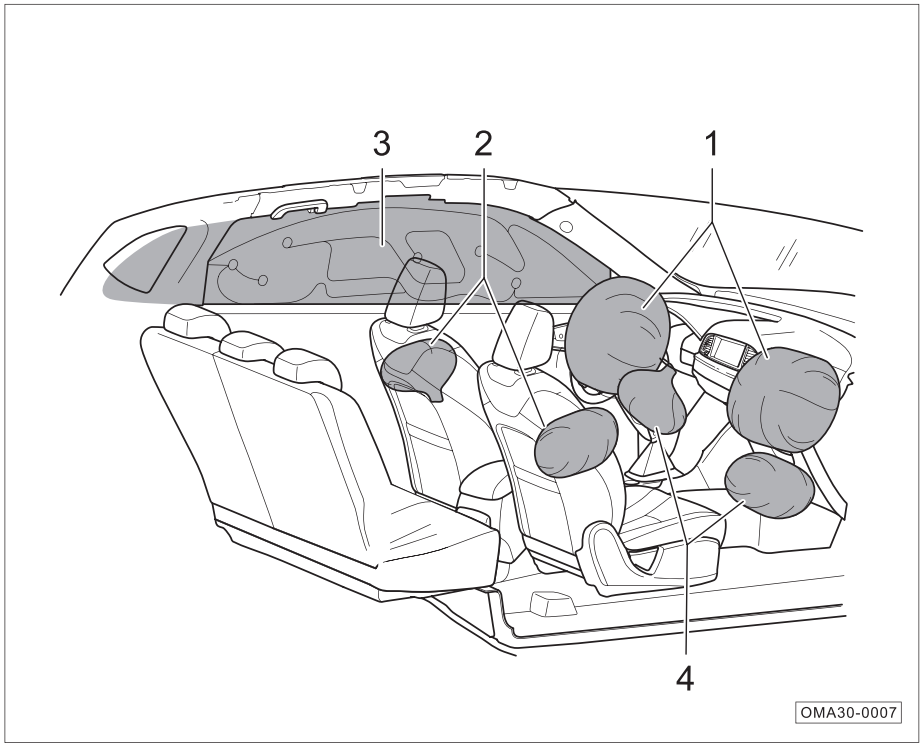
Warning

- If the seat belt is used in a serious accident, or badly worn or damaged, or the pretensioner is triggered, replace it.
- Do not modify the belt without permission.

Note

- When the seat belt is not in use, unlatch it and let it retract naturally and straightly.
- To prolong the belt life, keep the belts dry and avoid prolonged exposure to direct sunlight.

1.3 Airbag System



Depending on the configuration, the SRS system consists of the following airbags:

1. Front seat frontal airbag
2. Front seat side airbags (apply to certain models).
3. Side curtain airbag (apply to certain models).
4. Knee airbag (apply to certain models).

1.3.1 General Instructions

To allow the triggered airbag system to play a full role in protection, before starting driving, the driver and passengers should wear the seat belts properly, adjust the seat and the steering wheel properly, adjust the headrests properly and restrain the child in the vehicle in a suitable child seat.

Warning

Not wearing a seat belt properly or wrong sitting position can cause serious injury or even death during a crash.

- Before starting driving, make sure you and your passengers wear seat belts properly and sit in correct position.
- While driving, do not let other occupant (child), pet or object occupy the space between the front seat passenger and the front airbag. Do not put anything on or attach anything to the steering wheel and instrument panel surfaces.

Note

The airbags do not replace your seat belts. Seat belt must be fastened all the time during traveling.

Hint

When the airbags inflate, you may see what looks like smoke. This is a normal phenomenon. Do not worry about it.

Function of Airbags

When the vehicle has a serious collision with barriers and the trigger condition is reached, the airbag will quickly open an air pad filled with air, to buffer impact force when occupants move forward due to inertia and absorb impact energy, reducing injury degree of occupants.

When the vehicle has a serious collision and the trigger condition is reached, the airbag inflates in a high speed shortly. Therefore, the driver shall keep an appropriate sitting position, the front driver passenger and frontal airbag should be kept at a further distance to protect them effectively and avoid a severe injury when airbag activated and inflated.

If the vehicle had a serious collision, occupants unfastened seat belt may be thrown away to airbag inflation area, the inflating airbag may cause serious injuries and deaths of occupants, especially the children.

Factors of Airbag Inflating

Whether the airbags inflate or not depends on the collision energy during a collision. If the control unit detects that the collision energy is less than the ignition requirement of control unit when a collision occurs, the system won't trigger airbag. Therefore, even serious damage of the vehicle can't indicate that the airbag should be triggered.

Note

During a collision, whether the airbags inflate or not depends on the collision energy. This relates to the accident type, impact angle, barrier and vehicle speed.

Maintenance and Scrapping of Airbags

Any operation on the airbag system and removal and installation of the airbag system components for repairing other vehicle parts must be carried out by an authorized GAC MOTOR dealer. Failure to do so may cause damage to the airbag system components. As a result, during a crash, the airbags may be triggered abnormally or not be triggered.

When scrapping an entire vehicle or its airbag components, be sure to follow the relevant safety regulations, and get consulting service from a GAC MOTOR dealer.

Warning

- Do not repair, adjust or modify any components of the airbags by yourself without authorization.
- Airbags inflate only once. If your airbags ever inflate during a crash, it must be replaced by a GAC MOTOR dealer.
- If the airbag system fails, go to your authorized GAC MOTOR dealer immediately to have the system checked. Otherwise, the control unit system may not trigger the airbags or trigger the airbags abnormally during a collision.

Airbag System Components

The airbag system mainly consists of three parts:

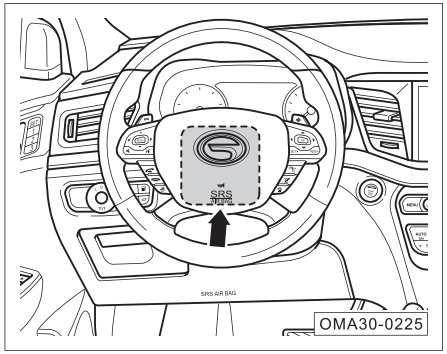
- Electric control and monitoring device.
- Airbags with gas generator.
- Indicator lights in the instrument cluster （ ） (Please refer to page 59)

The airbag is monitored by electric monitoring system located in airbag control unit. Switch the start switch to the "ON" position, the indicator light illuminates for a few seconds then extinguishes after self-checking.

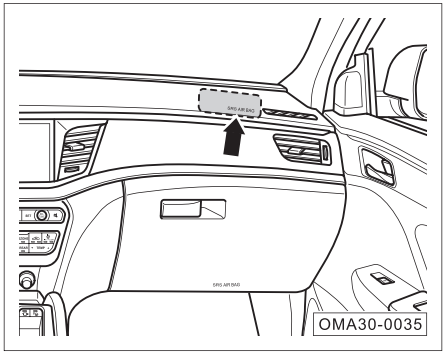
The SRS indicator light indicates a fault developing in the system in one of the following conditions:

1. Start switch is switched to "ON" position, the indicator light does not illuminate.
2. Start switch is switched to "ON" position, the indicator light stays illuminated.
3. Start switch is switched to "ON" position, the indicator light illuminates again after turning off.
4. When the vehicle is running, the indicator light will be illuminated or flash.

1.3.2 Front Seat Frontal Airbag



Driver's frontal airbag is installed in the center of the steering wheel (dotted dash area), and the mark of airbag is shown by the arrow "AIRBAG".



Front passenger frontal airbag is installed inside the dashboard (dotted dash area), and the mark of airbag is shown by the arrow "AIRBAG".

When the vehicle has a severe frontal collision and the trigger condition is reached, the frontal airbag inflates immediately in conjunction with the safety belt to provide additional protection to the head and chest of front occupants.

The system may activate the airbag at other positions when some type of collision occurs.

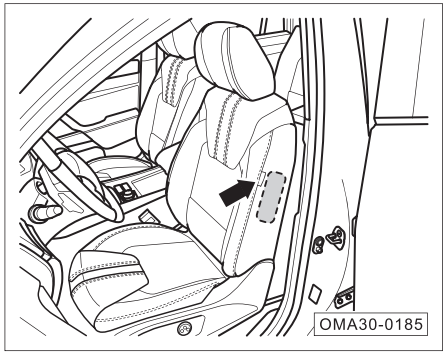
The front airbags may not be triggered in one of the following conditions:

- Start switch is at the "ACC" or "OFF" position.
- Minor frontal collision
- Side collision.
- Rear collision.
- Rollover.
- Other special conditions.

Hint

Minor is based on the feeling of the vehicle controller, regardless of the extent of damage to the vehicle.

1.3.3 Front Seat Side Airbags (Apply to Certain Models)



Front side airbag is installed inside the driver's seat and front passenger's seat back against the door (dotted dash area), the mark of airbag is shown by the arrow "AIRBAG".

When the vehicle has a severe side collision and the trigger condition is reached, the side airbag inflates immediately in conjunction with the safety belt to provide additional protection to the upper body of front occupants.

The system may activate the airbag at other positions when some type of collision occurs.

Warning

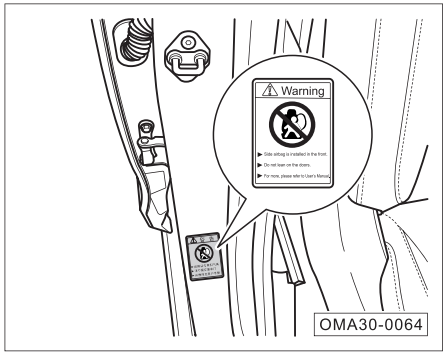
Never for the outer seat use the covering that could impede deployment of the side airbag.

Never for the outer seat use the covering that could impede deployment of the side airbag.

- Start switch is at the "ACC" or "OFF" position.
- Frontal collision.
- Minor side collision.
- Rear collision.
- Other special conditions.

Hint

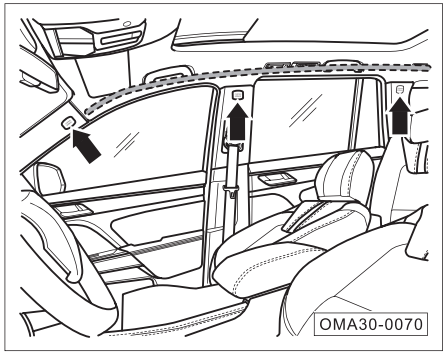
Minor is based on the feeling of the vehicle controller, regardless of the extent of damage to the vehicle.



Warning

Please notice the warnings on the door side. Do not lean on the door side, where installed with side airbag during driving.

1.3.4 Side Curtain Airbag (Apply to Certain Models)



The side curtain airbag is installed inside the right and left side of the roof (dotted dash area), the mark of airbag is shown by the arrow "CURTAIN AIRBAG".

When the vehicle has a severe side collision and the trigger condition is reached, the side curtain airbag inflates immediately in conjunction with the safety belt to provide additional protection to the upper body of occupants.

The system may activate the airbag at other positions when some type of collision occurs.

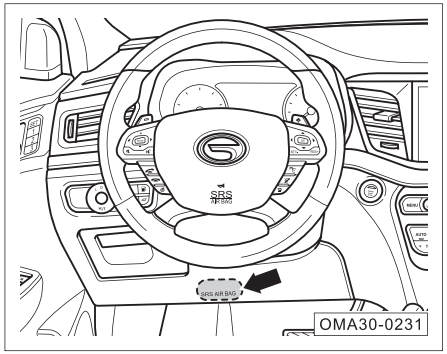
The side curtain airbag system may not activate in the following conditions:

- Start switch is at the "ACC" or "OFF" position.
- Minor side collision.
- Rear collision.
- Other special conditions.

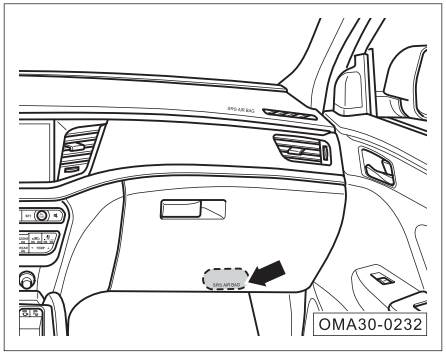
Hint

Minor is based on the feeling of the vehicle controller, regardless of the extent of damage to the vehicle.

1.3.5 Knee airbag (Apply to Certain Models).



The driver knee air bag is installed under the instrument panel (shade in the figure), “AIRBAG” as indicated by the arrow denotes presence of the air bag.



The front occupant knee air bag is installed under the glove box (shade in the figure). “AIRBAG” as indicated by the arrow denotes presence of the air bag.

In the case of a frontal crash with severity level meeting threshold, the knee air bags deploy rapidly, which in conjunction with the seat belts provide protection for the driver’s and front occupant’s knees.

The system may activate the airbag at other positions when some type of collision occurs.

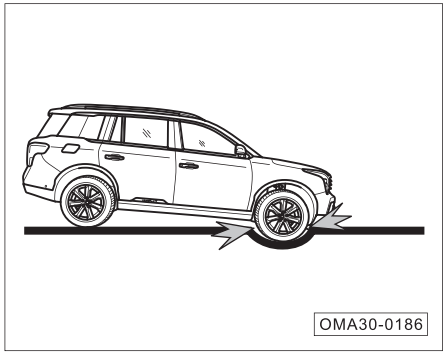
The knee airbag system may not activate in the following conditions:

- Start switch is at the "ACC" or "OFF" position.
- Minor frontal collision
- Side collision.
- Rear collision.
- Rollover.
- Other special conditions.

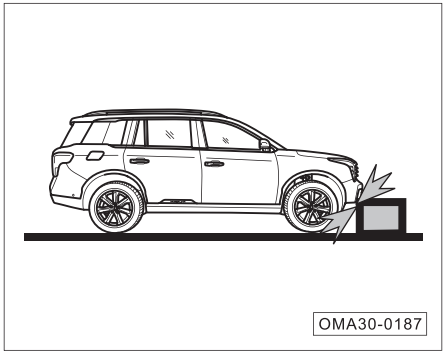
Hint

Minor is based on the feeling of the vehicle controller, regardless of the extent of damage to the vehicle.

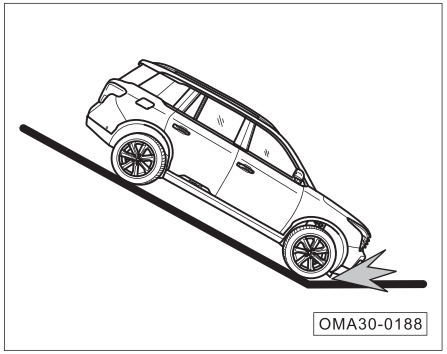
1.3.6 Cases When Airbags Could Deploy:



– The vehicle front collides with the ground when the vehicle wheels are attempting to pass over a deep trough.

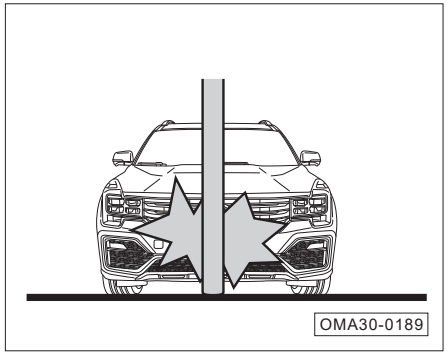


– The vehicle collides with an obstacle or street curb.

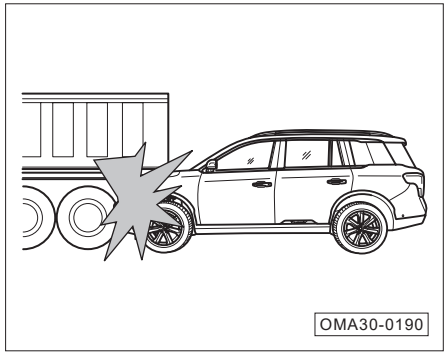


– The vehicle front collides with the ground when the vehicle is travelling down a steep slope.

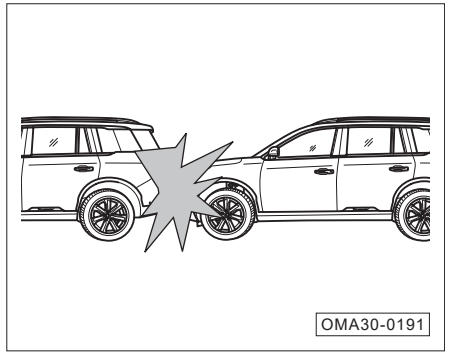
1.3.7 Cases When Airbags Could Not Deploy



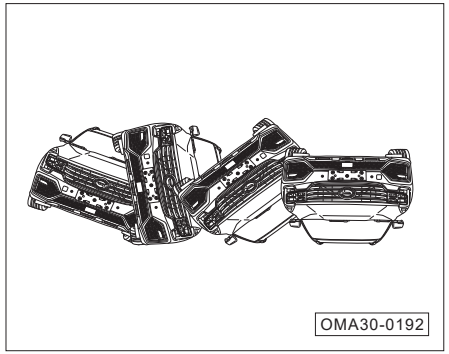
– The vehicle collides with a concrete structure, pillar, tree, or other vimineous object.



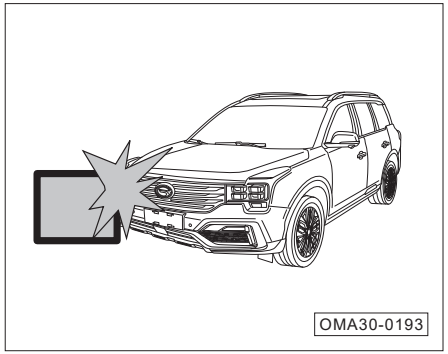
– The vehicle collides with the tail of a large truck.



– Another vehicle collides with your vehicle from behind.



– The vehicle laterally rolls over.



– The corner of the vehicle collides with the wall or another vehicle.

1.4 SafetyRules for Children

1.4.1 General Instructions

For children under 12 years, appropriate child safety seats or child seat belts shall be selected according to their heights and weights.

To properly wear a seat belt through a child seat, follow the seat manufacturer's instructions. Keep the child seat instructions together with the vehicle documents in your vehicle so you can refer to it at any time.

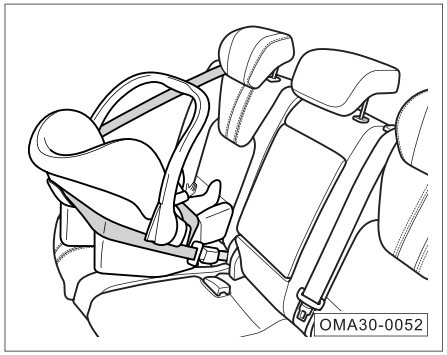
⚠ Warning

- Don't install child seat with its back toward driving direction on the front passenger's seat. Or it can result in serious injury or death during a crash. Children must be placed on the second-row seats.
- Proper wear of a seat belt can let it play its protective role fully.
- Never hold a baby or child on your lap when riding in a vehicle. Otherwise, the baby or child could be seriously hurt or killed when accident happens.
- Only a child seat of right size can provide effective protection to the child.
- Do not leave children alone in a vehicle. Because of huge climate difference from place to place, the in-vehicle temperature may become extremely low or high. A child left alone in a vehicle could be hurt fatally.
- Without a child safety seat, do not let a child with a height below 1.5m use the preinstalled seat belt in the vehicle. Doing so can cause the child's abdomen or neck be injured during emergency braking or in a crash.
- Never let two children use the same child seat.
- Be sure to read and follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions and precautions.
- Follow the relevant laws and regulations to install and use a child seat. The national laws and regulations shall prevail.

1.4.2 Child Seat

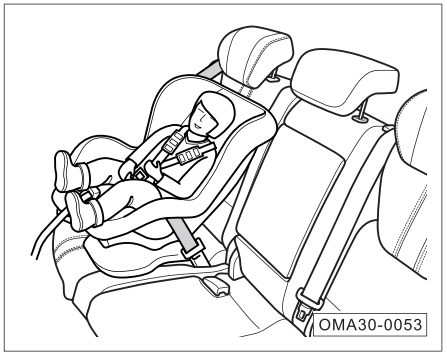
Child Seat Classification (For Reference Only):

a. Group0/0+ child safety seats:



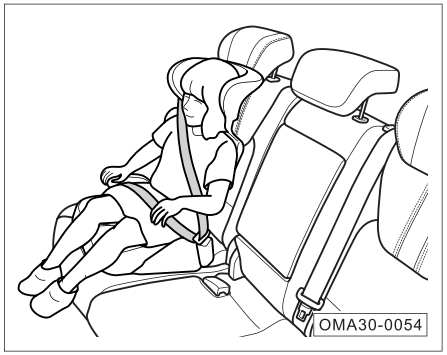
For infants or babies under 18 months and less than 13kg, group 0/0+ child seats should be used that can be adjusted to a level position.

b. Group I child safety seats



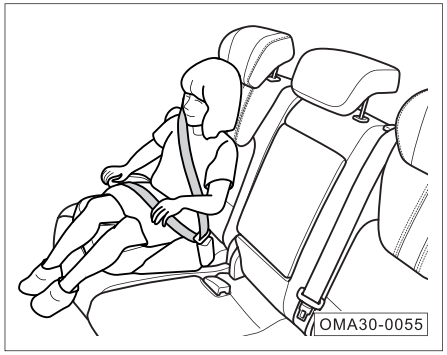
For infants or babies under 4 years and 9kg~18kg in weight, Group I child safety seats equipped with a seat belt should be used.

c. Group II child safety seats:



For children under 7 years and 15kg~25kg in weight, Group II child safety seats equipped with a three-point seat belt should be used.

d. Group III child safety seat:



For children above 7 years, 22kg~36 kg in weight, and less than 1.50 meters, Group III child safety seats equipped with a three-point should be used.

Applicability of different riding positions to child restraint system

Mass group	Position to fix the system		
	Front passenger seat	Second-row seats on both sides	Second-row central seat
Group 0: ＜ 10kg	X	U	X
Group 0+: ＜ 13kg	X	U	X
Group I:9~18kg	X	U/UF	X
Group II:15~25kg	X	UF	X
Group III:22~36kg	X	UF	X

Note: Meanings of the letters in the table:
U= Permitting use of type “General” of child safety seats in this mass group
UF= Permitting use of type “General” of front-facing child safety seats in this mass group
X= Not applicable for use of child safety seats

Dimension ranges may be specified for some child safety seats. Find the dimension range from the manufacturer’s instructions, packaging, or child safety seats. For how to correctly install the child safety seats, refer to their use instructions.

ISOFIX child safety seats anchoring points

Mass group	Size	Anchoring module	Position to fix the system		
			Front passenger seat	Second-row seats on both sides	Second-row central seat
Portable infant bed	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X
Group 0: ＜ 10kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
Group 0+: ＜ 13kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
Group I:9~18kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	X
Group II:15~25kg			X		X
Group III:22~36kg			X		X

Note: Meanings of the letters in the table:
IUF—General type ISOFIX child safety seats, front-facing and fixed using upward tensioning straps.
IL—Special type ISOFIX child restraint systems, which may be those used for special vehicles, or restricted, or semi-general
X—Not applicable.

Dimension ranges may be specified for some child safety seats. Find the dimension range from the manufacturer’s instructions, packaging, or child safety seats. For how to correctly install the child safety seats, refer to their use instructions.

1.4.3 Install a Child Seat Properly

Before installing the child seat in the second row, adjust the front seat to the desired position according to the child seat size and the child's body type. This will help keep the child restrained in the second row from striking the interior sharp objects of the vehicle during a crash or emergency braking. Moreover, this will also prevent the child from being injured due to the airbags inflating. Never hold an infant or child on your lap!

Child seat generally has three types of installations, i.e. three-point safety belt, ISOFIX system, and LATCH system. The installation of three-point safety belt is that using its own seat belts to tighten the child seat, as shown in the figure "Child Seat Classifications": installation of ISOFIX and LATCH system is that using the child seat fixing device to fasten and lock with the remaining anchor points in the vehicle.

The safety signboards are on the sun visors. They warn you of the front airbag's potential hazards. Read these signboards carefully and follow their instructions.

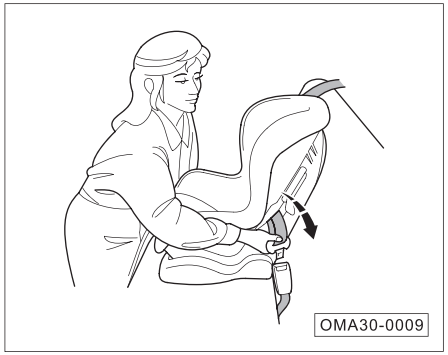
Warning

Do not use a child restraint system against the driving direction on a seat protected by a frontal airbag (activated)!

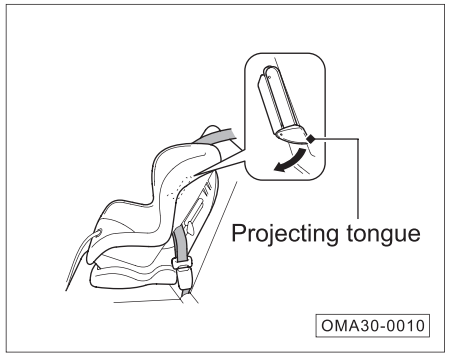
Hint

- Method for installing a certain kind of child safety seats is introduced here only for reference purpose. When installing child safety seats, be sure to refer to their use instructions and observe the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer.

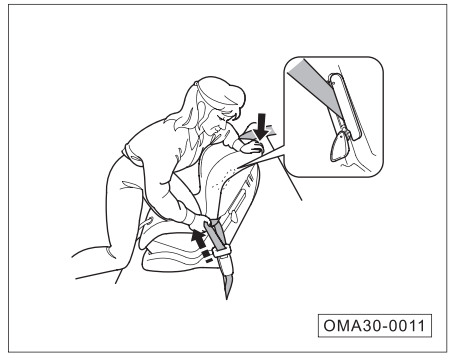
Installing the Child Safety Seat Using the Three-Point Seat belt



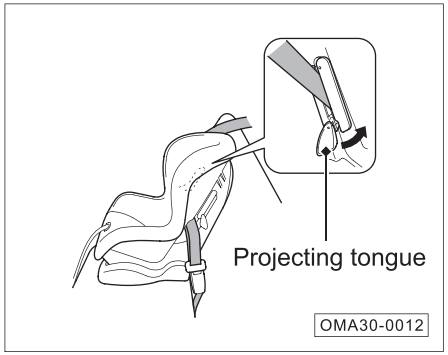
1. Place the child safety seat on the seat.
2. According to the installation instructions provided by the manufacturer, pass the seat belt through the child safety seat, and push the latch plate into buckle until it clicks.



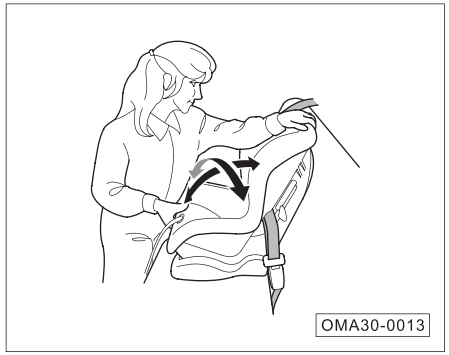
3. Push downward the tongue. Pass the shoulder portion of seat belt through the narrow gap on the side of child safety seat.



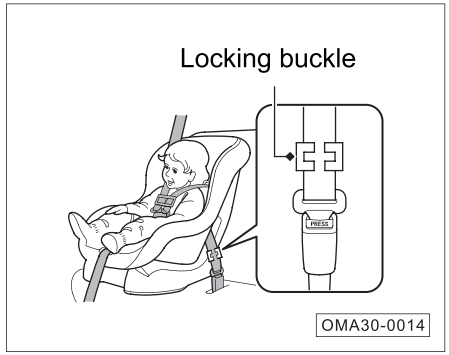
4. Hold the shoulder portion of seat belt near the buckle, and pull it upward so that the lap portion of seat belt is no longer loose. Press the safety seat using your own weight and push it in the seat.



5. Place the seat belt correctly and push upward the tongue. Ensure that the seat belt is not twisted. While pushing upward the tongue, pull upward the upper shoulder portion of seat belt so that the seat belt is no longer loose.



6. Shake the child safety seat forward and backward, leftward and rightward to ensure it is securely anchored.
7. Ensure that all unused seat belts within reach of children are locked.



If the child safety seat has no means for fixing the seat belt, install a locking clip to the seat belt.

– With steps 1 and 2 completed, pull upward the shoulder portion of seat belt so that the lap portion of seat belt is no longer loose.
– Tightly hold the seat belt near the latch plate. Hold together the two portions of seat belt so that they cannot slide out of the latch plate. Release the seat belt from the buckle.

Install the locking clip as shown in the figure. With the clip as close to the latch plate as possible, insert the latch plate in the buckle. Perform steps 6 and 7.

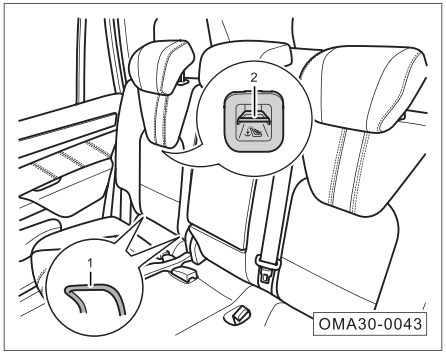
Install the ISOFIX system or LATCH system

The installing methods for both ISOFIX system and LATCH system are similar, LATCH system has one more anchor point than ISOFIX system, but the lower anchor point for both systems can be interchangeable. The two sides of seats in second row for this vehicle are equipped with LATCH system. Therefore, both LATCH and ISOFIX system child seat can be installed.

Warning

When driving, be sure to restrain the child in the child seat suitable for the child's weight and body type.

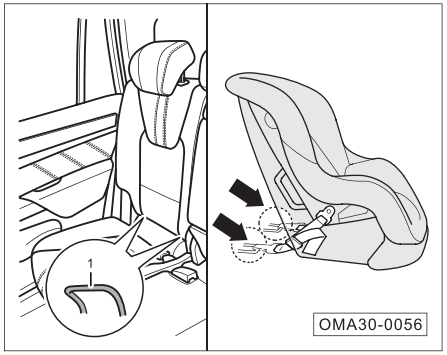
- The anchoring device for child seat of this vehicle can only be used to fix the child seat.
- Do not connect any other things as fastening belt, hard and sharp or non-child seat items to the anchoring device, otherwise, it may endanger the child life when accident occurs.



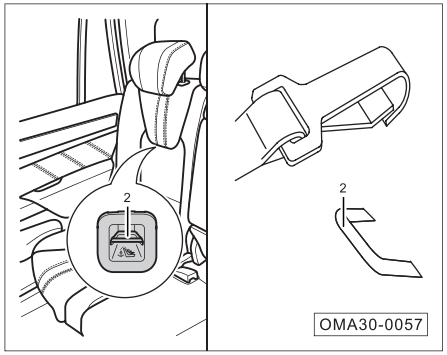
Hint

The lower seat belt anchoring point (1) of the second-row seats on both sides is hid in the gap between the seat backrest and cushion. Manually expanding the gap, you can see the upper anchoring point (2) at the rear of the seat backrest.

Be sure to remove/install the child seats in accordance with the manufacturer's Instructions. The installation instructions for LATCH system child seat are mainly introduced as follows:



1. Place the child safety seat on the seat. Find the lower anchoring point (1). Insert the lower guide slot (see the arrows) to the lower anchoring point (1) in the gap until it clicks.



2. Raise the headrest to the upmost position. Pass the anchoring strap through the headrest support to engage the upper anchoring point (2). Ensure that the anchoring strap is not twisted.
3. Tension the anchoring strap. Shake the child safety seat forward and backward, leftward and rightward to ensure it is securely anchored.
4. Ensure that all unused seat belts within reach of children are locked.

1.5 Dangerous Exhaust Gases

Carbon Monoxide

Exhaust gases from the engine of this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colorless odorless very toxic gas. As long as you can correctly maintain and use the vehicle, carbon monoxide will not enter the interior of vehicle.

In the following cases, the exhaust system must be checked for leakage:

– Abnormal noise coming out of exhaust system
– Exhaust system could be damaged.
– Raise the vehicle to replace engine oil.

Driving with the trunk open can cause exhaust gases entering the vehicle resulting in danger. If you have to drive with the trunk open, open all windows and turn on the air conditioning system.

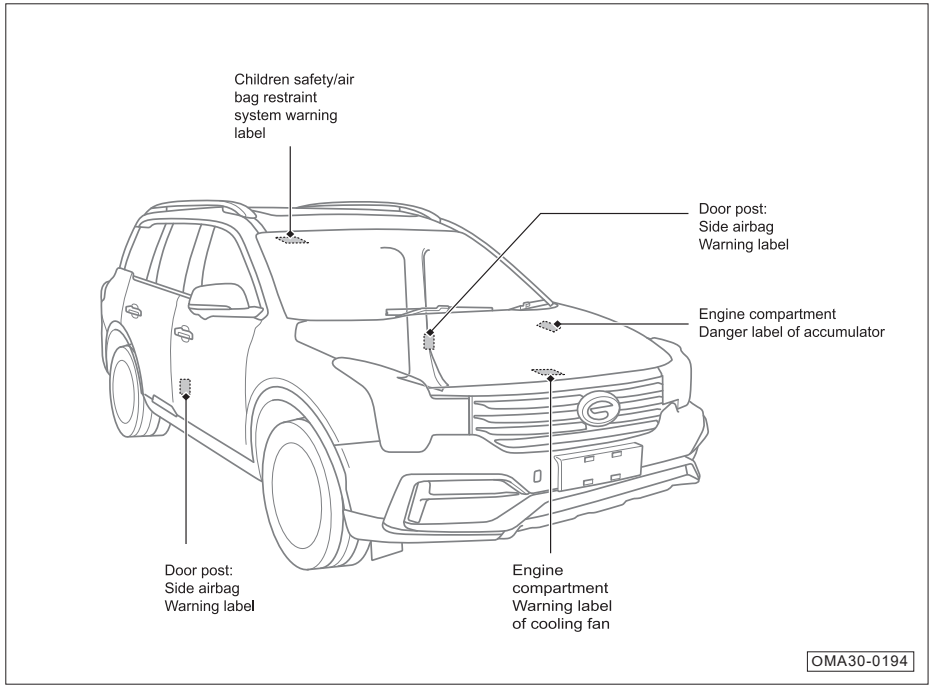
1. Select the external air circulation mode.
2. Select the mode.
3. Set the fan speed to maximum.

If you sit in the vehicle with the engine running, operate the air conditioning system in the same manner.

Warning

- Carbon monoxide is very toxic. Inhaling it can cause unconsciousness even death.
- Do not run the engine in confined areas (such as garage) which are not properly ventilated.
- This can cause rapid buildup of monoxide in the area thus high content of carbon monoxide inside the vehicle. Never start the engine with the garage door closed. Even if the garage door is open, drive away immediately.

1.6 Safety Labels



Shown in the figure are examples of the locations of labels. These labels are intended to indicate potential risks that could cause serious injury even death. Read these labels carefully.

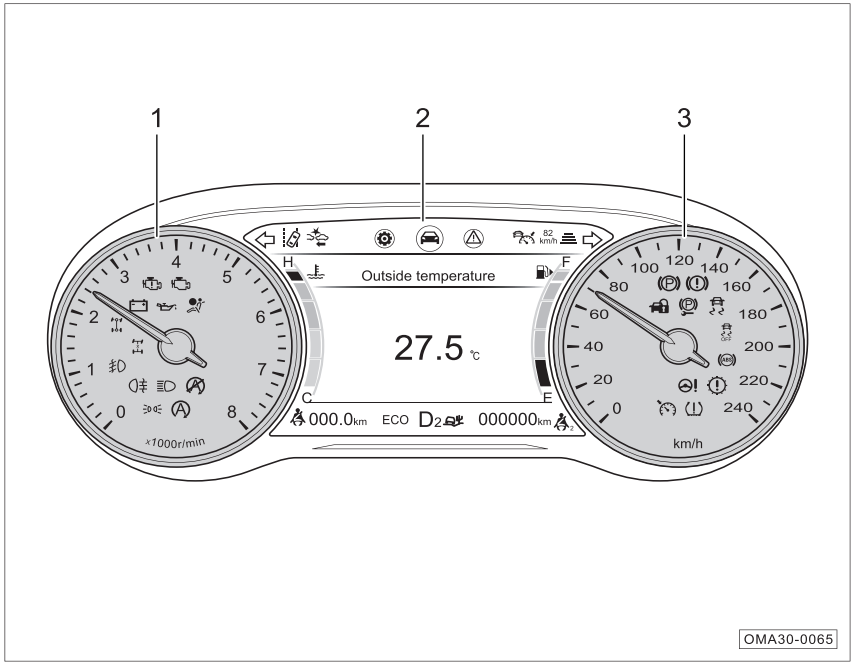
If any label comes off or becomes illegible, contact a GAC 4S shop for replacement.

Hint

- Note that actual locations and quantities of labels may be different from those shown in the figure.

2.1 Cab

2.1.1 Instrument Cluster

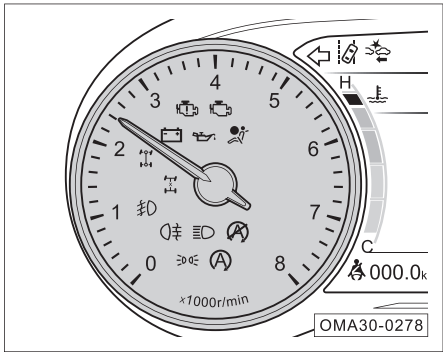


1. Engine tachometer
2. Instrument cluster display

– Included information (some information only apply to specific models): engine coolant temperature gauge, fuel gauge, driving information, door opening indicator light, gear display, odometer, text warning reminding etc.

3. Speedometer

Engine Tachometer



The engine tachometer is used to indicate the current engine speed, in x1000 r/min, minimum scale 200 r/min, ranging from 0 r/min to 8000 r/min.

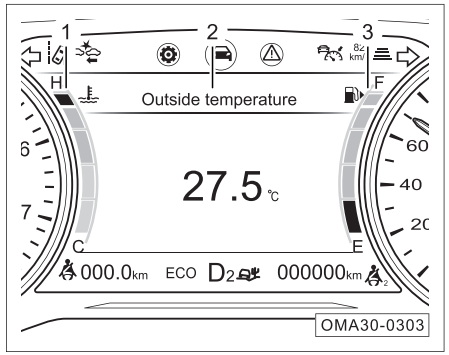
Note

- The red warning area (6000 r/min ~ 8000 r/min) on the speed dial means the heavy-duty area of the vehicle. Do not let the vehicle operate in this area. Doing so can cause fuel cut-off due to engine self-protection.
- Damage to the engine probably occurs if the tachometer reading is in the red zone while the running-in period of the vehicle does not expire.
- Even if the running-in period has expired, damage to the engine probably occurs if the tachometer reading is in the red zone.

Hint

Shifting into a higher gear timely helps save fuel and reduce the engine running noise.

Instrument Cluster Display



1. Engine coolant temperature gauge (i.e., water temperature gauge), for indicating the current engine coolant temperature.

– There is a total of four major sections (each major section is subdivided into two minor sections), indicating the range of C ~ H, in which, "C" represents low temperature and "H" indicates high temperature. An appropriate number of sections are illuminated depending on the temperature. The un-illuminated sections are gray.

– When engine coolant temperature ＞ 50 ℃, temperature gauge lights up

gradually from the first major section.

– After the engine starts and works for some time, 2~3 major sections are lit.
– When the 4th red major sections are lit, it indicates that the current engine coolant temperature is too high. Then, the high coolant temperature indicator ( ) in the instrument cluster is lit and the buzzer alarms to alert the driver. And now the engine load shall be reduced (such as do not run the engine in a high speed for a long time, or shall not long drive at steep road), park the vehicle timely and check the coolant level (Please refer to page 361).

Note

- If the engine coolant temperature is too high, do not continue driving even if the coolant level is normal, unless the temperature reaches the normal range. If the temperature remains high, please have your vehicle checked and repaired at GAC MOTOR dealer as soon as possible.
- If additional part is installed at air inlet, it may reduce cooling effect of coolant. The engine overheats easily at high ambient temperature and when the engine running under high load.

2. Central portion used to display: travelling information (Please refer to page 65), menu setting (Please refer to page 68), navigation information, music information, and text prompt.

D2 (gear information)

– The location is used to indicate current gear information, for example, P, R, N, D, D1~D6, or S.

ECO (Indicator light for Economy Mode)

– If the green light is lit, it indicates that ECO mode is activated.

000.0 km (short mileage TRIP)

– Range from 0km to 999.9km. When a short-mileage trip exceeds 999.9km, it will be reset and then continue to accumulate.
– Short-mileage Trip, may be reset by the total mileage in the settings of menu on display (Please refer to page 69).

000000 km (Total mileage)

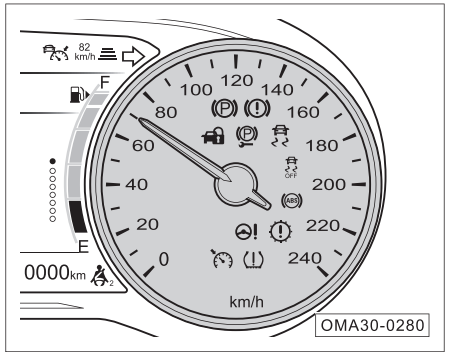
– Display range: 0km to 999999km.

3. Fuel gauge, to indicate the current fuel remaining in the tank.

– There is a total of four major sections (each major section is subdivided into two minor sections), indicating the range of E~F, in which, "E" represents the fuel tank is empty, and "F" represents the fuel tank is full. An appropriate number of sections are illuminated depending on the residual fuel. The un-illuminated sections are gray.

– Only the first red bar or no bar coming on indicates insufficient fuel in the fuel tank. Meanwhile, the fuel low level yellow indicator light （ ） on the instrument cluster flickers telling the driver that the fuel is insufficient and to add fuel as soon as possible.

Speedometer

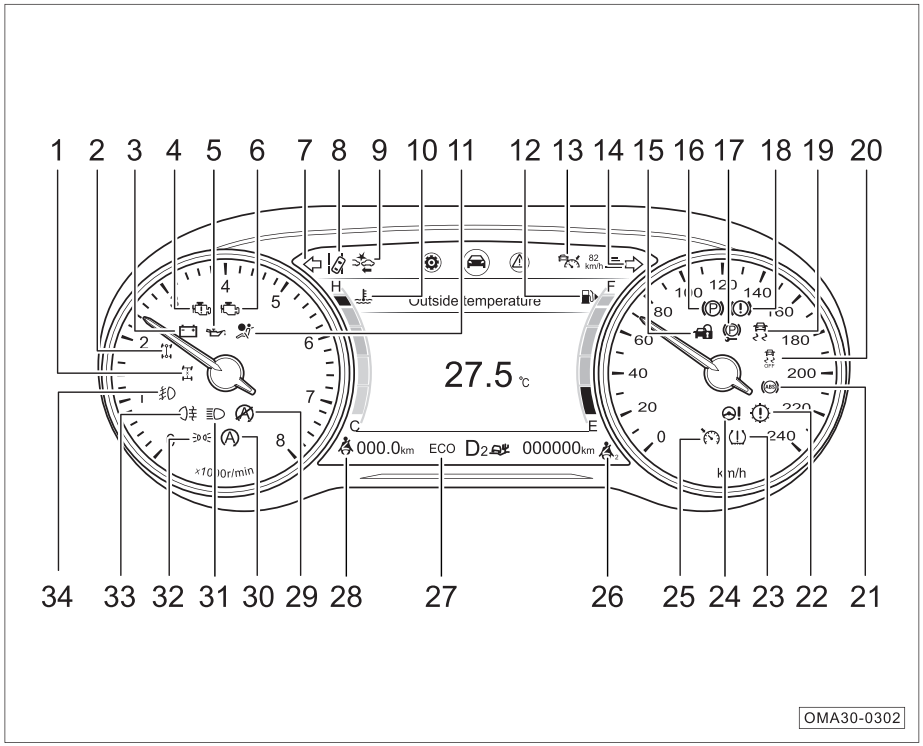


Speedometer is used for indicating the current vehicle speed, in km/h, minimum scale of 10km/h, ranging from 0km/h to 240km/h.

Note

- 200km/h ~ 240km/h represents the heavy-load range. To protect your vehicle, avoid prolonged driving in this range.
- Strictly abide by traffic rules. Do not overspeed at will.

2.1.2 Indicator Light



Indicator lights and warning lights are arranged in the instrument cluster.

Note

If indicator light, warning lighting the instrument cluster illuminates after vehicle starting or during driving, it indicates relevant system or function may work or failure occurs. You should read through the indications of each indicator light, warning light carefully; please have your vehicle checked and repaired at the GAC MOTOR dealer timely when failure occurred.

S/N	Icon	Name
1		Four-wheel-drive (4WD) locking mode indicator light (Yellow) (Apply to certain models)
2		Four-wheel-drive (4WD) smart mode indicator light (Yellow) (Apply to certain models)
3		Charging system warning light (red)
4		Engine malfunction indicator light (yellow)
5		Low oil pressure warning light (red)
6		Emission malfunction indicator light (yellow)
7		Left turn signals and hazard warning indicator lights (green)
8		Lane departure status indicator light (White, red, green) (Apply to certain models)
9		Forward collision warning status indicator light (green, red) (Apply to certain models)
10		High engine coolant temperature indicator light (white, red)
11		Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) indicator light (red)

S/N	Icon	Name
12		Low fuel indicator light (white, yellow)
13		Adaptive cruise indicator light (White, green) (Apply to certain models), and other indicator lights of the adaptive cruise system (Please refer to page 294)
14		Right turn signals and hazard warning indicator lights (green)
15		Immobilizer lock system indicator light (red)
16		Electronic park brake (EPB) state indicator light (red, green)
17		Electrical Parking Brake (EPB) malfunction indicator light (yellow)
18		Indicator light for hand brake and brake system (red)
19		Electronic Stability Program (ESP) indicator light (yellow)
20		Electronic Stability Program Off (ESP OFF) indicator light (yellow)
21		Anti-lock braking system (ABS) indicator light (yellow)
22		Transmission malfunction indicator light (yellow)

S/N	Icon	Name
23		Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator light (yellow)
24		Electric Power Steering (EPS) indicator light (yellow)
25		Cruise control indicator light (white, green) (apply to certain models)
26		Front passenger seat belt indicator light (red)
27	ECO	ECO Mode Indicator light (green)
28		Driver's seat belt warning indicator light (red)
29		Malfunction indicator light for Start-Stop system (white, yellow)
30		Work indicator light for Start-Stop system (green)
31		High-beam indicator light (blue)
32		Lighting indicator light (green)
33		Rear fog light indicator light (yellow)
34		Front fog light indicator light (green)

1. Four-wheel-drive (4WD) locking mode indicator light (Yellow) (Apply to certain models)

– Four-wheel-drive (4WD) locking mode indicator light coming on indicates that the 4WD system is locked.

Hint

- Do not travel on mountains, muddy or sandy roads, or wilds without road.
- If the front or rear wheel is trapped in mud, do not rudely have the wheel rotate in situ. This could damage the smart 4WD system. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle at a safe location, have the engine running at idle, wait until the indicator light goes out, then you can turn on the smart 4WD system.

2. Four-wheel-drive (4WD) smart mode indicator light (Yellow) (Apply to certain models)

– Four-wheel-drive (4WD) smart mode indicator light flickering meanwhile the texts “4WD system overheated, please stop vehicle” appearing on the instrument panel indicates that the smart 4WD system is overheated. In this case, stop the vehicle and wait at least 15 minutes for the smart 4WD system to cool down. If the phenomena disappear 15 minutes later, you can continue to drive.

3. Charging system warning light (red)

– With the Start switch in Position ON, if the engine is not started, the warning light is lit.

– After the engine starting, if the warning light is lit, it indicates that there is a trouble in the charging system.

4. Engine malfunction indicator light (yellow)

– With the Start switch in Position "ON", if the engine is not started, the indicator light is lit.

– After the engine starting, if the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the exhaust system.

5. Low oil pressure warning light (red)

– With the Start switch in Position ON, if the engine is not started, the warning light is lit.

– After the engine starting, if the warning light is still on, it indicates that the engine oil pressure is low.

6. Emission malfunction indicator light (yellow)

– With the Start switch in Position "ON", if the engine is not started, the indicator light is lit.

– After the engine starting, if the indicator is still on, it indicates that there is a trouble in the exhaust system.

7. Left turn signals and hazard warning indicator lights (green)

– When left turn signal indicator light flashes alone, it indicates that the left turn signals are turned on.

– When the hazard warning indicator light switch is pressed, the left/right turn signal indicator lights will flash together with all the outside turn signal lights.

8. Lane departure status indicator light (White, red, green) (Apply to certain models)

– White indicator light coming on indicates that the lane departure warning system is activated, the vehicle speed is lower than 60km/h, or no lane markings are detected.

– Red indicator light coming on indicates a fault with the lane departure warning system. In this case, have the vehicle repaired by a GAC 4S shop.

– Green indicator light coming on indicates that the lane departure warning system operates normally.

9. Forward collision warning status indicator light (green, red) (Apply to certain models)

– Green indicator light coming on indicates that the frontal crash warning system is activated.

– Red indicator light coming on indicates a fault with the frontal crash warning system. In this case, have the vehicle repaired by a GAC 4S shop.

– Red indicator light flickering indicates that the frontal crash warning system is being activated.

10. High engine coolant temperature indicator light (white, red)

– White indicator light coming on indicates that the coolant temperature is normal.

– If the red indicator light is lit, it indicates that the engine coolant temperature is high.

11. Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) indicator light (red)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the airbag system.

12. Low fuel indicator light (white, yellow)

– White indicator light coming on indicates that the fuel level is normal.

– If the yellow indicator light flashes, it indicates that less fuel remains in the tank.

– Yellow indicator light coming on indicates a possible fault with the fuel pump.

13. Adaptive cruise indicator light (white, green) (apply to certain models)

– White indicator light coming on indicates that the adaptive cruise system is making preparation and a target vehicle is in front.

– Green indicator light coming on indicates that the adaptive cruise system is working and a target vehicle is in front.

14. Right turn signals and hazard warning indicator lights (green)

– When right turn signal indicator light flashes alone, it indicates that the right turn signals are turned on.

– When the hazard warning indicator light switch is pressed, the left/right turn signal indicator lights will flash together with all the outside turn signal lights.

15. Immobilizer lock system indicator light (red)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the engine immobilizer system or the vehicle anti-theft system is enabled.

16. Electronic park brake (EPB) state indicator light (red, green)

– If the indicator light is lit (red), it indicates that the EPB is applied.

– If the indicator light (red) flashes, it indicates that the EPB is partly engaged or failed.

– If the indicator light is lit (green), it indicates that electronic automatic parking is activated.

17. Electrical Parking Brake (EPB) malfunction indicator light (yellow)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the EPB system.

– If the indicator light flashes, it indicates that the EPB is in maintenance mode.

18. Indicator light for hand brake and brake system (red)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the hand brake is set, the brake fluid level is low or there is a trouble in the brake-force distribution (EBD) system.

19. Electronic Stability Program (ESP) indicator light (yellow)

– If the indicator is lit, it indicates that there is a trouble in the ESP system or HHC system.

– If the indicator light flashes, it indicates the ESP is working.

20. Electronic Stability Program Off (ESP OFF) indicator light (yellow)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the ESP system is turned off.

21. Anti-lock braking system (ABS) indicator light (yellow)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a trouble in the ABS system.

22. Transmission malfunction indicator light (yellow)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the automatic transmission (AT).

– If the indicator light flashes, it indicates that the AT oil temperature is high.

23. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) indicator light (yellow)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the TPMS system.

24. If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the TPMS system.

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that there is a fault in the TPMS system.

25. Cruise control indicator light (white, green) (apply to certain models)

– If the indicator light is lit (white), it indicates that the cruise control is ready. If green, it indicates that the cruise control is enabled.

26. Front passenger seat belt indicator light (red)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the front passenger seat belt is not fastened or there is a fault in the belt system.

27. ECO Mode Indicator light (green)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that ECO mode is activated.

28. Driver's seat belt warning indicator light (red)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the driver's belt is not fastened or there is a fault in the belt system.

29. Malfunction indicator light for Start-Stop system (white, yellow)

– When the start and stop conditions are not satisfied temporarily, the indicator light stays on (white).

– If the indicator light becomes yellow, it indicates that there is a fault in the Start-Stop system.

30. Work indicator light for Start-Stop system (green)

– Work indicator light for Start-Stop system (green)

31. High-beam indicator light (blue)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that high beams are turned on.

32. If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that high beams are turned on.

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the position lights, instrument panel lighting lamp, number plate lights and atmosphere lights are turned on.

33. Rear fog light indicator light (yellow)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the rear fog light is turned on.

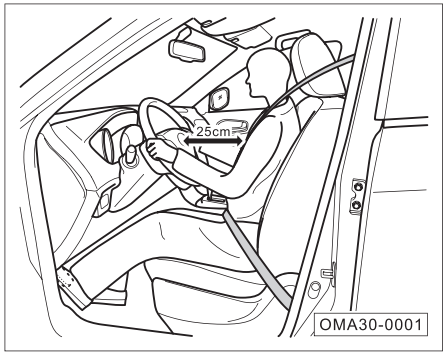
34. Front fog light indicator light (green)

– If the indicator light is lit, it indicates that the front fog light is turned on.

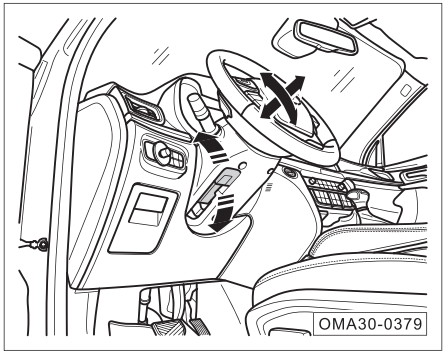
2.1.3 Steering wheel

Adjust steering wheel position

You can adjust the steering wheel height and distance between you and the steering wheel to suit your preference before you start driving.



– Adjust the driver’s seat to a proper position.

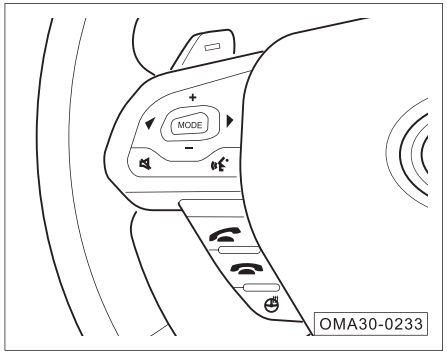


– Push downward the locking handle.
– Adjust the steering wheel upward, downward, backward and forward to an appropriate position and make the steering wheel facing the driver's front chest; make sure the driver can see all the instrument and indicator lights in the instrument panel, and then maintain the steering wheel in this position.
– Push upward and tighten the locking handle to lock the steering wheel.
– Move the steering wheel upward, downward, backward and forward to ensure it's locked securely.

⚠ Warning

- After adjusting the steering wheel, remember to push up the locking handle to lock the steering wheel, preventing the steering wheel from moving automatically during driving.
- The steering wheel can be adjusted only when the vehicle is in parking condition to avoid traffic accidents.
- Do not let the steering wheel point toward your face. Otherwise, you cannot get effective protection from your front airbag during a crash. After adjusting, make sure the steering wheel point toward your chest.

Steering Wheel Button (Left)

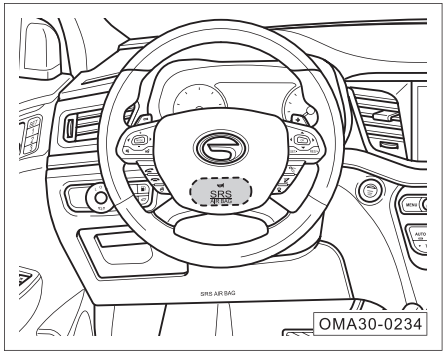


– Left buttons of the steering wheel are for audio system control; its function and usage (Please refer to page 172).
– Steering wheel heating button (apply to certain models): Press the button, the button indicator light comes on, and the steering wheel heating starts automatically. Press the button again, the button indicator light goes out, and the steering wheel heating stops.

Hint

If the heating is not stopped manually, it stops automatically when steering wheel reaches a certain temperature.

Horn Button on Steering Wheel

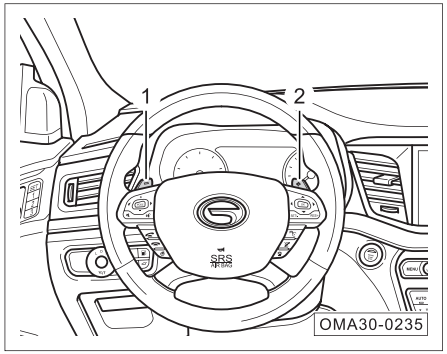


– Press the horn button on the steering wheel, the horn sounds. Release the button, the horn stops sounding.

Warning

Do not press the horn button permanently. This can damage the horn very easily.

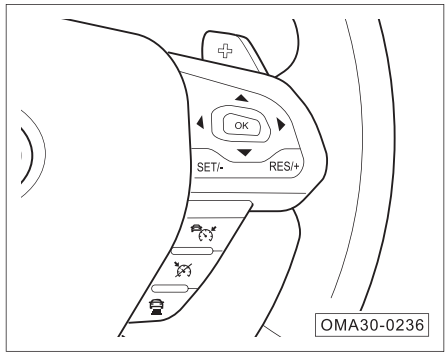
Gearshift Paddle on Steering Wheel (Apply to Certain Models)



When the transmission at "M" gear (please refer to page 266), the driver can move gearshift paddle:

1. The downshift paddle for shifting to a lower gear; or
2. The upshift paddle for shifting to higher gear

Steering Wheel Button (Right)



Right buttons of the steering wheel include the display control buttons of instrument cluster, cruise control buttons.

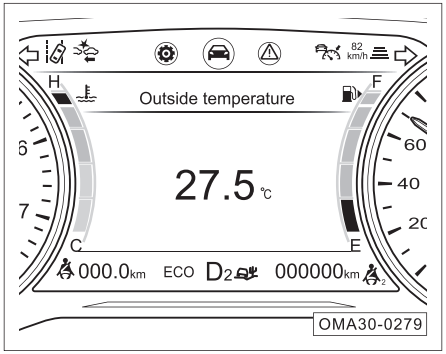
1. Instrument cluster display screen control button
   - OK : select/confirm
     - Short press this button to select current menu item.
     - Long press this button to reset the current traveling data memory.
   - ◄ / ► : leftward/rightward
     - Previous/next item on the current menu may be switched on orderly.
   - ▲ / ▼ : upward/downward
     - Short-press may switch on the previous/next menu interface under driving information displaying.
     - Short press up/down to move the selection bar, or adjust values up/down.
2. Cruise control buttons
   - Constant speed cruise control buttons (apply to certain models) (Please refer to page 290).
   - Adaptive cruise control buttons (apply to certain models) (Please refer to page 293).

Driving Information Description

Press ◀ / ▶ button on the right side of the steering wheel to enter the driving information interface when the start switch is at the "ON" position; press ▲ / ▼ button may switch between the following information interface.

- Outside temperature
- Driving mileage
- Battery voltage
- Speed
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Short-term memory
- Long-term memory
- Tire pressure/Tire temperature

Outside Temperature

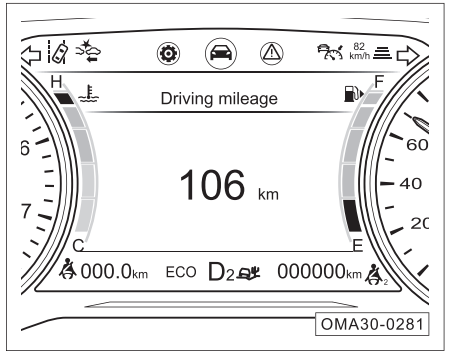


Indicate the current ambient temperature outside the vehicle.

Hint

- External temperature signal is from the air conditioning system, expressed in ºC or ºF depending on your choice (Please refer to page 70).
- When no external temperature signal is received, the symbol “--:--” is shown on the screen.

Driving Mileage

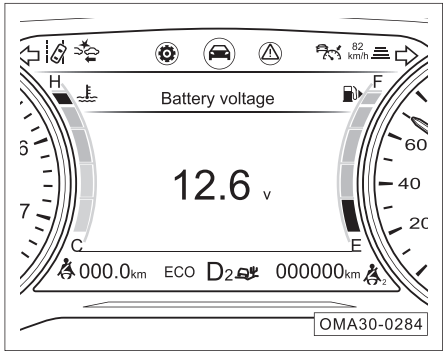


Indicates approximately distance that can be covered by remaining fuel in the fuel tank.

Hint

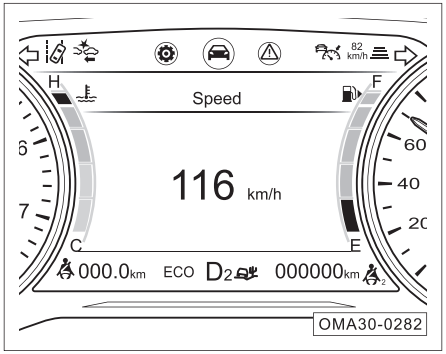
The parameter is shown for reference only and cannot be preset, which varies with the remaining fuel volume in the fuel tank.

Battery Voltage



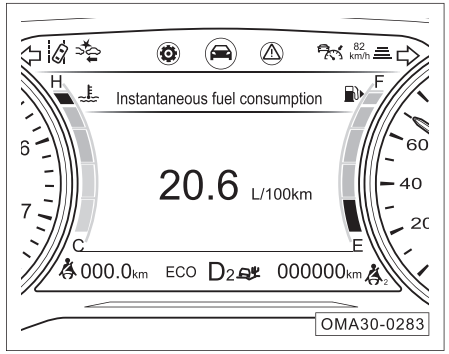
Indicates current battery voltage. This parameter cannot be preset.

Speed



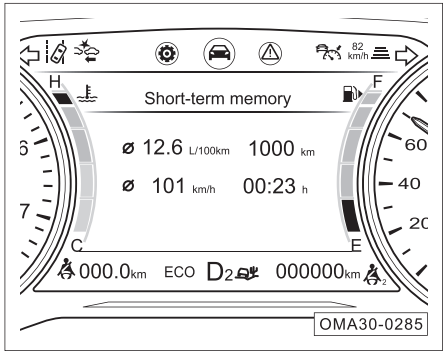
Indicates current instantaneous speed of the vehicle. This parameter cannot be preset.

Instantaneous Fuel Consumption



Indicates fuel consumption in the past one second. This parameter cannot be preset.

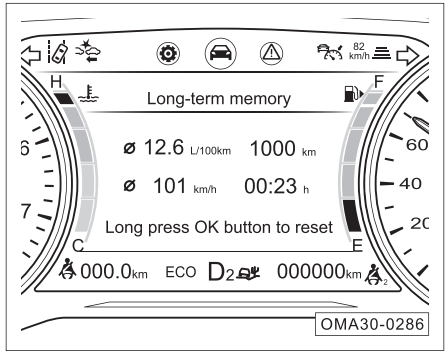
Short-Term Memory



Indicate the one-time driving information after turning on the start switch, which is average fuel consumption (unit: L/100km), driving mileage (unit: km), average vehicle speed (unit: km/h), driving time (unit: h).

This parameter cannot be preset. It resets when a certain period elapses since the starter switch is turned off. But the data is permanently saved in the memory.

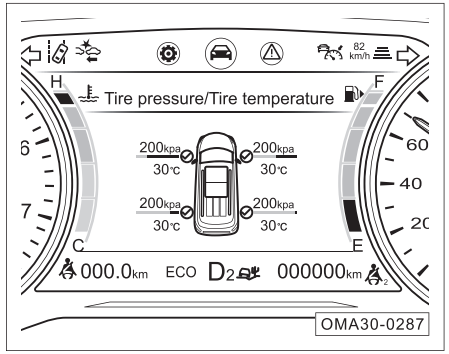
Long-Term Memory



Indicate the driving information reset last time, which is average fuel consumption (unit: L/100km), driving mileage (unit: km), average vehicle speed (unit: km/h) driving time (unit: h).

This parameter can be preset. It resets by long pressing the OK button.

Tire pressure/Tire Temperature



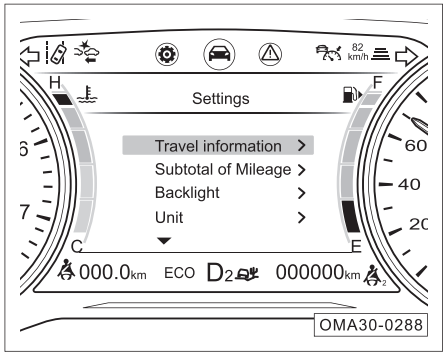
Indicate the tire pressure/tire temperature corresponding to four wheels of the vehicle.

Hint

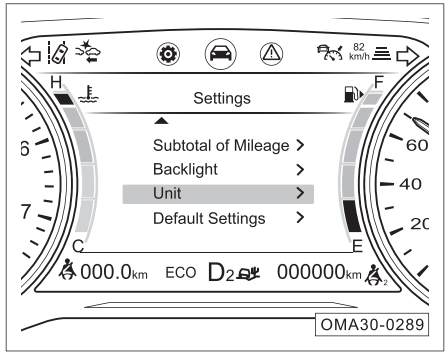
Indication of tire pressure/tire temperature is dependent upon vehicle model/ configuration. In case of no tire pressure specification, no tire pressure data is displayed on the screen.

Menu Setting for Instrument Cluster Display

First-Class Menu

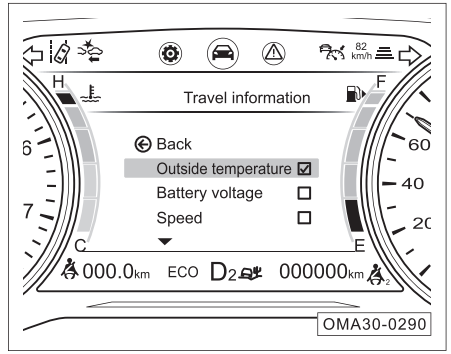


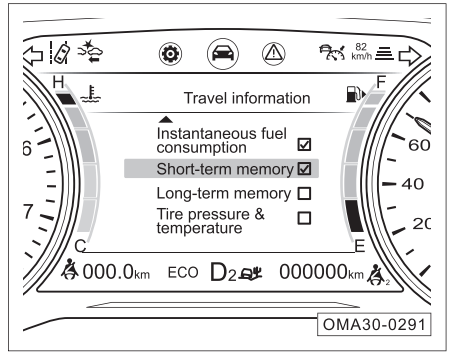
With vehicle speed being zero, move to the menu setting screen by pressing the ◀/▶ button.



Press the ▲ / ▼ button to move the cursor. Press OK to open menu at the lower level.

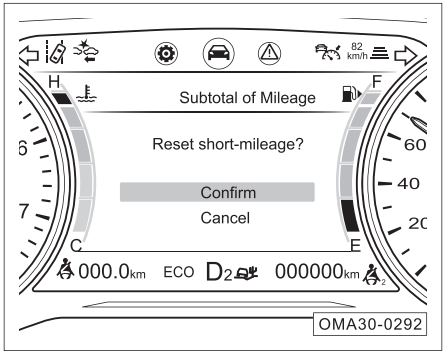
Driving Information Setting





– Move the selection cursor by pressing ▲ / ▼ button, select or cancel by pressing " OK " button.
– Multi-selections are available; the selected items display alternately in the driving information interface by pressing ▲ / ▼ button, while unselected ones may not indicate.
– Select "RETURN" and press the OK button to return to the previous menu.

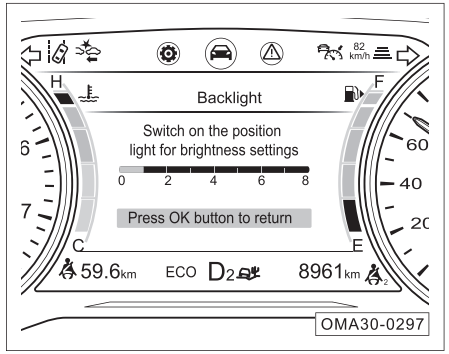
Mileage Setting



Resetting of short-mileage is available.

– Select "Confirm" and press the OK button to reset the short-mileage tripe.
– Select "Cancel" and press the OK button to return to the previous menu.

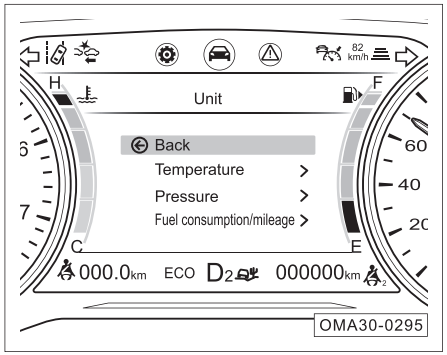
Backlight Setting



The backlight grade in the vehicle can be adjusted.

– The adjusting of backlight may not work before switching on the position light.
– When position light is switched on, press ▲ / ▼ button to adjust the backlight, press ▲ to increase, press ▼ to decrease.
– Press the OK button to return to the previous menu.

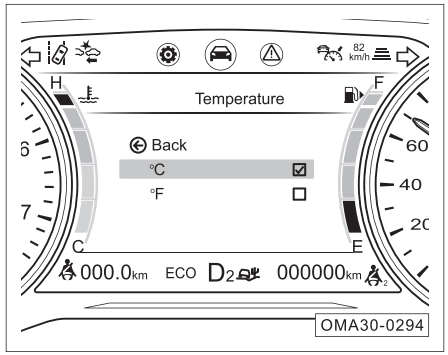
Setting of Unit



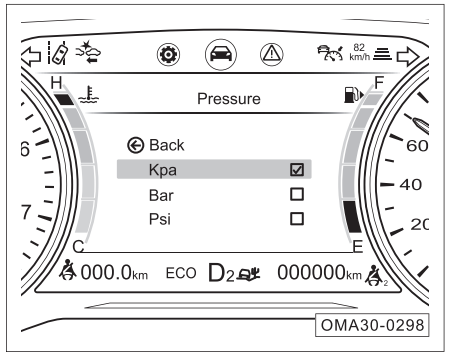
Selects units of temperature, pressure, fuel consumption, and distance.

– Move the selection cursor by pressing ▲ / ▼ button, select or cancel by pressing "OK" button.

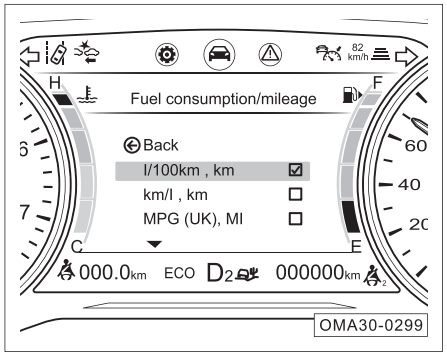
– Select "RETURN" and press the OK button to return to the previous menu.



– The figure shows unit setting of temperature.

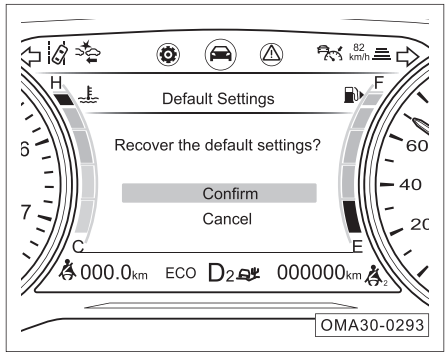


– The figure shows unit setting of pressure.



– The figure shows unit setting of fuel consumption/mileage.

Default Setting



Default settings may be recovered.

– Select "Confirm" and press the OK button to recover default settings.
– Select "Cancel" and press the OK button to return to the previous menu.

2.2 Start and Stop Vehicle

2.2.1 Smart Key

This vehicle is provided with two smart keys (which contain emergency mechanical keys) and key bar codes. If you need to re-customize the key, inform your dealer of the key bar code. If the key bar code is lost, inform your dealer of the vehicle VIN.

Low Intensity of Signal from the Smart key

To lock/unlock the vehicle door, release the hatchback door, or start the engine, the vehicle emits radio waves to locate the smart key.

In the following cases, it is impossible or difficult to lock/unlock the vehicle door, release the hatchback door, or start the engine:

- Near the vehicle there is equipment that is emitting strong radio waves.
- Carry the smart key together with telecommunication equipment, laptop, mobile phone, or radio signal transmitter.
- The smart key comes into contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.

Note

There is an electric loop inside the smart key to trigger anti-theft lock system. If this loop is damaged, the key is unable to start the engine. Thus:

- Protect the smart key from direct sunlight, high temperature or high humidity.
- Avoid dropping the smart key from a high place or crushed with a heavy thing.
- Avoid mixing the smart key with fluids. Use a piece of soft cloth to dry it when got wet.
- Do not leave the smart key in the vehicle. Carry it around with you.
- If the front door handle is wet due to rain or vehicle washing while the smart key is in the effective range, it is possible for the vehicle door to be unlocked.
- Holding the front door handle with your hand wearing a glove could cause the vehicle door sensor to slowly or impossibly respond to vehicle unlocking.

Note

- Within 3 seconds since the vehicle door lockup, it is impossible to unlock the vehicle door by holding the vehicle door handle.
- Pulling the front door handle immediately after holding it, perhaps you cannot open the door. Hold the handle, check that the vehicle door is unlocked, and then pull the handle.
- Even if the smart key is in the 1-meter range from the vehicle, locking/unlocking vehicle door may be impossible if the remote controller of the smart key is quite above or below the external door handle.
- The smart key could not operate if it is too close to the vehicle door or door window. If the effective range of the transmitter varies, possible cause is a weak battery.

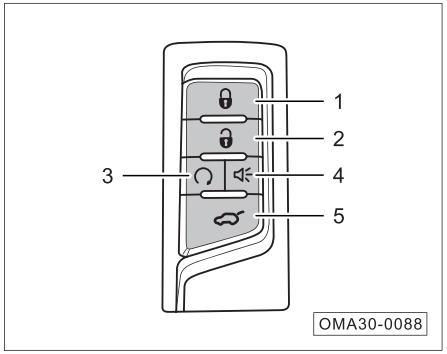
Locking/unlocking of all doors, up/down windows, open/close of sunroof, open of hatchback door may be remotely controlled through the wireless remote function of the smart key.

Operation of one-key start or close of engine, keyless entrance, automatic opening of hatchback door (apply to certain models) may be available through the intelligent induction function of the smart key.

Hint

The smart key includes transceiver chip, which is equipped with electronic code that will be sent to the vehicle. The smart key can only be used to operate the vehicle when the electronic code of chip is consistent with the ID code of the vehicle registration.

Operation of Buttons



1. Lock button
2. Unlock button
3. Start/Stop engine button (apply to certain models)
4. Anti-theft alarm button (apply to certain models)
5. Hatchback door release button

Hint

- Standard and maximum distances of remote control are 50 meters and 100 meters, respectively.
- Operation of buttons on the smart key may not be available when start switch is at "ACC" or "ON" position.
- Quickly press the buttons on the smart key shortly for 3 times to recover its function when the lock or unlock function is failed.
- In case the Lock or Unlock button of the smart key is pressed successively, locking or unlocking will be implemented 6 times then the protection mode is activated to protect the lock from damage.

1. Operation of lock button

– Short press this button once within the effective range to lock all doors; four door windows may close automatically by pressing this button and holding for 2 seconds; the sunroof may close automatically when pressing this button and holding for 3 seconds (apply to certain models). Release this button while the vehicle window or sunroof is closing automatically, it stops closing.

– Pressing this button two times within 0.5 second activates the vehicle search function, with the turn signals flashing quickly for three times.

Hint

When the door is locked, turn signal light will flash once.

Note

If the lock button is pressed and one door is not closed then the four doors will implement locking but unlock immediately. If the lock button is pressed while the cover of engine compartment and hatchback door is not closed, then a warning beep will be heard from the system.

2. Operation of unlock button

– Short press this button once within the effective range to unlock all doors; four door windows may open automatically by pressing this button and holding for 2 seconds; the sunroof may open automatically when pressing this button and holding for 3 seconds (apply to certain models). Release this button while the vehicle window or sunroof is opening, it stops opening.

Hint

When the door is unlocked, turn signal light will flash twice.

Note

After pressing the unlock button to unlock the door, the system will lock the door again if it is not opened within 30 seconds.

3. Start/Stop engine button (apply to certain models)

– In the effective range, press the Lock button on the smart key, within 2 seconds press and hold the button until the turn signals flash. You can remotely start the engine.

– With the engine remotely started, press the button and hold for 3 seconds. You can remotely stop the engine.

Hint

The function of remotely starting engine remains on at a time for at most 5 minutes in default. To change the period, contact a GAC 4S shop.

4. Anti-theft alarm button (apply to certain models)

– Pressing this button for more than 3 seconds activates anti-theft alarm, with the horn sounding and the turn signals flashing 30 seconds. Short pressing the or button briefly deactivates the anti-theft alarm.

5. Hatchback door release button

– In the effective range, press this button and hold for 2 or more seconds, to release the hatchback door.

– If the vehicle is equipped with an electric hatchback door, pressing this button while the hatchback door is opening can interrupt opening.

Note

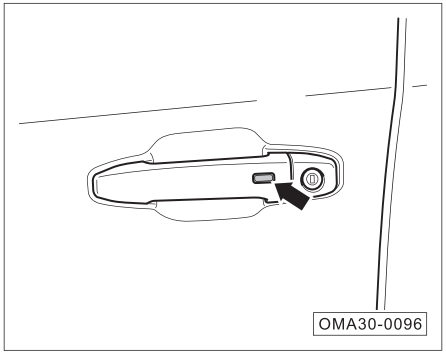
Once the vehicle speed exceeds 1.5km/h, it is forbidden to unlock the hatchback door.

Warning Switching between "Sound" and "Light"

"light" warning indicates the vehicle only warns the driver with vehicle light;"light", "sound" warning indicates the vehicle warns the driver with flashing of light and whistling of horn simultaneously.

When Start switch is in the "OFF" position, while pressing the and button on the smart key for 2 seconds, it may switch between the warning of "light" and "light, sound". With the switchover successful, the left and right turn signals flash simultaneously for three times (this feature is provided only for the electronic anti-theft alarm system).

Keyless Entry



– With the starter switch at OFF, carry the smart key with you, approach the vehicle, and put your hand on the inner side of the external handle of the driver’ s door (unlocking area), then effective sensing unlocks all the doors.

– With the starter switch at OFF, carry the smart key with you, press once the depression in the driver’ s door handle (see the arrow) (locking area) after all the doors are closed, then effective sensing locks all the doors.

Note

- After locking vehicle doors using keyless entry function, it takes 3 seconds before the keyless entry function can be activated to unlock doors.
- If your hand touches both the unlocking and locking areas at the same time, unlocking prevails. Our recommendation is that you should not touch both the unlocking and locking areas at the same time.
- Snow or ice on the vehicle door handle should be removed as soon as possible, which affects the keyless entry function.
- Pressing the locking area by mistake while closing the door can activate the horn, indicating that the door is not closed securely. Touch the locking area only when it is necessary to lock the door.

– When start switch is in the "OFF" position, if the user with smart key approaches to the hatchback door, pressing the release switch of the hatchback door may unlock and open the hatchback door.
– If the vehicle is unlocked and stationary, then you may open the hatchback door without carrying the smart key. In addition, the hatchback door may also be released using the automatic function (apply to certain model) (Please refer to page 90).

Note

Once the vehicle speed exceeds 1.5km/h, it is forbidden to unlock the hatchback door.

Immobilizer System

The vehicle is provided with the immobilizer function to prevent the vehicle from being stolen. If an improperly-coded key (or other tool) is used to start the engine, the fuel system will not work, thus the vehicle cannot start normally.

Note

If you enter your vehicle carrying a matched smart key, the immobilizer system is deactivated automatically.

Replace Battery

The smart key is equipped with wireless transmitter and battery while the vehicle equipped with wireless receiver. If the battery power of the smart key is adequate then it will work within the effective range. If there are obstacles between the smart key and the vehicle or the battery power is inadequate, or the key is used in bad weather then its effective operation range will be minimized.

Hint

Press a button on the smart key once, the indicator light on the smart key flashes once. The operation consumes battery electricity. The battery life is in the order of 1.5 years, depending on use frequency.

If the indicator light does not flash when the key is pressed, or if the button has to be pressed several times to lock or unlock the door, the battery could be run out or nearly run out. Replace the battery as soon as possible.

Note

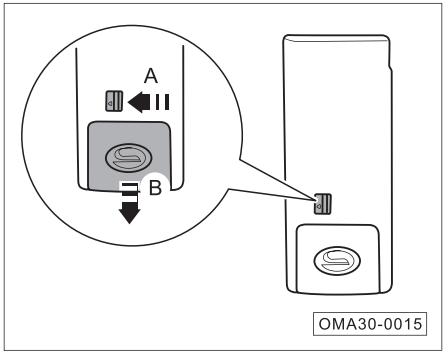
- The smart key receiving radio waves consumes battery power. Do not place the smart key on or near any television set or computer.
- Be sure to use a new battery with the same rated voltage and size for replacement.
- Using improper battery could damage the smart key.
- The disposal of used battery must follow relevant regulations and laws for environment protection.

Hint

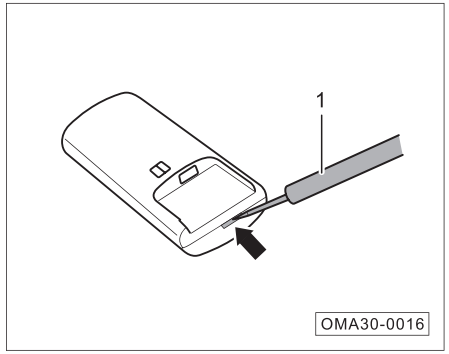
Do not replace the battery unless you have the required skill. Otherwise the key could be damaged.

Have the battery replaced in a GAC Motor authorized dealer.

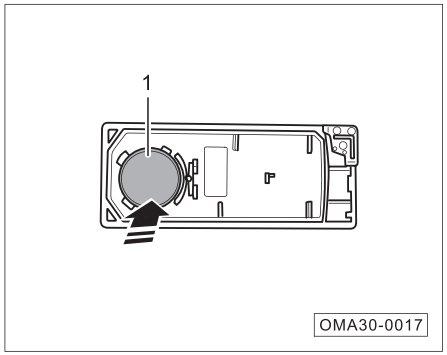
Steps to Replace Battery



– Move the switch in the direction of arrow A and pull out the emergency mechanical key in direction of arrow B.

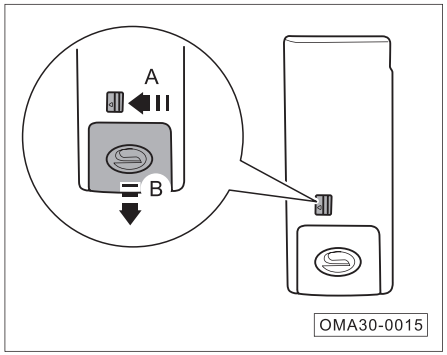


– Use a small flat-tip screw driver (1) to prise out the smart key case at the position indicate by the arrow.

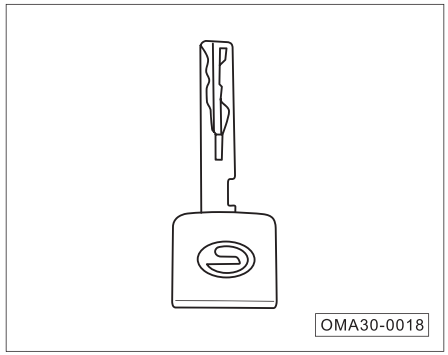


– Press the battery in direction of the arrow to take out the battery (1) of the smart key.
– Install the smart key in the reverse order.

2.2.2 Emergency Mechanical key



– Move the switch in the direction of arrow A and pull out the emergency mechanical key in direction of arrow B.



– Inserting the emergent mechanical key into the driver's door keyhole may lock all doors and unlock the driver's door (Please refer to page 85).

Hint

The emergency mechanical key can only be used to lock all vehicle doors or unlock the driver’s door. It cannot be used to start the engine.

2.2.3 Central Locking System

Operating the central locking system in the following two ways can lock or unlock all the doors:

1. Press the Lock and Unlock button of the smart key to operate the central locking system.
2. Use the central door locking button to control the central locking system.

Hint

If the anti-theft function is activated using the smart key, the central locking button can only be used to lock doors and cannot be used to unlock doors.

Open the Door Lock

Within the effective range, pressing briefly the button once can unlock all the doors.

Within approximately 1.0m to vehicle door with smart key, the keyless entry function may be activated to unlock the four doors (Please refer to page 76).

Hint

The default setting of existing models is to press the button on the smart key to unlock all the doors automatically. Or via the "vehicle setting" on sound system, press the button on the smart key to unlock the driver's door only, and press the button again to unlock the other doors (Please refer to page 209).

Auto-Unlock Function

If the vehicle stops with the doors locked, the driver’s door can be unlocked automatically when the starter switch is turn to “OFF”.

Hint

“Auto-unlock” function is optional, which can be activated the "vehicle setting" on sound system (Please refer to page 209).

Vehicle Speed Locking Function

With the starter switch at the ON position, and all doors closed:

– The central locking system can automatically lock all doors if vehicle speed exceeds 20km/h.
– The central locking system can automatically lock all doors if vehicle speed is 5km/h to 20km/h for more than 30 seconds.

Hint

“Speed locking” function is optional, which can be activated the "vehicle setting" on sound system (Please refer to page 209).

After speed locking, press the central door locking button to unlock all doors.

Door Unlocking Function at Collision

With the starter switch at the ON position, and other specified conditions met, the four doors can be simultaneously unlocked twice with an interval of 3 seconds between the unlocking actions if the vehicle is involved in a collision accident.

Smart Active Locking and Unlocking (Apply to Certain Models)

– Smart active unlocking: carry the smart key with you and stand less than 2 meters from the vehicle, the vehicle is unlocked automatically, and the exterior rear-view mirrors automatically extend.
– Smart active locking: with four doors closed, and the starter switch at OFF:

1. If the smart active locking function is active, the smart key is with you, and you stand less than 2 meters from the vehicle for more than 1 minute, the system will think that the smart key is not inside the vehicle. When the turn signals flash once, and the horn sounds once, meanwhile the exterior rear-view mirrors fold back, the smart active locking function will lock all the doors.
2. If you stand less than 2 meters from the vehicle for more than 2 minutes, for purpose of power saving the system will deactivate the active locking function temporarily. To reactivate the function, you shall open then close any of the doors.
3. With the smart active locking function active, if you stand in the range effective for the locking/unlocking operation, the indicator light on the smart key keeps flashing until the doors are locked.

Hint

- If any door is not securely closed, the instrument cluster can provide the corresponding information. If all the doors are closed but the smart key is inside the vehicle, the instrument cluster can show the texts “Turn off battery before exiting vehicle and carry the key with you”.
- If all the doors are closed but the smart key is inside the vehicle, or the smart key is not detected in the range less than 2 meters from the vehicle, or any of the doors is not securely closed, the smart active locking function cannot be activated.
- With the smart active locking function active, if you approach again the vehicle within 3 seconds, the system thinks you are checking for any door not securely locked. In this case, the system does not activate the smart active unlocking function. You can pull the rear door handle to check whether the doors are securely locked.
- “Smart unlocking” function is optional, which can be activated the "vehicle setting" on sound system (Please refer to page 208).

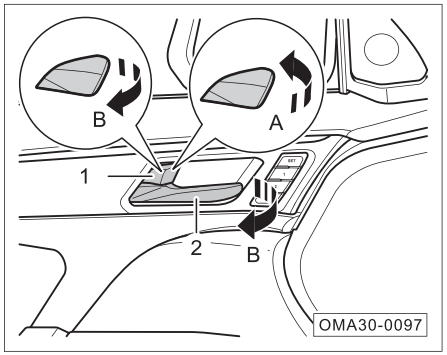
Precautions for Smart Active Locking

The smart active locking function becomes inoperative in any of the following cases:

– Smart key is inside the vehicle.
– Vehicle door or engine hood is not closed.
– Starter switch is at a position other than “OFF”.
– The smart key is not detected in the range less than 2 meters from the vehicle, after you leave the vehicle and close the doors.
– Smart key is thrown through the window in the vehicle.
– You stand too close to the vehicle.
– Smart key is in the trunk.
– Any of the doors (including the hatchback door) is not securely closed (for example, you have already taken the key more than 2 meters away from the vehicle when the hatchback door is being closed).

If you have walked for more than 2 meters from the vehicle but heard no horn sounding, check whether any of above conditions occurs. Note that incorrect operation can cause locking failure. Horn sounds only when locking is accomplished.

Door Latch and Door Inner Handle



Each door has a locking knob (1) and an interior handle (2).

– In direction of arrow A, pushing inward the locking knob (1) locks the corresponding door.
– In direction of arrow B, pull outward the locking knob (1), meanwhile in direction of arrow B, pull the interior handle (2), to open the corresponding door.

Central Door Locking Button

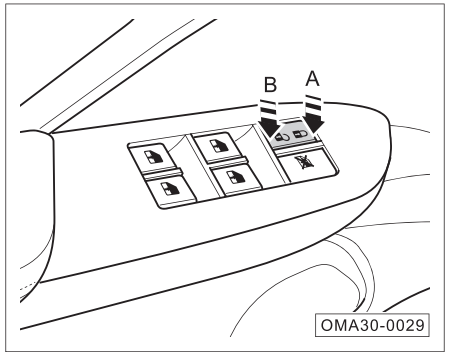
Hint

The latch on the door can only lock or unlock the corresponding door.

If the rear door locking knob is unlocked, but it is impossible to open the rear door using the interior handle, a possible cause is that the child safety lock is activated (please refer to page **85**). In this case, open the rear door from outside, and never rudely pull the interior handle. Otherwise it could be damaged.

Note

When the door latch locks, do not pull the door handle by force.



The central door locking button on the driver's side can lock and unlock the doors inside the vehicle.

Lock the door:

– In direction of arrow A, press the end of the central locking system button, to lock all the doors.

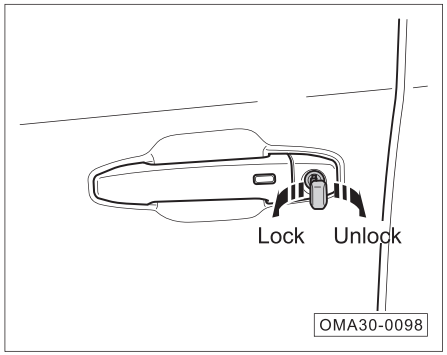
Unlock the door:

– In direction of arrow B, press the end of the central locking system button, to unlock all the doors.

Warning

Do not leave the child or the disabled in the vehicle alone. If emergency occurs with the doors locked, it is hard for the child or disabled person to leave the vehicle by himself. In accidents, locked doors can necessarily increase difficulty of rescue.

Vehicle Door Lock Hole



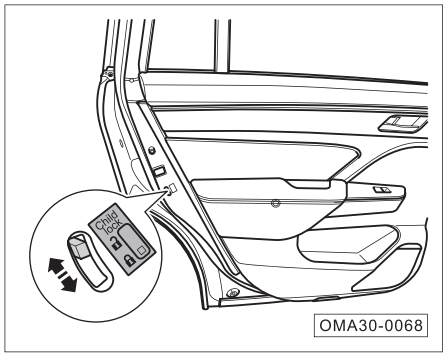
- Take out the emergency mechanical key (please refer to page 80);
- Insert the emergency mechanical key in the lock hole in the driver’s door.
- Rotating anticlockwise the key locks all the doors.
- Rotating clockwise the key unlocks only the driver’s door.

Warning

To protect the door lock motor, the body control system will enter the motor protection status if you unlock or lock successively for 6 times in a short time (by this time, you can unlock once more). Then, pause for 5s before operating the door lock again.

Child Safety Lock

The child safety lock is intended to reduce the risk of accidental opening of any door by children inside the vehicle. With the child safety lock activated, the doors can only be opened from outside.



Lock child safety lock:

– Open the door whose child safety lock needs to be locked.
– As shown in the figure, turn the child safety lock switch from position to position to activate the child safety lock.

Unlock child safety lock:

– Open the door whose child safety lock needs to be switched off.
– As shown in the figure, turn the child safety lock switch from position to position to switch off the child safety lock.

Hint

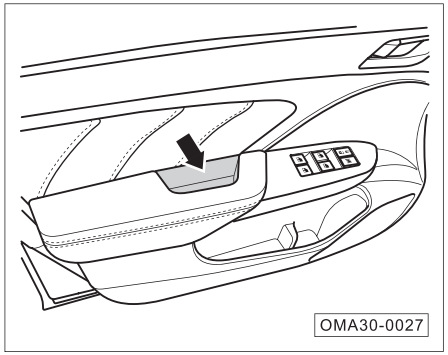
With the child safety door active, rear door cannot be opened. In this case, it can only be opened from outside. Do not rudely pull the interior handle. Otherwise it could be damaged.

Warning

Never leave the child or disabled person alone in the vehicle, because once the lock button is pressed, the door will be locked immediately. When an emergency occurs, the child or disabled person feels difficult in leaving the vehicle to protect themselves. In the event of accidents, it will be more difficult to rescue the occupants in the vehicle due to the locked doors.

2.2.4 Door

Close the Door



– Pull inward the handle (see the arrow) from inside.
– Push the door directly from outside.

Hint

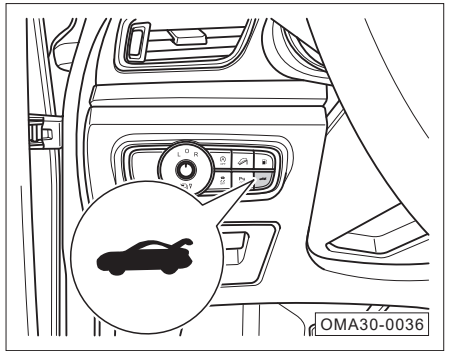
- If the door is insecurely closed for example when the applied force is insufficient, open and closed the door again.
- An alert will appear on the display of instrument cluster if any door is insecurely closed; When the vehicle speed exceeds 5km/h, you will hear a warning beep.

Warning

- Before driving off, check that all doors are closed. Insecurely closed doors could open suddenly during vehicle travel, causing injury or accident.
- The doors can only be opened or closed with the vehicle stationary.
- To avoid pinch, hands must be away from the door edge while the door is being closed.

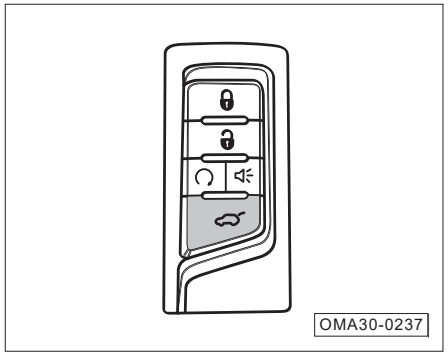
2.2.5 Hatchback Door

Opening with the Hatchback Door Button on the Instrument Panel (apply to certain models)



– Long press the hatchback door button on the instrument panel and hold for 1.5 seconds or more, the electric hatchback door automatically opens to the highest position. Press the button again in the process, the hatchback door can stop opening.

Releasing Hatchback Door with the Smart key

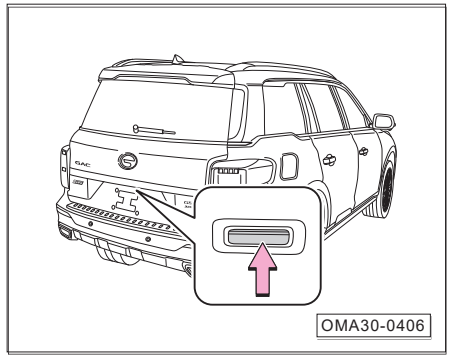


In the effective range, press the button on the smart key for approximately 2 seconds:

– In the case of a manual hatchback door, you can open it to the highest position.

– In the case of an electric hatchback door, it can open to the highest position. Pressing the button again while it is opening can stop the opening process.

Releasing Hatchback Door with the Keyless Entry Mode Active



Carrying the smart key with you, press the hatchback door release button in the range approximately 1.0 meter from the hatchback door:

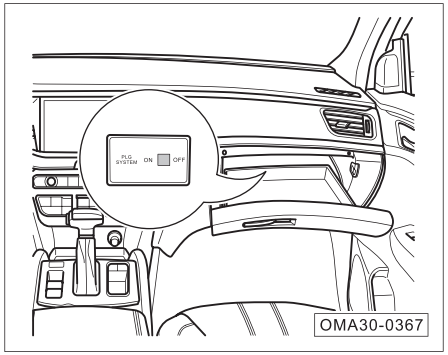
– In the case of a manual hatchback door, you can open it to the highest position.

– In the case of an electric hatchback door, it can open to the highest position. Pressing the button again while it is opening can stop the opening process.

Hint

- If the vehicle is unlocked and stationary, then it is not necessary to carry the smart key.
- When the hatchback door begins to open automatically, both the left and right turn signals flash twice, and the buzzer sounds once for a long time.
- While the electric hatchback door is opening automatically, the buzzer sounds intermittently.

Master Switch of the Electric Hatchback Door System (Apply to Certain Models)



The master switch of the electric hatchback door system is located in the glove box. To operate the switch, open the glove box first.

– Setting the master switch of electric hatchback door system at ON enables the automatically opening/closing function of the hatchback door.
– Setting the master switch of electric hatchback door system at OFF disables the automatically opening/closing function of the hatchback door. In this case, under control are only unlocking and locking.

Conditions for automatically opening

The gearshift lever of the transmission is at the “P” position, or vehicle speed is less than 3km/h is the condition for automatically opening.

Conditions for automatically closing

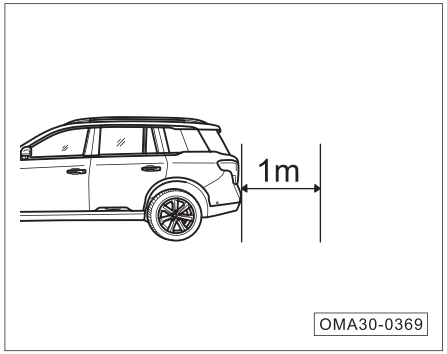
The automatically closing function can be performed regardless vehicle speed and transmission gear.

Hint

If the hatchback door cannot open/close automatically, check whether the master switch of the electric hatchback door is set to ON.

If the master switch is set to ON but the problem remains there, have the system checked by a GAC 4S shop.

Hatchback Door Automatically Opening (Apply to Certain Models)



– With the starter switch at OFF and the four doors closed, carry the smart key with you into the hatchback door sensing area. When you are approximately 0.5 meter from the hatchback door, the horn sounds once meanwhile the turn signals begin to flash. If you remain there or retreat by less than 1 meter, the hatchback door opens automatically 3.2 seconds later.

– If within 3.2 seconds since the horn sounds you leave the hatchback door sensing area or press the button on the smart key, it can pause the automatically opening function.

Hint

- The high-mounted brake light will flash four times when the hatchback door automatically opens in order to remind you.
- To reactive the hatchback door automatically opening function after pausing it using the button on the smart key, you shall open then close either front door.
- The hatchback door automatically opening function can be turned on or off from the Vehicle Settings screen of the audio system (please refer to page 209).

Note

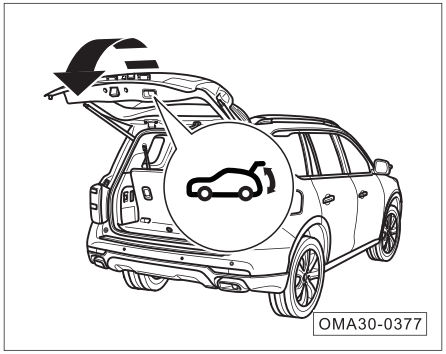
- Be sure that the smart key is at least 1 meter away from the hatchback door when you are cleaning the vehicle. Vehicle washing worker stands in hatchback door sensing area, this could cause the hatchback door to open automatically.
- When you carry the smart key with you and pick up things near the hatchback door, be aware that this could cause the hatchback door to open automatically.

Closing the Hatchback Door

Warning

If driving the vehicle when the hatchback door is opened, you should comply with the following precautions:

- To prevent exhaust gas from getting into the interior that causes poisoning, open all windows, sun roof and the A/C external recirculation system and open the air outlets on the instrument panel, and adjust the A/C air flow to the maximum speed.
- Be sure to drive with extra care. All the articles placed in the trunk must be securely fastened. Avoid emergency braking or sharp turning as much as possible. Otherwise the articles inside could be thrown out or the hatchback door will be damaged.
- Make sure the loads outside the trunk are clearly marked to cause other drivers' attention. Otherwise it can cause accidents easily. Also, observe the local traffic laws and regulations strictly.



– Ordinary hatchback door: Lower the hatchback door down to the rear bumper cover in the direction of the arrow, and then press it down to close it with hands.
– Electric hatchback door：
  - Press the Close button on the hatchback door, the hatchback door can automatically lower to close. Press the button again in the process, the hatchback door can stop closing.
  - In the effective range, press the button on the smart key and hold for about 2 seconds, the electric hatchback door can automatically lower to close. Press the button again in the process, the hatchback door can stop closing.
  - Long press the hatchback door button on the instrument panel and hold for 1.5 seconds or more, the electric hatchback door automatically lowers to close. Press the button again in the process, the hatchback door can stop closing.
– Check whether the hatchback door lock catch is locked securely.

Hint

- When the hatchback door begins to close automatically, both the left and right turn signals flash twice, and the buzzer sounds once for a longer time.
- While the electric hatchback door is closing automatically, the buzzer sounds intermittently.
- An alert will appear on the display of instrument cluster if the hatchback door is insecurely closed; When the vehicle speed exceeds 5km/h, you will hear a warning beep.

Hint

- Lock the hatchback door immediately after it is closed.

Note

Always check that the hatchback door is closed securely. Otherwise it can cause accidents easily.

- Before closing the hatchback door please check that no people or animals are within the hatchback door coverage.
- Check that the hatchback door is securely locked. Otherwise it could open accidentally while the vehicle is traveling.

Electric Hatchback Door Opening Height Setting (Apply toCertain Models)

Electric hatchback door opening height setting can be performed when it opens by more than half the preset height. Next time, the electric hatchback door can open to the new setting.

Opening height setting

Open the hatchback door to desired height. Press the hatchback door Close button and hold for 2 to 5 seconds. The height setting is hence completed.

Hint

With the height setting completed, the buzzer sounds intermittently twice.

Canceling height setting

Manually open the hatchback door to above the set height, this cancels the height setting.

Anti-Pinch Function of the Electric Hatchback Door (Apply to Certain Models)

1. Anti-pinch strip

This feature remains effective while the hatchback door is automatically closing:

– With the anti-pinch strip is triggered, the hatchback door stops closing and automatically opens to initial position.

2. Obstacle detection

This feature remains effective while the hatchback door is automatically opening or closing.

– If the feature is triggered while the hatchback door is automatically closing, the hatchback door stops closing and automatically opens to initial position.

– If the feature is triggered while the hatchback door is automatically opening, the hatchback door stops opening, closes slightly then stops moving.

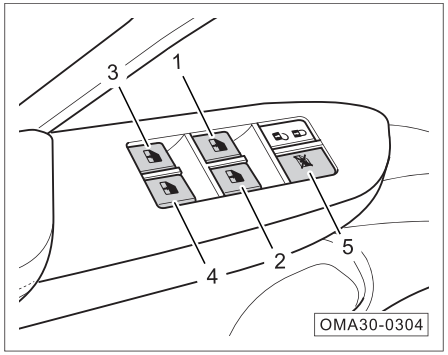
Hint

With the anti-pinch function triggered, the buzzer sounds intermittently three times.

2.2.6 Electric Windows

With the starter switch at the “ON” position, the power windows can be operated. Within 40 seconds after the starter switch is turned to “ACC” or “OFF” from “ON”, the power windows can be operated. However if the driver’s door is opened within the 40 seconds, the power windows cannot be operated since the door-opening instant.

Electric Window Button on the Driver's Side



1. Front left electric window button
2. Front right electric window button
3. Rear left electric window button
4. Rear right electric window button
5. Passenger window lock button

– Gently pull up and hold the button (1), the electric window moves up. It stops moving if it has reached the highest position or the button (1) is released.
– Heavily pull up and hold the button (1), the electric window moves up all the way to the highest position.
– Gently press the button (1), the electric window moves down. It stops moving if it has reached the lowest position or the button (1) is released.
– Heavily press the button (1), the electric window moves down all the way to the lowest position.

Hint

To interrupt the window movement during the automatic action process, press or pull up the button (1) again.

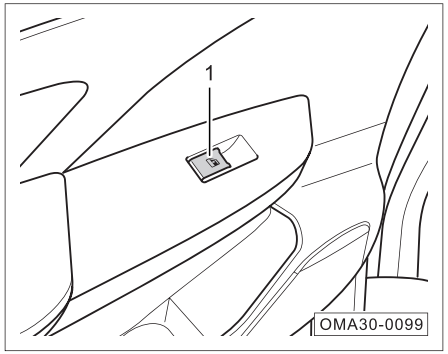
– Buttons 2, 3, and 4 are operated in the same manner as button 1, which are used to operate respective doors.

– Press the occupant window locking button (5), the three occupant’ s power windows cannot be operated using their respective buttons. To unlock, press the button again.

Note

- Even if you leave your vehicle for a short time, be sure to lock all the doors and windows, unless your vehicle is supervised.
- Attention should be paid when closing windows; otherwise serious injury may be caused.

Passenger Side Electric Window Button



Passenger’s windows are equipped with electric window buttons (1). These buttons may be used in the same manner as the driver’s window button.

If the passenger’s window locking button is activated, the buttons at the three electric windows (other than the driver’s window) cannot be operated

Anti-Pinch Function

All the four electric windows are equipped with anti-pinch function. If the window encounters an obstacle when it is rising in the anti-pinch area (4~200mm), it stops there and lowers immediately. If the above situation occurs, check out the reason before closing the window again.

If the anti-pinch function has been activated for quite a few times in a short period, the initialization data of anti-pinch is automatically erased to protect the window movement system. In this case, check carefully for obstacle again. Remove the obstacle if any. Perform the initialization learning to recover the anti-pinch function.

Note

- In spite of the anti-pinch function, it is necessary to check for obstacle before closing windows. In some cases (for example, rather thin or flexible obstacles), failure to activate the anti-pinch function could occur.
- Do not install any accessories within window movement range. Otherwise anti-pinch function could be affected or accidentally activated thus the windows cannot be closed normally.

Anti-Pinch Initialization

Initialization must be performed again if the electric window cannot move up automatically due to anti-pinch function failure, or if initialization data of anti-pinch has been automatically erased due to the anti-pinch function being activated for quite a few times in a short period.

Pull up and hold the button, the window moves up. Release the button, the window stops moving. Repeat the process several times until the window reaches the highest position. Then continue to pull up and hold the button for 2 to 3 seconds. The initialization is thus completed.

Note

During initialization, the anti-pinch function is disabled, so do not use any part of the body or other articles to obstruct the window movement. Failure to do so could cause injury or affect the initialization.

Note

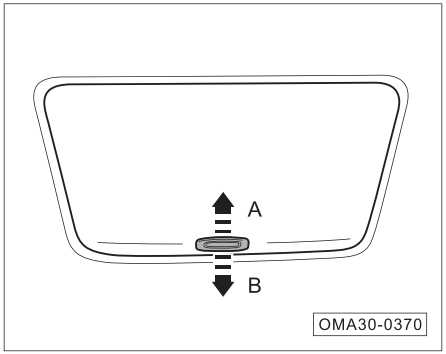
If the electric window system fails, contact your authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.

2.2.7 Electric Sunroof

With the starter switch at the “ON” position, the power sunroof can be operated. Within 40 seconds after the starter switch is turned to “ACC” or “OFF” from “ON”, the power roof can be operated. However if the driver’s door is opened within the 40 seconds, the power roof cannot be operated since the door-opening instant.

Open and Close the Sunroof Visor

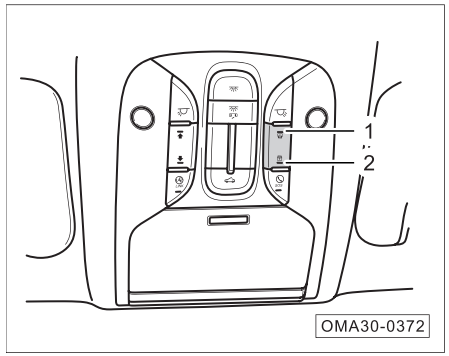
Manual sunroof screen (apply to certain models)



Hold the groove:

– Pull it in direction of arrow A, to open the sunroof visor.
– Pull it in direction of arrow B, to close the sunroof visor.

Electric sunroof visor (apply to certain models)



– To slightly open the sunroof visor, briefly short press the switch (1), the sunroof screen moves for a short distance then stops.
– To slightly close the sunroof screen, briefly short press the switch (2), the sunroof screen moves for a short distance then stops.
– Press the switch (1) and hold for more than 0.4 second, the sunroof screen automatically opens completely.

– Press the switch (2) and hold for more than 0.4 second, the sunroof screen automatically closes completely.

Hint

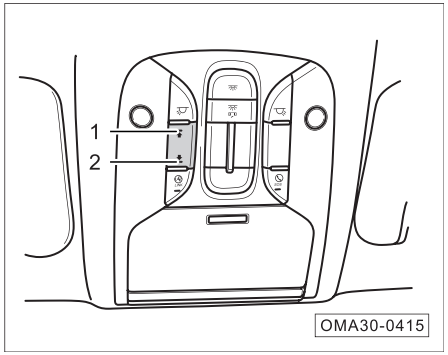
- When the sunroof opens, the sunroof visor automatically opens too.
- When the sunroof closes, the sunroof visor automatically closes too.

Note

- Only when the sunroof is closed completely can the sunroof visor be closed completely. Otherwise, the sunroof visor could be damaged due to the air flow produced when the vehicle is moving.
- Close the electric sunroof before closing the sunroof visor.
- If the sunroof visor is closed but the sunroof is not, rainwater can enter the vehicle when raining.

Open and Close the Electric Sunroof

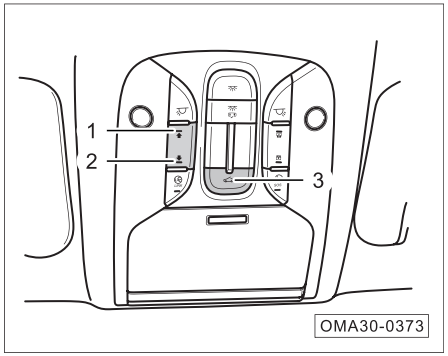
Non-panorama power sunroof



The general non-panorama power sunroof is a sliding-type power sunroof. Tilting and sliding can be performed for the completely closed sunroof.

– To slightly tilt the sunroof, briefly press the switch (1). The sunroof moves for a short distance then stops.
– To slightly close the sunroof, briefly press the switch (2). The sunroof moves for a short distance then stops.
– Press the switch (1) and hold for more than 0.4 second, the sunroof automatically opens completely.
– Press the switch (2) and hold for more than 0.4 second, the sunroof automatically closes completely.
– To tilt the sunroof, press the switch (2) when the sunroof is fully closed. The sunroof can automatically tilt to position. To close the sunroof, press and hold the switch (1) until the sunroof completely closes.

Panorama Power Sunroof



The panorama power sunroof is an external sliding-type power sunroof. The sunroof opening process consists of the tilting and the moving backward. The sunroof closing process consists of the moving forward and the closing downward.

– To slightly tilt the sunroof, briefly press the switch (1). The sunroof moves for a short distance then stops.
– To slightly close the sunroof, briefly press the switch (2). The sunroof moves for a short distance then stops.
– To completely open the sunroof, press heavily the switch (1). The sunroof can then open completely.
– To close the sunroof completely, press heavily the switch (2). The sunroof can automatically move to the tilt position. Press heavily again the switch (2) or (3) until the sunroof closes completely and stops.
– To tilt the sunroof, press the switch (3). The sunroof can automatically tilt to position. To close the sunroof, press the switch (2) or (3) until the sunroof closes completely and stops.

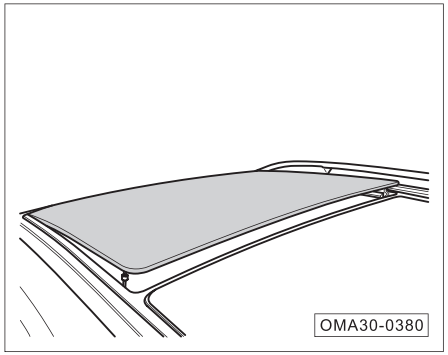
Note

To avoid damaging sunroof visor caused by suction due to outside strong air flow generated while vehicle is running:

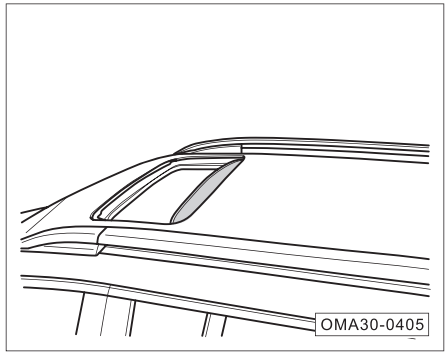
- Close the power sunroof before closing the sunroof visor.

Note

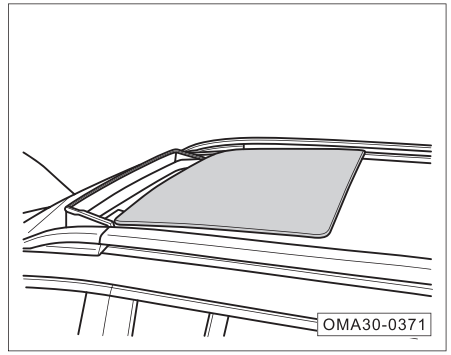
Before leaving the vehicle or when the vehicle is at unattended state, fully close the sunroof. If not, rain or foreign matters may enter the vehicle.



– The figure shows the rear end of sunroof tilting.



– Non-panorama power sunroof slides to fully open position.



– Panorama power sunroof slides to open

Sunroof Anti-Pinch Function

The sunroof is provided with the anti-pinch function when sliding to close and closing downward from tilting up.

- When in the sliding area, if the anti-pinch function is triggered, the sunroof will move toward the direction of opening to the desired position and stop.
- When in the tilting area, if the anti-pinch function is triggered, the sunroof will move toward the direction of tilting to the extreme tilting position.
- The purpose of the anti-pinch function is to prevent the sunroof from pinching big items when it is closed. If the sunroof runs into any obstacle while it is closing, it will stop and then return back a bit.

Warning

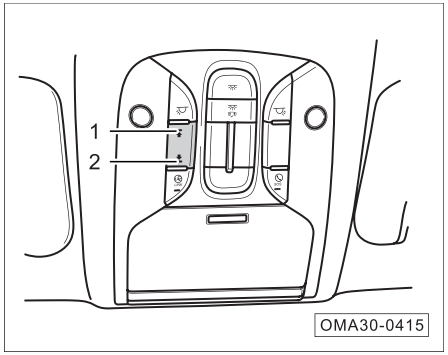
- Be sure to close the sunroof with extra care. To avoid serious injury, make sure nobody is close to the sunroof before opening and closing it.
- Anti-pinch sunroof cannot prevent your fingers or small items from being pinched.
- The sunroof stops sensing obstacle when it is almost closed. At this time, there is no anti-pinch function.
- Do not attempt to activate the anti-pinch function by hand or your body part. Doing so can cause serious injury to your body easily.

Note

Do not try to operate the sunroof in low temperature (below -20 °). In such environment, the anti-pitch function may not be activated, resulting in accidents. Also, low temperature can damage the sunroof motor.

Manual Initialization and Self-Learning of Sunroof

In some cases (sudden out of power of battery or prolonged use of vehicle), the sunroof needs to be initialized and self-studied manually.



Operation of non-panoramic electric sunroof:

- Press the sunroof switch (2). Release the switch when the sunroof moves to the fully tilted position.
- Press again the sunroof switch (2) and hold for more than 10 seconds, the sunroof starts initialization.
- The completion of initialization is indicated by two clicks. Release the sunroof switch (2).

With the initialization completed, you can perform the sunroof self-learning procedure:

- Press again the sunroof switch (2) and hold for more than 10 seconds, the sunroof can perform the following movements: moving to the tilt position → moving to closed position → sliding to fully open position → moving to closed position. Then it stops. Release the sunroof switch (2).
- The self-learning is completed.

Operation of panoramic electric sunroof:

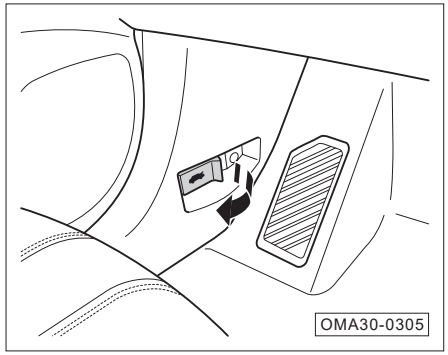
- Press and hold the sunroof switch (1) until the sunroof opens completely. Release the switch(1).
- Press again the sunroof switch (1) and hold for more than 10 seconds, the sunroof starts initialization.
- The completion of initialization is indicated by two clicks. Release the sunroof switch (1).

Note

If the electric sunroof system fails, contact your authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have your vehicle checked and repaired.

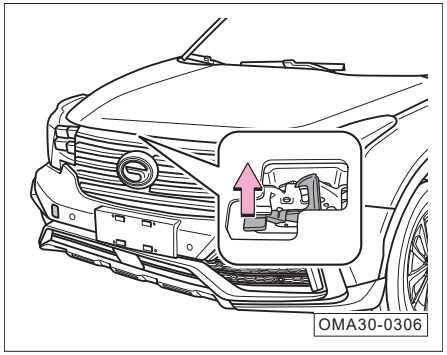
2.2.8 Engine Hood

Open and Close the Engine Hood



– Park your vehicle on level ground properly and apply the parking brake.

– In direction of arrow, pull the hood release handle that is located below the instrument panel on the driver side, the hood is unlocked and slightly springs up.



– In direction of arrow, push upward the locking mechanism to fully unlock the hood.

– Open the engine hood to approximately midway. Then the engine hood can be automatically raised to the fully open position by the hydraulic stay bars on both sides.

– To close the hood, when it drops to near the fenders, push heavily its front end downward using both hands so that it closes.

– After the engine hood is closed, inspect whether the buckle is locked firmly.

Hint

- Lubricate the moving part of the locking mechanism of the engine hood properly to help open or close the engine hood.
- An alert will appear on the display of instrument cluster if engine hood is insecurely closed; When the vehicle speed exceeds 5km/h, you will hear a warning beep.

⚠ Warning

Engine compartment is a hazard area where improper operation may cause serious injuries or deaths.

- If you see vapor or coolant overflowing from the engine compartment, do not open the hood. Doing so can seriously scald you.
- When the engine is hot, do not touch it. Doing so can seriously scald you.
- Never open the coolant expansion tank cover when the engine is in hot condition. At this moment, the cooling system is in high temperature and pressure condition.
- When the engine starting or running, do not touch the drive belt, generator, radiation fan and other rotating components, the high-voltage ignition system and high-temperature exhaust system.

2.2.9 Basic Operations of Anti-Theft on Vehicle Body

Anti-Theft on Vehicle Body - Unlock:

With the starter switch at “OFF” and the four doors closed, carry the smart key with you, approach the driver’s door, and put your hand on the inside of the driver’s door handle, or unlock the driver’s door using the smart key, then the anti-theft system unlocks the doors, meanwhile both the indicator light and turn signals flash twice.

Anti-Theft on Vehicle Body - Lock:

With the starter switch at “OFF”, the four doors closed, and the smart key outside the vehicle, press the depression in the driver’s door handle, or press the Lock button on the smart key, the anti-theft locks the doors, meanwhile both the indicator light and turn signals flash once.

Activate the Anti - Theft on vehicle body:

With the starter switch at the "OFF" position, and the complete vehicle locked at anti-theft status, the anti-theft system activates the horn to sound and the turn signals to flash twice for approximately 28 seconds if any door, engine hood, or hatchback door is opened using an illegal key or forcibly.

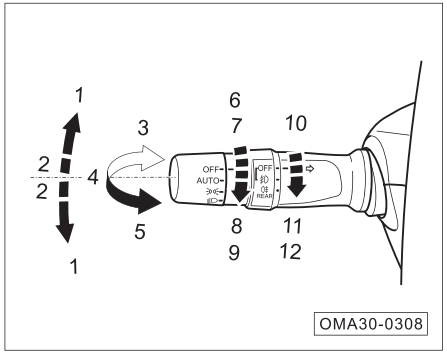
Anti-Theft on Engine：

With the starter switch at the "OFF" position, the anti-theft function on vehicle body at ON position and the smart key being inside the vehicle, when the vehicle owner presses the starter switch twice, if the anti-theft system considers this operation to be legal, it activates fuel injection and ignition; otherwise , it does not activate fuel injection and ignition, and activates the horn to sound and the turn signals to flash twice.

2.3 Headlights and Visual Field

2.3.1 Exterior Lights

Light combination switch



1. Turn signal light
2. Lane switching flashlight
3. Headlight high beam
4. Headlight low beam
5. Headlight flashers (high-beam headlights flashing)
6. OFF (vehicle light OFF)
7. AUTO (Automatic lighting)
8. Position light (turn on the position light manually)
9. Low beam (turn on the headlight manually)
10. OFF (fog light OFF)
11. Front fog light
12. Rear fog light

Turn Signal Light

– Pulling the light combination switch lever up or down to its limit position (1) turns on the right or left turn signals, and ⇨ or ⇦ indicator light on the instrument cluster flashes correspondingly.

Note

If any turn signal on the front end or rear end fails, the turn signals indicators in the instrument cluster will flash a double frequency.

Corner lights (apply to certain models)

– With vehicle speed less than 40km/h, and low or high beam headlights on, turn on the turn signals or rotate the steering wheel by a certain angle, both the turn signals and corner lights can come on.

Lane Switching Flashlight

– Set the starter switch at the ON position.
– Move quickly (within 0.1 to 0.7 second) the light combination switch control lever up or down to position (2), then release it to let it return to original position. After that, the corresponding turn signals flash three times, and the turn signal indicator light in the instrument cluster also flashes three times.

Headlight High Beam

– Set the starter switch at the ON position.
– Turn the light switch to the position
– Push the light combination switch lever forward (front of the vehicle) to the limit position (3), i.e. turn on headlight high beam, the corresponding indicator light on the instrument cluster is lit.
– Push the light combination switch lever backward (back of the vehicle) to limit position (4), i.e. turn off headlight high beam, the corresponding indicator light on the instrument cluster goes out, while the headlight low beam is still lit.
– To turn off all the vehicle lights, turn the light switch to the OFF position.

Warning

Headlight high beam may dazzle the drivers of other vehicles nearby and result in accidents. Please use it properly.

Headlight Low Beam

– Set the starter switch at the ON position.
– When the light combination switch lever is at the limit position (4), turn the light switch to position, i.e. turn on headlight low beam, the corresponding indicator on the instrument cluster is lit.
– To turn off all the vehicle lights, turn the light switch to the OFF position.

Headlight Flasher

– Set the starter switch at the ON position.
– Move the light combination switch control lever backward (back of the vehicle) to position (5) to turn on the headlight flashers. The front headlight high beam flash.
– Releasing the light combination switch control lever to let it return to position (4) can turn off the headlight flashers.

Hint

Even if no vehicle light is turned on, the headlight flashers remain flashing meanwhile the indicator light in the instrument cluster remains on if the light combination switch control lever is pulled backward (towards the rear of vehicle).

AUTO (Automatic Lighting)

– Set the starter switch at the ON position.
– Turn the light switch to AUTO Position, i.e. turn on auto lighting.

Hint

- Enable auto lighting. The vehicle will automatically turn on or off the lighting based on ambient light. When the ambient light outside the vehicle dims gradually, the position lights are turned on firstly, and then the low beams. When the ambient light outside the vehicle brightens gradually, the low beams go out firstly, and then the position lights. When entering or exiting a tunnel or garage or other dark environment, the position lights and low beams will be automatically turned on or close at the same time.
- You can adjust auto light sensitivity via the "vehicle setting" on sound system display interface (Please refer to page **210**). The higher the sensitivity, the brighter the lights.

Note

- If the instrument cluster display prompts "The sensor fails, please control the lighting manually", and for the sake of safety, the system will keep low beams turned on. In this case, you can choose to control the lighting manually, and go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your vehicle checked and repaired.
- The function of automatic turning on of lights could not be activated in heavily foggy or misty weather. Manually turn on the lights then.

Headlight not Turned-Off Warning

With the starter switch at the OFF position, if the headlights are on when the driver's door is opened, the system sounds alarm meanwhile the message “Light Not Off” appears on the display of instrument cluster.

⚠ Warning

When the vehicle is running at night or in poor visibility, do not turn on the position light only. Failure to do so can cause accidents easily. Turn on low beams when driving at night or in poor visibility environments.

Headlight Lag Turning Off Function

Within 10 minutes after the start switch is switched to Position "OFF", if the light switch is rotated from position OFF to another position and then back to position OFF within 2 seconds, headlight lag turning off function is activated.

After the headlight lag turning off function is activated, the low beam light will be lit for 30 seconds. If any door, hood, or hatchback door is opened during the 30-second period, the low-beam headlights will again remain on for 80 seconds since this opening moment. And so on.

Position Lights / Daytime Running Lights

– With the engine started, the daytime running lights can automatically turn on. They turn off automatically when the position lights, headlights, or engine are turned off.

– Turning the light switch to the position turns on the position lights, instrument panel lighting lamp and license plate light. The indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on accordingly.

– If the light switch is not turned to the OFF position, the above mentioned lights automatically go out 15 minutes later since the doors are locked and the starter switch is set to the OFF position. This function is intended to reduce battery operating time.

Hint

The daytime running light function can be turned on or off from the Vehicle Settings screen of the audio system (please refer to page 211).

Fog Light

– Set the starter switch at the ON position.

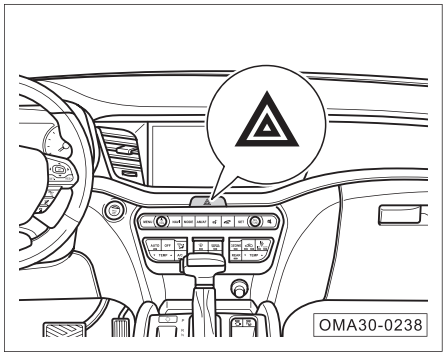
– Turn the light switch to the or position.

– Turning the fog light switch from OFF to the position turns on the front fog lights.

– Move the fog light switch from the position to the position, and then it can return to the position after releasing it. Repeat the process to realize changeover between the mode of only front fog lights coming on and the mode of both front and rear fog lights coming on.

– Turning the fog light switch to OFF, both the front and rear fog lights turn off.

Hazard Warning Indicator Light



Press the switch, its red background light comes on irrespective of its current position, and the danger warning lights come on. Press the switch again, the danger warning lights go out.

After the hazard warning indicator light is turned on, all turn signal lights flash at the same time. Two turn signal indicator lights on instrument cluster also flash at the same time.

In case of emergency, use the hazard warning indicator lights to attract the attention of other people on the road. It can reduce the risk of accidents. Turn on the hazard warning indicator lights in one of the following conditions:

- Vehicle breakdown due to technical failure.
- At the end of traffic flow during traffic jam.
- Towing another vehicle or being towed.

Note

- The danger warning lights will consume battery. Turn them off if situation permitted.
- Follow the relevant laws and regulations when using the hazard warning indicator lights.
- If the hazard warning indicator light becomes faulty in emergency, other warning means may be taken provided that they meet applicable traffic regulations.

Collision Warning Light

If the vehicle is involved into a collision accident, left and right turn signals flash simultaneously.

Lighting for Getting on the Vehicle

– Press the unlock button on the smart key when you stand near the vehicle, the position lights come on for 25 seconds as auxiliary lighting so that you see clearly obstacles if any. Press the unlock button on the smart key again to let the position lights remain on for 25 another seconds.

– If the starter switch is set to the ON position, the position lights go out.

Lighting forLocating the Vehicle

– Press the lock button on the smart key for 2 successive times, the position lights come on for 8 seconds; meanwhile the left and right turn signals flash 3 times so that you can see clearly the current position of your vehicle.

Guest Greeting Light (apply to certain models)

– With the starter switch at the OFF or ACC position, the guest greeting lighting lamp comes on if the door is unlocked or opened.

– The guest greeting lighting lamp goes out if the door is open for 30 minutes or the starter switch is set to the ON position.

Hint

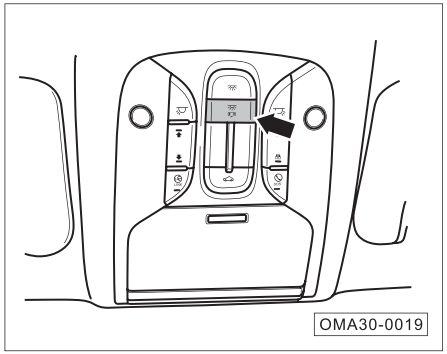
The light remains on for 30 seconds if the vehicles are unlocked, and for 30 minutes if the vehicle door is opened.

Intelligent Guest Greeting Light (apply to certain models)

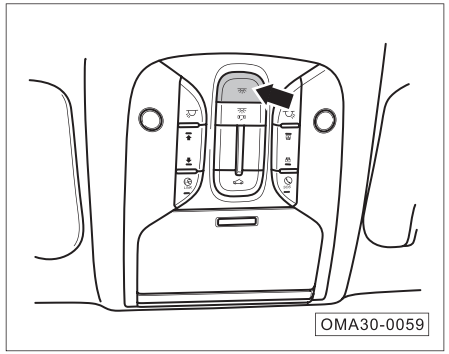
– With the starter switch at “OFF” and all doors closed and locked, approach the vehicle while carrying the smart key with you. When you are less than 3 meters to the vehicle, the guest greeting lighting light, interior lighting lights, and ambient lights come on automatically. Within 25 seconds from now, if the door is not opened, or you leave the vehicle taking the smart key away, these lights go out automatically.

2.3.2 Interior Light

Roof Light

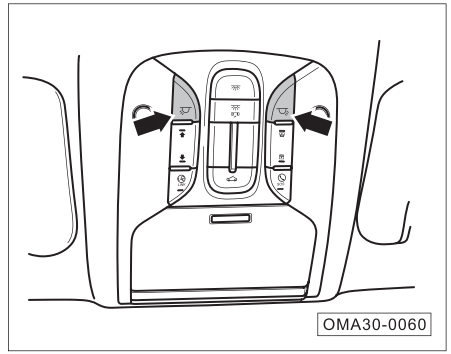


– Pressing the front roof lighting light switch (see the arrow) activates the function of roof lighting light automatically turning on . Open the door, all roof lighting lights come on automatically. Close the door, all roof lighting lights go out automatically.
– Press the button again to turn off the automatic function for the roof lights.



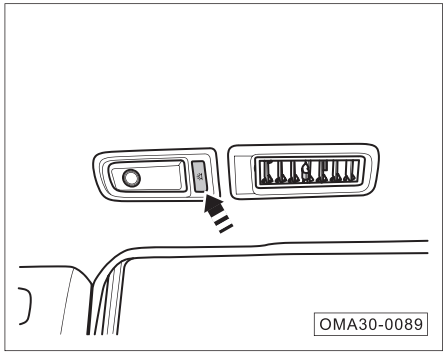
– Press the front roof lighting light switch (see the arrow),all roof lighting lights come on.
– Press the switch again, all roof lighting lights go out.

Front Roof Reading Light



– Press the switch left or right to the front roof lighting light (see the arrows), the corresponding roof lighting light comes on. Press the switch again, the corresponding roof lighting light goes out.
– This light is automatically turned off if the starter switch is at the OFF position and the vehicle remains locked for 15 minutes.

Second or Third Row Roof Lighting Light



– Press the second or third row roof lighting light switch, the corresponding reading light comes on. Press the switch again, the corresponding reading light goes out.
– This light is automatically turned off if the starter switch is at the OFF position and the vehicle remains locked for 15 minutes.

Glove Box Light (apply to certain models)

– Open the front passenger side glove box, the glove box light comes on automatically.
– Close the front passenger side glove box, the glove box light goes out automatically.

Trunk Light

– With the hatchback door opened, the trunk light comes on automatically.
– With the hatchback door closed, the trunk light goes out automatically.

Hint

With the starter switch at the "OFF" position, the interior lighting lamp automatically goes out if the doors remain locked for a period of time.

Lighting Lamp for Cigarette Lighter

– Turn on the position lamps, and the lighting lamp for cigarette lighter comes on.
– Turn off the position lamps, and the lighting lamp for cigarette lighter goes out.

Door Open Warning Light (apply to certain models)

– With the door open, the door open warning light comes on automatically.
– With the door closed, the door open warning light goes out automatically.

Ordinary Ambient Lights (Apply to Certain Models)

– With the position lights or interior lighting lights coming on, the ambient lights come on automatically.

Intelligent Ambient Light (Apply to Certain Models)

Effects of smart ambient lights to enhance both comfort and safety precaution can be set according to personal preferences and actual needs.

> **Hint**
>
> Effects of the smart ambient lights can be set from the Vehicle Settings screen of the audio system (please refer to page 210).

Comfort enhancement

1. Color

– The smart ambient lights have a total of 16 colors. You can choose colors from the ambient light adjustment screen, to meet your preferences and actual needs.

2. Brightness

– – Smart ambient lights have a total of 8 luminance levels. You can choose luminance levels from the ambient light adjustment screen.

3. Gradual adjustment

– When the smart ambient lights are turned on or off, their colors and luminance changes gradually. In addition, their colors and luminance levels can be adjusted gradually. This avoids distraction and improves experience while driving.

4. Guest greeting function

– When any door is opened, the smart ambient lights flash for 5 seconds in the color and luminance level that they operated with last time, to create the greeting effects.

5. Turning on sequentially and circularly

– After the engine is started, the smart ambient lights on interior trim panels come on at an interval of 0.5 second and in the sequence “right front door → right rear door → left rear door → left front door”, creating a “circular moving” effect.

Safety alert function

If smart ambient lights flash slowly once a second, it indicates that any door, window or the key is currently at abnormal status.

1. Alert to door not yet closed.

– In the following two cases, alert is raised to the driver:

If one or more doors are not securely closed while driving, the corresponding smart ambient

light flashes.

– If one or more doors are not securely closed due to smart key failure, the corresponding smart ambient light flashes.

2. Alert to window not yet closed

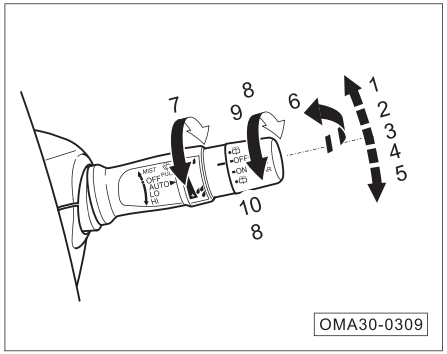
– If one or more windows are not securely closed when the engine stops running or the locking function is performed using the smart key, the corresponding smart ambient light flashes for alert purpose.

3. Alert to smart key leaving the vehicle

– With the engine turned on, if the smart key is outside the effective range, all ambient lights flash for alert purpose.

2.3.3 Windshield Wiper

Wiper Combination Switch



1. MIST: continuous wiper
2. OFF: Turn off the wipers
3. AUTO: automatic wiper
4. LO: low-speed wiper
5. HI: high-speed wiper
6. Turning on front windshield washer system
7. Adjusting automatic wiper sensitivity
8. Turning on rear windshield washer system
9. OFF: Turn off rear windshield washer system or rear wiper
10. ON: Start wiping

MIST: Continuous Wiping

– If the wiper combination switch lever is shifted to limit position (1) MIST position, the front wipers will work continuously.
– Release the combination switch to let it return automatically to the OFF position (2), the front wipers stop moving.

OFF: Turn off the Wipers

– If the wiper combination switch lever is shifted to limit position (2) OFF position, the front wipers will stop work.

AUTO: Automatic Wiping

– If the wiper combination switch lever is shifted to limit position (3) AUTO position, the front wipers will work automatically. The wiper system adjusts the wiper operation speed in real time based on the current rainfall and vehicle speed.

Note

- Worn or dirty wiper blades will affect the visibility adversely and reduce driving safety.
- When the instrument cluster display prompts "The sensor fails, please control the wipers manually", for the sake of safety, the wipers will keep operating at low speed. In this case, you can choose to control the lighting manually based on actual situation, and go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer timely to have your vehicle checked and repaired.
- Before auto wiper operation in winter, make sure the wiper blade is not frozen.

LO: Low-Speed Wiping

– If the wiper combination switch lever is shifted to limit position (4) LO position, the front wipers will work at low speed.

HI: High-Speed Wiping

– If the wiper combination switch lever is shifted to limit position (5) HI position, the front wipers will work at high speed.

Turning on Front Windshield Washer System

– Move the wiper combination switch control lever backward (back of vehicle) to position (6), the front windshield washer jets water and a little later the front wipers begin to work.

– After releasing the wiper combination switch control lever to let it return to its original position, the front windshield washer turns off and the wipers continue to operate for approximately 4 seconds.

– After pause for 6s, the front wipers operate once to remove residual water stains on the glass.

Adjusting Automatic Wiper Sensitivity

– Rotate the knob to adjust the rain sensitivity of automatic wiping. The sensitivity is divided into 4 levels, from low to high, indicated by the symbols.

– In the case of the same rainfall, the higher the sensitivity is, the faster the wiper speed and frequency.

Turning on Rear Windshield Washer System

– Move the rear wiper knob upward/ downward to position-6- , the front windshield washer jets water and a little later the rear wipers begin to work.

ON: Start rear wiper

– Move the rear wiper knob to position-10- ON, and then the rear wipers begin to work.

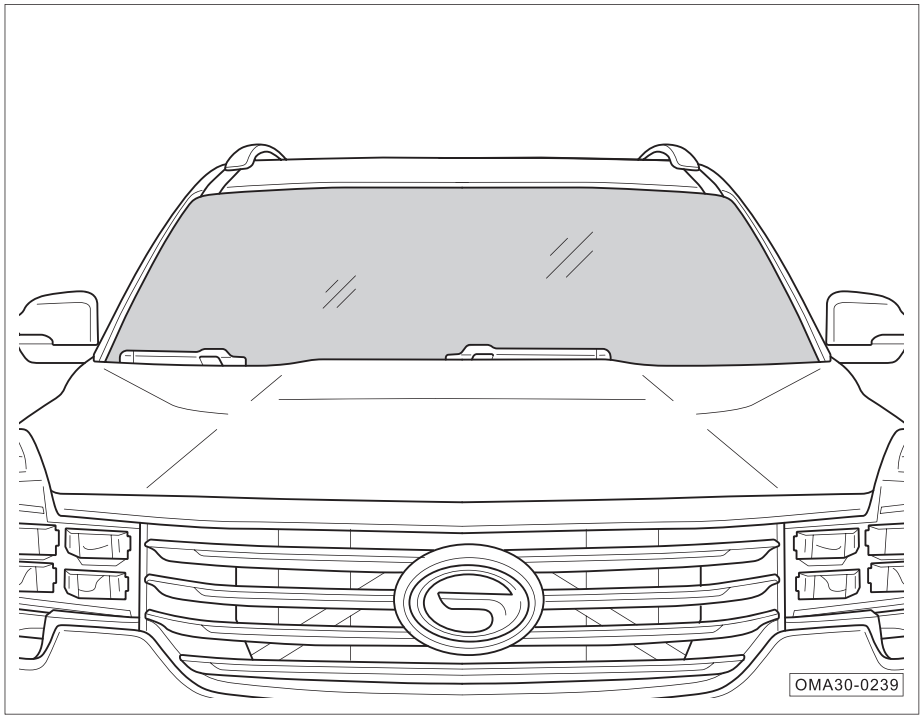
OFF: Turn off rear windshield washer system or rear wiper

– Turning the rear wiper knob to the OFF position (9) turns off the rear window cleaning system or stops the rear wiper moving.

Winter Maintenance Positions (Apply to Certain Models)

– Within 10 seconds since the starter switch is set to OFF, move the wiper switch to LO, then quickly move it to initial position, the front wipers move to the highest positions then stop at initial positions.

2.3.4 Windshields



Windshields

The front windshield uses green, insulated, laminated and anti-scattered glass, effectively reducing the risk of injury during a crash.

Warning

Do not apply irrelevant stickers or attach articles to the windshield. They obstruct driver's view and could result in accident.

Note

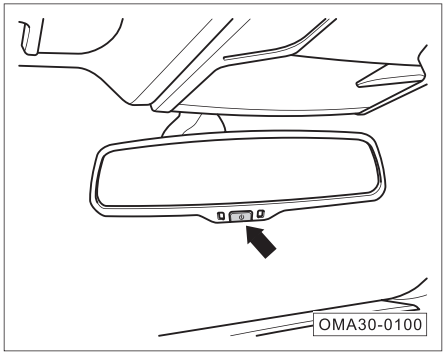
- Stick certificates to the windshield in accordance with local traffic regulations.
- Always keep the windshield clean.

2.3.5 Rearview Mirror

Automatic Anti-Glare Interior Rear-view Mirror

Not seeing the rear situation clearly through the rear rearview mirror is extremely dangerous to driving!

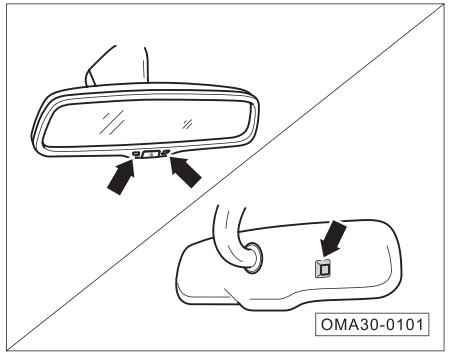
The interior rear-view mirror has the automatic anti-glare function. The light sensor in the interior rear-view mirror can monitor light rays behind and ahead the vehicle. By reducing the intensity of reflection of light rays coming from behind the vehicle, the mirror provides excellent backward field of view for the driver.



– With the starter switch set to the ON position, the automatic anti-glare function is turned on and the indicator light in the switch comes on. Press the switch (see the arrow) to turn off the auto anti-glare function.
– Press the switch again to reactivate this function.

Hint

If the temperature in the vehicle is low, it could take a litter longer time for the anti-glare rear-view mirror to respond to intense light rays.



Note

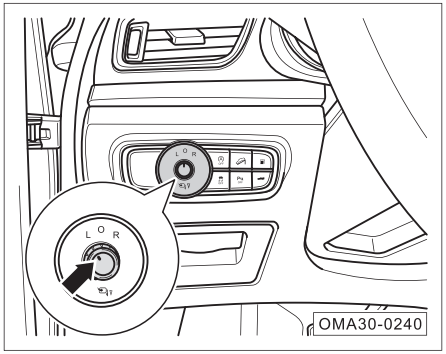
To ensure the anti-glare rear-view mirror sensor functioning normally, do not cover it (arrow) with finger or cloth.

Exterior Rear-View Mirror

The exterior rear-view mirror system has the following functions:

- Power adjustment
- Power folding-up
- Automatic folding-up
- Turning around while vehicle reversing (apply to certain models)
- Defogging/defrosting

Power Adjustment

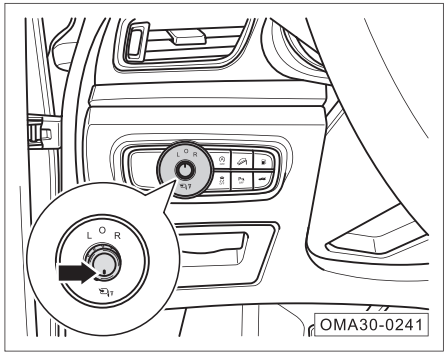


– Turn the adjusting knob for the exterior rearview mirrors to Position "L" or "R" (i.e. select left or right exterior rearview mirror).
– Select the exterior rear-view mirror to adjust, move adjusting knob up, down, leftward, and rightward so that the mirror provides a good rear view.
– Rotate the exterior rear-view mirror knob to O after adjusting.

Hint

If electric adjustment function of the exterior rearview mirror fails, you can gently push the outer edge of the mirror to adjust it.

Power Folding-Up



– To fold up the exterior rear-view mirror, turn the adjusting knob to the position.
– To extend the exterior rear-view mirror, turn the adjusting knob to the .

Note

- As the folding-up is performed by a motor, do not manually fold up the exterior rear-view mirror unless you have to do so.
- If the exterior rear-view mirror is folded up manually for example in emergency, its extension must be performed also manually rather than electrically. In case of manual extension, clicks can be heard when the mirror reaches the locked position.

Automatic Folding-Up

– If the vehicle is locked from outside, the exterior rear-view mirrors can fold up automatically.
– Once the vehicle is unlocked and the driver’s door is opened, the exterior rear-view mirrors can extend automatically.

Hint

- The automatic fold-up function can be turned on or off from the vehicle settings screen of the audio system (please refer to page 209).
- If the adjusting knob is turned to the , the exterior rear-view mirror cannot extend automatically.

Exterior rear-view mirror folding-down for vehicle reversal(apply to certain models)

The function of exterior rear-view mirror folding-down for vehicle reversal is that the exterior rear-view mirror automatically folds down by a certain angle, so that the driver can see clearly the area behind the vehicle while reversing.

Two modes of exterior rear-view mirror folding down: manually and automatically

1. Saving tilting-backward angle

The angle of exterior rear-view mirror folding-down can be set from the Vehicle Settings screen of the audio system (please refer to page 209).

– Touch the Set button, the texts “please adjust the exterior rear-view mirrors on both sides to the positions of folding-down for vehicle reversal” appear on the screen. After adjustment, touch the Save button, the position is saved.

With the function of manual folding-down for vehicle reversal active:

– Stop the vehicle on the level road with good visibility.
– Set the starter switch at the ON position.
– Depress the brake pedal to ensure the vehicle is stationary.
– Set the transmission to reverse gear.
– Turn the adjusting knob of exterior rear-view mirror to the L or R position, and the mirror tilts to the position save in the previous time.
– Using the adjusting knob, tilt the mirror until you can see clearly the rear wheel and road curb. The new tilting-backward position is saved.

2. Recalling tilting-backward angle

With the function of manual folding-down for vehicle reversal active:

– Set the starter switch at the ON position.
– Depress the brake pedal to ensure the vehicle is stationary.
– Set the transmission to reverse gear.
– Turn the adjusting knob of exterior rear-view mirror to the L or R position, and the mirror tilts to the position save in the previous time.

With the function of automatic folding-down for vehicle reversal active:

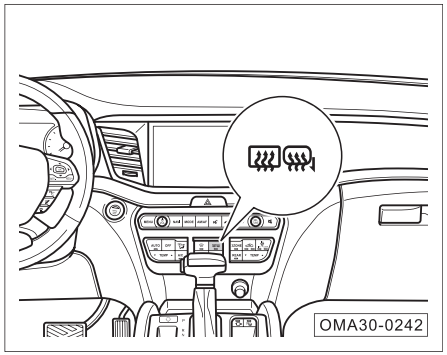
– The exterior rear-view mirrors on both sides fold down automatically at the same time.
– The exterior rear-view mirror can tilt forward to its original position in the following cases:

- Vehicle speed exceeds 10km/h.
- Approximately 10 seconds later since the shift lever is moved out of reverse gear.
- The adjusting knob of exterior rear-view mirror is turned to the O position from the L or R position.

Hint

The function of manual folding-down for vehicle reversal is affected by current position of the adjusting knob, while the function of automatic folding-down for vehicle reversal is regardless of current position of the adjusting knob.

Defogging/Defrosting



– Press button and the heating function will be activated. It can remove fog or frost from exterior rear-view mirror and rear windscreen. The indicator on the button is lit at this moment. The function is automatically turned off approximately 15 minutes later; or when the button is pressed again.

Warning

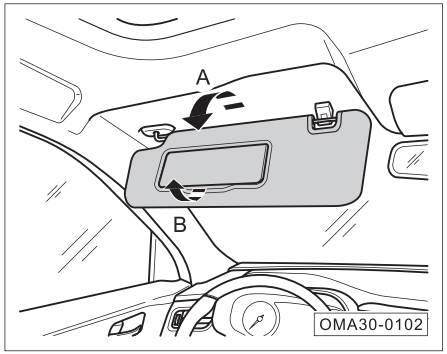
- The exterior rear-view mirrors with curved surface (convex and spherical) are able to expand view, but compared with the real objects, their reflected images become smaller and further. Do not judge the distance away from the rear vehicle with its reflected image when changing lanes. Doing so can cause accidents due to misjudgment.
- Special attention should be paid not to make your fingers injured by rearview mirror or its base when folding exterior rearview mirror.

Note

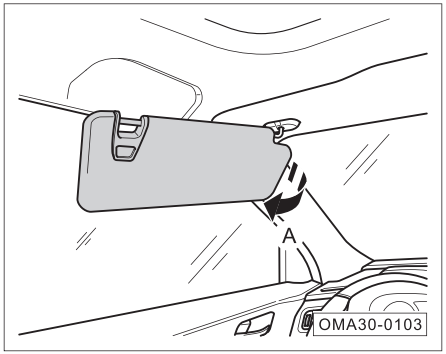
- If defogging/defrosting is necessary after the function is automatically turned off, press the button again.
- Do not have the defogging/defrosting function operating for a long time. This could cause overheating or damage to the heater.
- To save power, press the button to turn off the defogging/defrosting function when it is unnecessary.

2.3.6 View

Sun Visors



– The sun visors on the driver's side or front passenger’s side can be turned down in the direction of arrow A to shield the sunlight coming from the front windows.
– To use the vanity mirror, swing down the sunroof visor, then open the vanity mirror cover in the direction of arrow B. The vanity mirror light comes on automatically.



– The driver-side or front-passenger-side sunroof visors can be swung down then drawn out from the movable brackets in direction of arrow A to block sunshine coming in through the side windows.

Hint

The vanity mirror light automatically turns off when the starter switch is set to the OFF position, or the vehicle is locked, or several minutes later since the door is opened or closed.

2.4 Seats and Storage Equipment

2.4.1 Importance for Adjusting the Seat Correctly

To get the most protection from the seat belts and airbags, adjust the seats properly.

Driver's seat or front passenger's seat can be adjusted according to the shape of passengers.

Before the vehicle moving off, both the driver and occupants shall adjust their respective seats so that:

- You can maintain full control of all mechanism on the instrument panel in an accurate, effective and safe manner.
- They have a correct seated position and do not get fatigued easily.
- Fully receive the protective effect of seat belts and airbags.

⚠ Warning

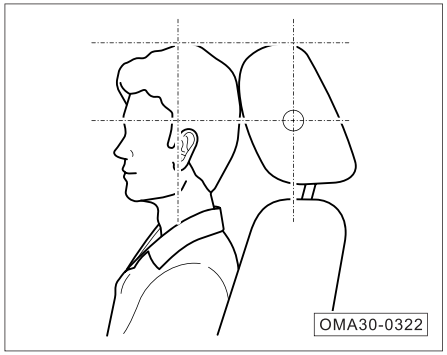
Incorrect sitting position will cause serious injury.

- Any passenger should sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Be sure you and your passengers wear the seat belts properly.
- Make sure the child is restrained in the child safety seat properly.
- Adjust all the headrests properly according to the height of the driver and passengers and be sure the driver and passengers wear the seat belts all the time to get the best protection.
- During traveling, both feet of the front passenger should place in the footwell. Never put the feet on the instrument panel/seat or stretching out of the window. Incorrect sitting position will cause serious injury when the airbags inflating.

2.4.2 Headrest

Adjust the Headrests Properly.

Adjusting the headrests properly is of great importance to protect the occupants and reduce the risk of injury.



– Adjust the headrest so the central back side of your head rests against the center of the headrest and adjust the top of the headrest to the height of you head (or try your best to keep them at the same height).

Failure to do so as shown in the figure can cause serious injury during a crash.

Warning

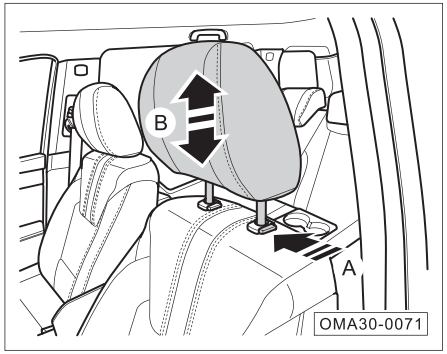
To reduce the risk of injuries and deaths during a crash, be sure to observe the following matters:

- The headrests must always be in their mounting positions. Driving with the headrests removed or improperly-installed can cause serious injury during a crash.
- All the occupants must adjust their headrests to correct positions according to their own body types. The top of the headrest must be even with the top of your head as far as possible but not lower than your eyes. The back of your head should rest against the headrest as far as possible.
- Improperly-adjusted headrests will increase the risk of being injured during a crash or emergency braking.
- While driving, do not adjust the headrests.

Note

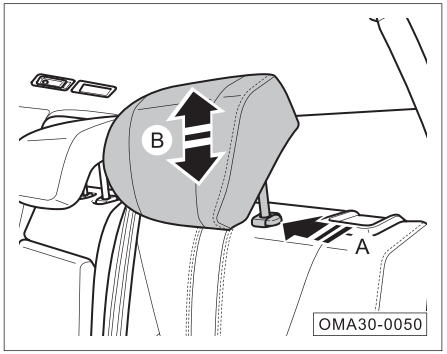
Passengers of smaller size should adjust their headrest as low as possible. Taller persons should adjust their headrest as high as possible.

Adjust the Front Seat Headrests



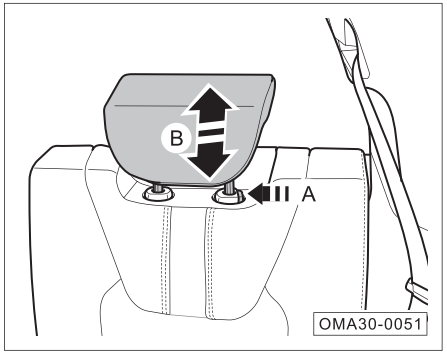
- Grasp both sides of the headrest, and press and hold the button in the direction of arrow A and press the headrest down in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.
- Grasp both sides of the headrest, and lift up the headrest directly in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.
- Make sure adjusted headrests are in place and positioned properly.

Adjust the Second Row Seat Headrests



- Grasp both sides of the headrest, and press and hold the button in the direction of arrow A and press the headrest down in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.
- Grasp both sides of the headrest, and lift up the headrest directly in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.
- Make sure adjusted headrests are in place and positioned properly.

Adjust the Third Row Seat Headrests



- Grasp both sides of the headrest, and press and hold the button in the direction of arrow A and press the headrest down in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.
- Grasp both sides of the headrest, and lift up the headrest directly in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.
- Make sure adjusted headrests are in place and positioned properly.

⚠ Warning

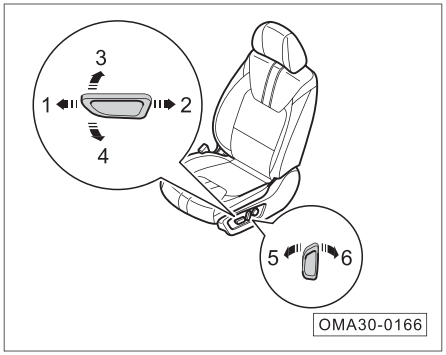
- During driving, never remove the headrest, or it will lead to serious injury of occupants when an accident occurs.
- After the installation of headrest, you must adjust the headrest according to your shape, to obtain optimal protection.
- As you sit in the second/third seat, if you are unable to adjust your headrest to proper position, please sit on your adjacent seat.
- Please carefully read and follow relevant warnings and instructions.

2.4.3 Front Seats

Warning

- Be sure to adjust the seats with care. Negligence or improper operation can cause personal injury.
- Never adjust the front seat while the vehicle is traveling. To adjust the seat, you need to deviate your correct sitting position. Therefore, the adjustment of seats should be carried out when the car is in stationary condition. Otherwise, it is easy to cause injuries.
- Never ride in a moving vehicle with the seat backrest in an excessively reclined position as this can be dangerous. You could slide under the seat belt in a collision. If you slide under it, the belt would apply force at the abdomen or neck. That could cause serious or even fatal injuries. To get the most protection from the seat belt, be sure to sit upright and well back in the seat and wear the seat belt properly.
- After the start switch is turned to "OFF" position, the electric adjusting mechanism of front seats in some type of cars are still effective. Never leave the child alone in the car, to prevent her/him from improper operation of electrical device and causing accidents.

Driver's Seat Electrically Adjustable in 6 Directions



Forward-backward adjustment of seats

– Move the switch in direction of arrow 1 or 2 to slide forward or backward the seat.

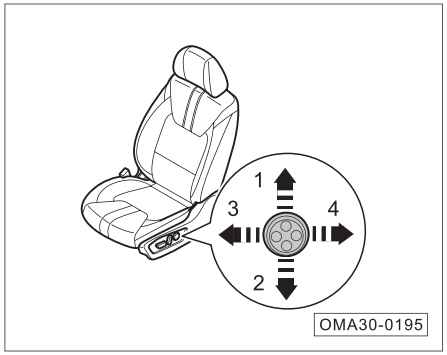
Up-down adjustment of seat

– Move the switch in direction of arrow 3 or 4 to move up or down the seat.

Forward-backward adjustment of backrest

– Move the switch in direction of arrow 5 or 6 to tilt the backrest forward or backward.

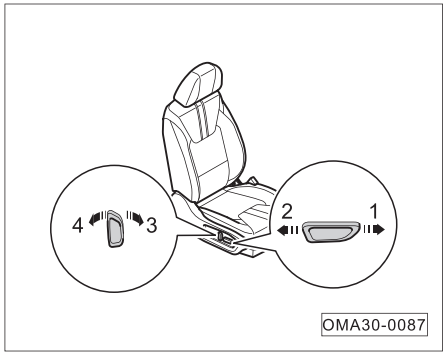
Driver's Seat Lumber Rest Pneumatically Adjustable in 4 Directions



Lumber rest adjustment:

– In directions of arrows 1, 2, 3, and 4, pressing the switch enables the upward support, downward support, forward support, and backward retraction, respectively.

Front Occupant Seat Electrically Adjustable in 4 Directions



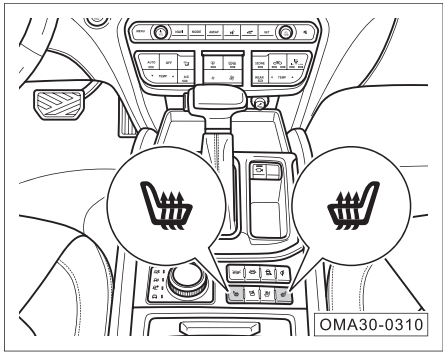
Forward-backward adjustment of seat

– Move the switch in direction of arrow 1 or 2 to slide forward or backward the seat.

Forward-backward adjustment of backrest

– Move the switch in direction of arrow 3 or 4 to tilt the backrest forward or backward.

Seat Heating (Apply to Certain Models)



– Set the starter switch at the ON position.

– Press the / button in the auxilliary instrument panel, the indicator in the button comes on and the corresponding seats are heated.

Seat heating has three positions corresponding to three different seat surface temperatures, i.e., Position 3 for high temperature, Position 2 for middle temperature, and Position 1 for low temperature. Pressing the button once changes the gear once. The gear will change in the circular order of 0→3→2→1→0. The indicator corresponding to the number is lit on the button surface.

The seat heating function can be turned on or off from the “Vehicle Settings” screen of the audio system (please refer to page 206). With the seat heating function on, the system can automatically select a heating level according to interior temperature. If the heating button is pressed in the process of automatic heating, the automatic heating exits, and the current heating position is moved to the next one.

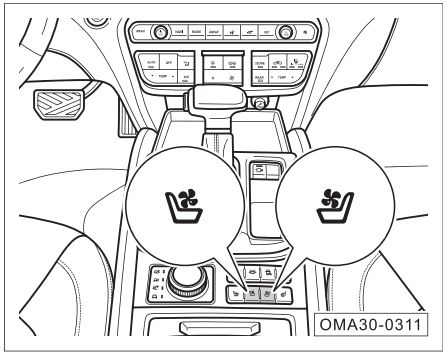
Warning

If your sensitiveness to pain and temperature lowers, never use seat heating function, to avoid your back, hips and legs being burnt by the heater.

Note

- To avoid damage of electrical components inside the front seat, never knee on the seat or exert force to some point of seat cushion and backrest.
- If you cannot feel the seat temperature change or feel hot after being heated for a long time, immediately cut off the seat heating and go to GAC MOTOR dealer for inspection and maintenance of your vehicle.

Seats Ventilation (Apply to Certain Models)



– Set the starter switch at the ON position.
– Press the / button in the auxiliary instrument panel, the indicator in the button comes on and the corresponding heats are ventilated.

Seat ventilation intensity is divided into three levels, with level 3 the most intense and level 1 the least intense. Pressing the button once changes the gear once. The gear will change in the circular order of 0→3→2→1→0. The indicator corresponding to the number is lit on the button surface.

Hint

The seat ventilation function can be e turned on or off from the “Vehicle Settings” screen of the audio system (please refer to page 206). With the seat ventilation function on, the system can automatically select a ventilation level according to interior temperature.

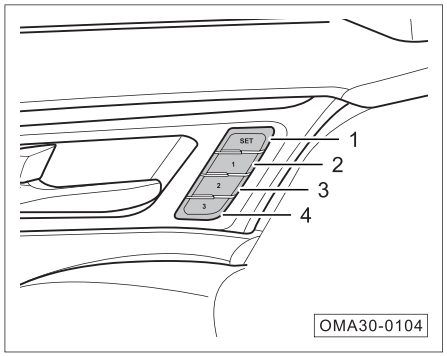
Seat/Exterior Rear-View Mirror Position Memory System (Apply to Certain Models)

The seat/exterior rear-view mirror position memory system consists mainly of the seat position memory module, seat adjusting switch, seat motor, exterior rear-view mirror adjusting knob, exterior rear-view mirror, and motor position memory switch. The system provides the following functions:

- Manual operation of seat and exterior rear-view mirror
- Saving and recalling seat / exterior rear-view mirror position
- Seat greeting.
- Rear-view mirror automatic tilting-backward when vehicle is reversing.
- Automatic identification by smart key

Note

In the seat/exterior rear-view mirror position memory system, the seat refers to driver’s seat rather than passenger’s seats.



1. Set button SET
2. Position button 1
3. Position button 2
4. Position button 3

Saving Tilting-Backward Angle

To save the position of seat/exterior rear-view mirror:

1. Set the starter switch to the ACC or ON position.
2. Adjust the seat/exterior rear-view mirror to desired position.
3. Press the SET button.
4. Release the SET button. Within 3 seconds, press the button 1, 2, or 3, the seat position memory module stores current seat position and exterior rear-view mirror positions accordingly.

Hint

A click can be heard from the instrument once the position is saved in memory.

Recalling Tilting-Backward Angle

The seat/exterior rear-view mirror position saved in memory can be recalled at any time so that the seat/exterior rear-view mirror adjust to that position.

Two options are provided: fast recalling, and safe recalling.

1. Fast recalling

– With the starter switch at “OFF” or “ACC”, or with the starter switch at ON and the transmission gearshift lever at P, press briefly the button 1, 2, or 3 once, to recall the stored position accordingly.

2. Safe recalling

– With the starter switch at “ON” and the transmission gearshift lever at “P”, press and hold the button 1, 2, or 3, to recall the stored position accordingly. If the position button is released while recalling is under way, the recalling is interrupted immediately.

Hint

For the vehicle equipped with T-BOX, the driver can recall the stored position by using the mobile phone to send remote recalling signal.

Note

- For safety reason, the recalling is interrupted immediately if the seat position memory switch or seat adjusting switch is pressed while the recalling is under way.
- Do not perform recalling of seat/exterior rear-view mirror while driving. By doing so, distraction could result in accident.

Seat Greeting

The function can be turned on or off from the Vehicle Settings screen of the audio system(please refer to page 207). With the function on:

– When the driver sets the Starter switch to the OFF position and opens the driver’s door, the seat automatically moves backward to so called “greeting” position.
– When the driver enters the vehicle next time, and sets the starter switch to the ON position, the seat automatically moves forward to original position.

Note

If seat position is changed manually after the seat moves to the greeting position, the seat cannot automatically move next time when the driver enters the vehicle and sets the starter switch to the ON position.

Reversing rear-view mirror automatic tilting-backward (apply to certain models)

The function is provided as a time saver. The saved tilting-backward angle of exterior rear-view mirror can be recalled when the vehicle is reversing so that the mirror tilts backward to provide the situation behind the vehicle (Please refer to page 122).

Automatic Identification by Smart Key

The function can be turned on or off from the Vehicle Settings screen of the audio system(please refer to page 206). With the function on:

– When the driver leaves and locks the vehicle, the positions of the seat and exterior rear-view mirror he just used are saved, and are related to the key he currently uses.

– When the driver uses the key to unlock the vehicle, the seat and exterior rear-view mirror can automatically move to that saved positions.

– With the smart key automatic identification function and the seat greeting function activated simultaneously:

- When the driver sets the Starter switch to the OFF position and opens the driver’s door, the seat automatically moves backward to so called "greeting" position;
- When the smart key is used to lock the vehicle, the seat position memory module can memorize the position before retreating to the greeting position.
- When the smart key is used to unlock the vehicle, the seat still stays at the greeting position. Other positions including the exterior rear-view mirror positions are recalled according to the smart key operation. When the driver gets in the vehicle and turns the starter switch to “ON”, the seat can move forward from the greeting position to the stored position.

Note

The positions related to the key can be any positions, not necessarily those saved using the position memory buttons.

2.4.4 The Second/Third Row Seats

Second-Row Seats Manually Adjustable in 4 Directions

Forward-backward adjustment of seats

– In direction of arrow 1, pull the adjusting handle, you can slide the seat forward or backward. Release the adjusting handle. Slide slightly the seat forward or backward until the seat locking mechanism engages.

Forward-backward adjustment of backrests

– In direction of arrow 2, press down the adjusting handle, adjust the backrest to a proper position, then release the adjusting handle.

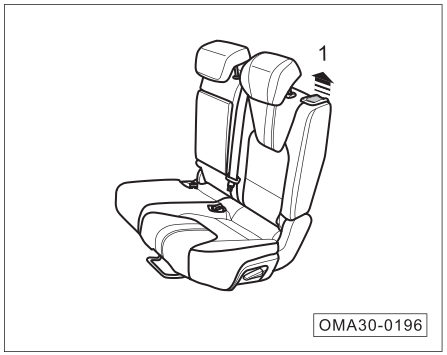
Folding Down Second Row Seat Backrest

– In direction of arrow 2, press down the adjusting handle to the limit position, to fold down the backrest.

Hint

The seats on the left and right sides are operated in the same manner.

Operation of the Seat for Convince of Third-Row Seat Occupants to Enter or Leave

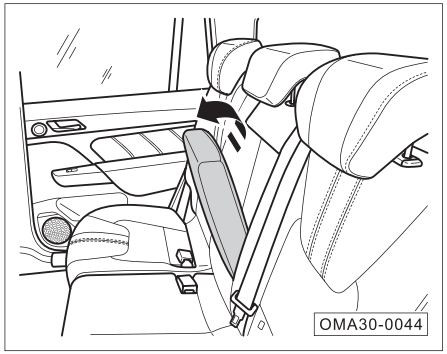


– In direction of arrow 1, pull the backrest tilt switch, to tilt forward the backrest, so that the third row seat occupants can enter or leave conveniently.

Hint

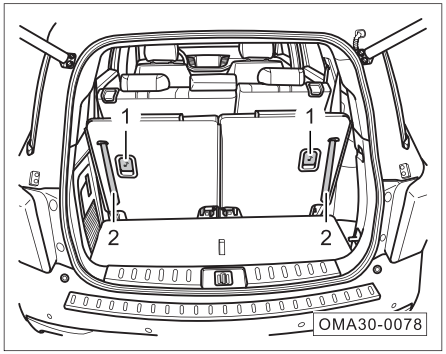
The seats on the left and right sides are operated in the same manner.

Central Armrest of the Second Row Seat



– Open the central armrest of the second row seat in direction of the arrow.

Folding Down the Third Row Seat Backrest



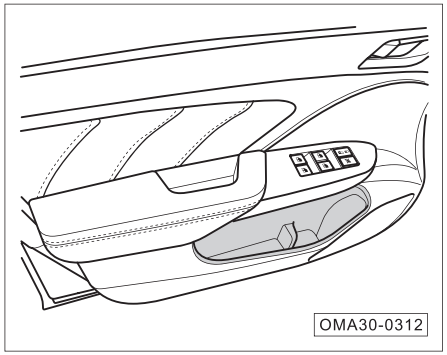
– Pull the backrest folding-down switch (1), to fold down the backrest forward.
– Pull the backrest then push it backward to the limit position, to restore original position.

Hint

If you are standing in the rear, you can restore the third row seat backrest position by pulling the cable on the back of the backrest.

2.4.5 Storage Equipment

Storage Sink in Interior Trim Board of Vehicle Door

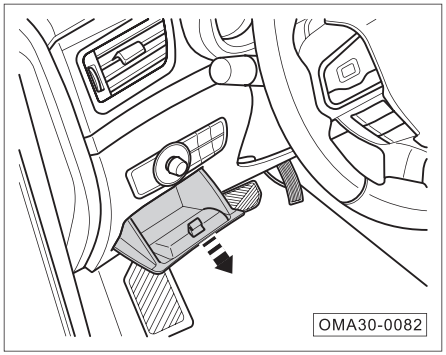


– There is a storage sink in the lower portion of the interior trim board of vehicle door.

Note

Such articles as beverage bottles, maps, and manuals may be placed in the storage sink, but such articles as chocolate and drugs may not, as they are heat sensitive.

Storage Shelf for Lower Panel in the Cab

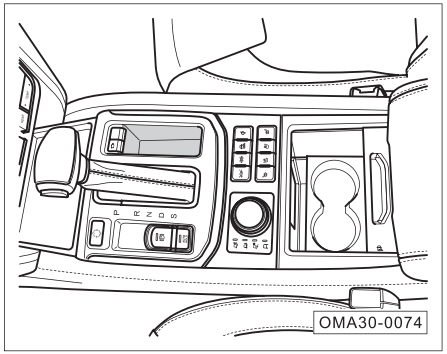


– In direction of arrow, open the cabin lower guard board storage box.
– A click can be heard when the store bin is pushed back in place.

Hint

Small articles may be placed in the storage bin.

Auxiliary Dashboard Storage Sink

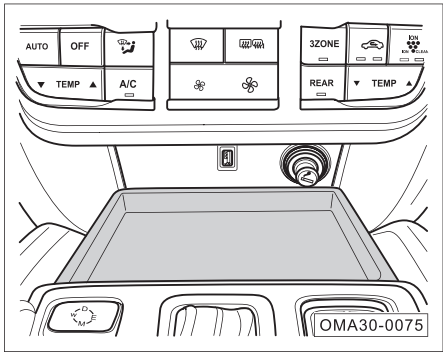


– Storage sink on the auxiliary dashboard

Hint

Small articles may be placed in the storage sink.

Storage Sink under the Dashboard



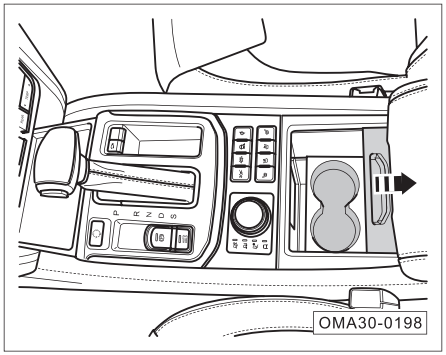
– Storage sink under the dashboard

Hint

Small articles may be placed in the storage bin.

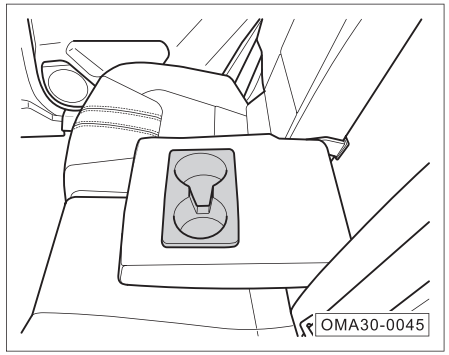
Cup Holders

Cup Holders in the Front Seats



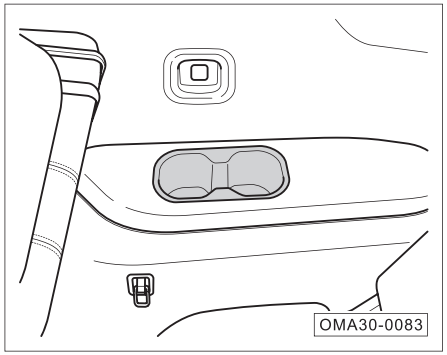
– In direction of arrow, push backward the cover, you can use the front-row cup holder.

Cup Holders in the Second Row Seats



– Swing up the second-row central armrest (please refer to page 138), you can use the second-row cup holder.

Cup Holders in the Third Row Seats



– Cup holders in the third row seats on two sides of the third row seats.

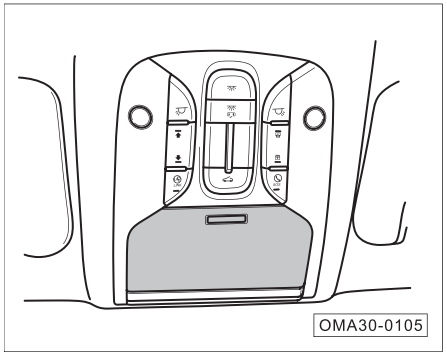
Hint

Cup holders may be used to contain such articles as beverage bottles and movable ash trays.

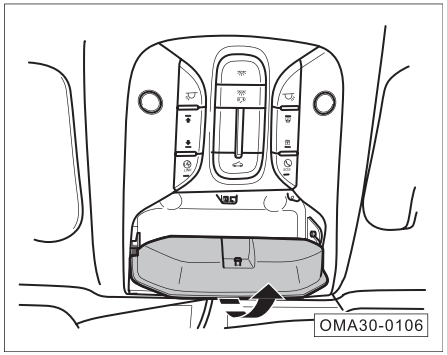
Warning

Never place any hot beverage bottle in cup holder. Hot beverage could splash causing scalding while the vehicle is traveling.

Glasses Case



– The case will gradually open after pressing it.

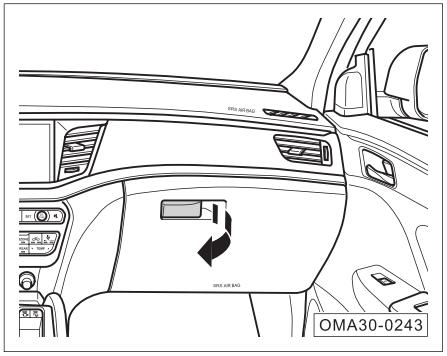


– In direction of arrow, push back the glass box until it clicks. It is closed.

Hint

Small articles such as sunglasses may be placed in the glass box.

Glove Box on the Front Passenger's Side



– In direction of arrow, pull the opening handle, to open the glove box.
– Push back the glove box until it clicks. It is closed.

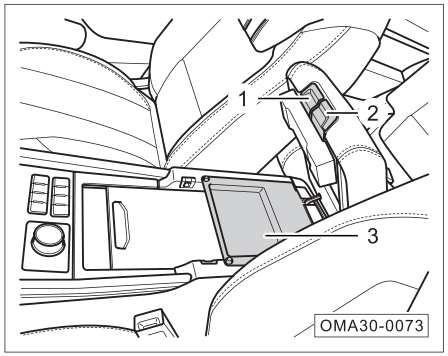
Hint

Relatively large articles such as beverage bottles and bags may be placed in the glove box.

Warning

Always keep the glove box closed while driving! Otherwise, items inside the glove box may be thrown out, injuring your passenger in a crash or emergency braking.

Armrest Box between Front Seats



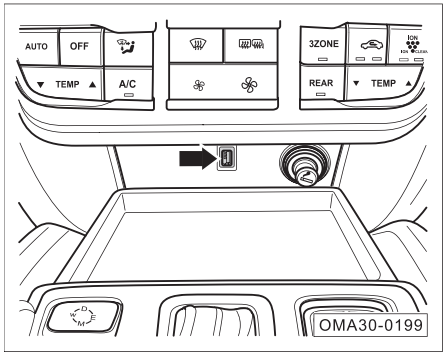
– Press the buckle (1), and pull up the armrest box cover, to open the front-row central armrest box partition (3).
– To open the central armrest box in front seats, press the lock catch 2 in direction of the arrow and raise the box cover.

Hint

The armrest box cover can be slid forward. In the case, press the buckles 1 and 2, it is impossible to open the central armrest box and partition (3).

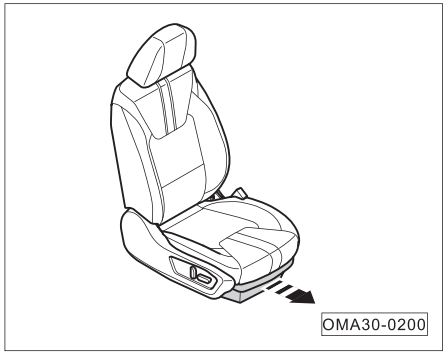
The armrest box between front seats can be used for holding articles such as beverage bottles.

USB Interface



– The USB interface (see the arrow) is located in front of the instrument panel.

Storage Bin under the Front Occupant Seat

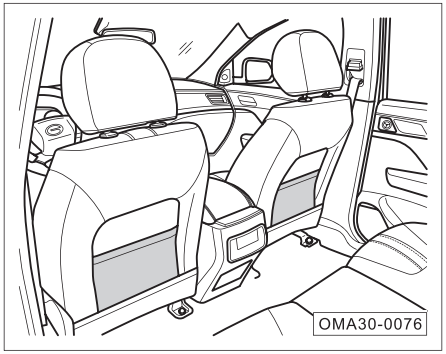


For some vehicle models, there is a storage bin under the front occupant seat. In direction of arrow, pull out the storage bin.

Hint

Such articles as books and foldable umbrella may be placed in the pocket.

Pocket on Back of Front Seat



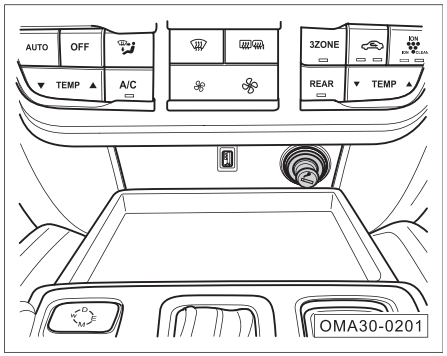
To place articles in the pocket on back of front seat, pull it backward.

Hint

Such articles as books and foldable umbrella may be placed in the pocket.

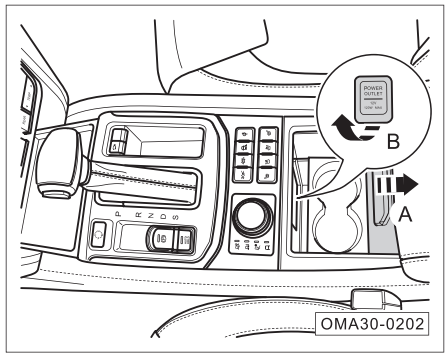
2.4.6 Cigarette Lighter/Power Outlet

Central Console Cigarette Lighter/ Power Outlet



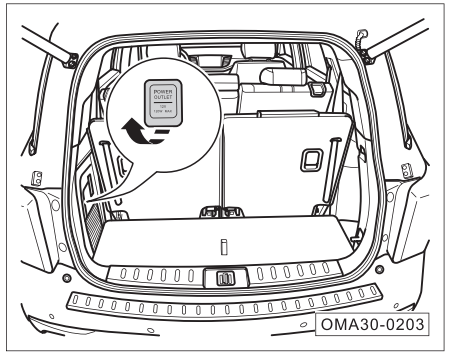
– With the Start switch in Position "ON" or "ACC", press down the cigarette lighter. When the cigarette lighter automatically pops up, you can pull out it.
– Pull out the cigarette lighter to use the power outlet.

Powers Supply Socket in Armrest Box between Front Seats



– In direction of arrow A, push backward the cover.
– To use the power supply socket, pull up the power supply socket cover in direction of arrow B.

Trunk Power Supply Socket



– To use the power supply socket, pull up the power supply socket cover in direction of the arrow.

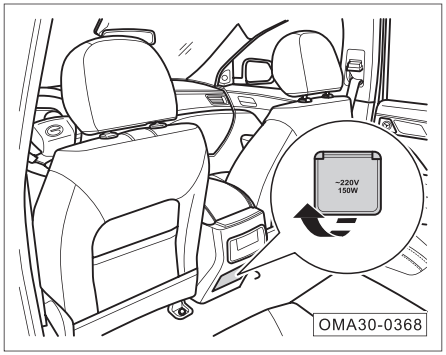
Warning

- Improper use of power outlet can cause fire. Do not leave a child alone in the vehicle.

Note

- To avoid damage to the electrical system, do not connect any generating equipment to the power outlet.
- Use only the electrical equipment in line with the national electromagnetic compatibility norms.
- Avoid damage to the electrical equipment connected to the power outlet due to voltage fluctuation. Be sure to turn off the electrical equipment when turning on/off the Start switch.

Rear Power Supply Socket/USB Interface of Central Armrest Box (Apply to Certain Models)



– Press the cover, it springs open automatically.
– USB wire can be directly connected
– To use the power supply socket, pull up the power supply socket cover in direction of the arrow.

Warning

- The power supply socket provides output voltage of 220V. Use caution against electric shock.
- Never use the power supply socket when nobody is in the vehicle. This prevents fire hazards.

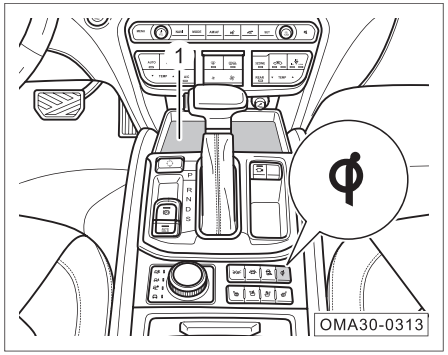
2.4.7 Mobile Phone Wireless Charging System (Apply to Certain Models)

By the mobile phone wireless charging function, the mobile phone is charged through electromagnetic induction without using external cable connection. This realizes wireless charging.

Hint

The mobile phone wireless charging function does not apply to all mobile phones. It only applies to the “Qi” certified mobile phones.

Mobile Phone Wireless Charging Switch



Press the mobile phone wireless charging switch on the secondary instrument panel to turn off or on the mobile phone wireless charging function.

With the starter switch at “ACC” or “ON” and the doors closed:

– Press the button when the mobile phone wireless charging function is turned on and the corresponding orange or green indicator light comes on, to turn off the mobile phone wireless charging function. The corresponding indicator light goes out.

– Press again this button, to turn on the mobile phone wireless charging function again. The orange indicator light comes on if no chargeable mobile phone is in the charging area. The green indicator light comes on if there is a chargeable mobile phone in the charging area.

Button indicator light status

Button indicator light	Mobile phone wireless charging status
Orange indicator light comes on	Chargeable
Green indicator light comes on	Charging
Orange indicator light flickers	There is a fault
Indicator light goes out	Not chargeable

Mobile Phone Wireless Charging Operation

– When the orange indicator light on the mobile phone wireless charging switch comes on, place the mobile phone flat on the rubber pad, with the charging coil side of the mobile phone facing down and the charging coil center aiming at “Qi”.

– When the green indicator light on the mobile phone wireless charging switch comes on, it indicates the mobile phone wireless charging is in process.

Hint

When the keyless start/smart key system drives the low-frequency antenna to search for the key, the mobile phone wireless charging module stops operation and both the orange and green indicator lights go out.

With the starter switch at “ACC” or “ON” and any door opened, the mobile phone wireless charging function remains off. In this case, charging is impossible until all the doors are closed.

Fault with Mobile Phone Wireless Charging

If a fault occurs during the charging, the orange indicator light flickers 10 seconds. Possible faults:

1. Battery voltage is too high or too low;
2. Foreign metallic scraps are attached the mobile phone in the charging area. Remove these scraps, then place the mobile phone back in the charging area.
3. Temperature too high;
4. Internal fault of the mobile phone wireless charging system;
5. Fault with the mobile phone.

Hint

In the case of a fault prompt, generally first remove the mobile phone from the charging area, then place it back in the charging area again. Wait for a couple of seconds, the charging can start.

The fulfillment of mobile phone wireless charging function requires a sound mobile phone wireless charging and a sound mobile phone. A charging failure could be due to a faulty mobile phone. In this case, to determine cause for the failure, try charging another compliant mobile phone.

Note

- Do not place any heavy object in the charging area. This could cause damage to the product.
- If the product has a fault thus does not function normally, do not use it any longer and contact a GAC customer service center.
- GAC shall not be liable for any problem resulting in incorrectly using this product. If the product has been disassembled or modified by the user without GAC permission, the GAC provided free-of-charge warranty shall become invalid.
- If the driver is not in the vehicle, do not charge the mobile phone in the vehicle. This avoids potential hazards.
- Do not frequently check the mobile phone charging status while driving. This avoids distraction thus potential hazards.
- While the mobile phone is being charged, there shall be no foreign metallic objects such as coins, keys, and microchips in the charging area. These can be heated resulting charging failure thus potential hazards.

Note

- No foreign metallic object may be between the mobile phone and the rubber pad during mobile phone wireless charging. Do not immediately remove the foreign metallic objects if any . This could burn your fingers. In this case, press immediately the mobile phone wireless charging switch to stop wireless charging. Wait for a couple of minutes, then remove the foreign objects.
- To use the wireless charging area as a storage box, you shall first turn off the mobile phone wireless charging function.
- To achieve best charging effects, the mobile phone charging coil center must aim at the wireless charger center (“Qi” in the charging area).
- Each time only one mobile phone can be charged.
- Do not spill water in the charging area. Water could enter the wireless charger through the gap under the rubber pad, causing charger failure.

Note

- While the vehicle is running on a bumpy road, mobile phone wireless charging could interrupt intermittently then resume. This is normal If charging stops due to mobile phone departure from the charging area, move the mobile phone back to the charging area.
- Charging could stop due to high temperatures and then resume when temperature lowers sufficiently.
- The green indicator light on the mobile phone wireless charging switch could stay on even if the charging is completed.
- This product only supports charging the “Qi” certified mobile phones. GAC shall not make the commitment that the mobile phones which are not “Qi” certified can be charged.
- External wireless charging coil is not covered by GAC provided warranty. Use it with prudence.

2.4.8 Trunk

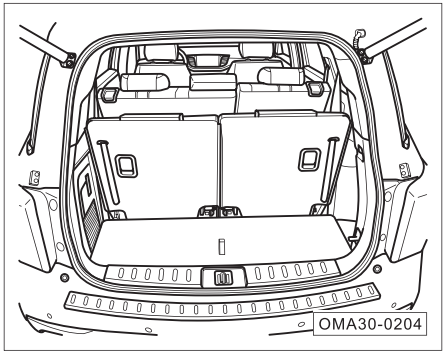
To ensure effective maneuverability of the vehicle, articles must be distributed in the trunk as even as possible, and heavy articles must be placed in the front portion of the trunk if possible.

Warning

The scattered belongings or other items in the vehicle may cause serious injury!

- The heavy loaded in the trunk must be secured with fastening straps. Bear in mind: carrying heavy goods may cause the change of car's center gravity and operation stability.
- While driving, the items scattered in the trunk may slide suddenly, resulting in change in the vehicle handling and stability.
- The items in the trunk may fly forward and injure you or your passengers if emergency brake is applied or a collision happens.

Trunk Capacity

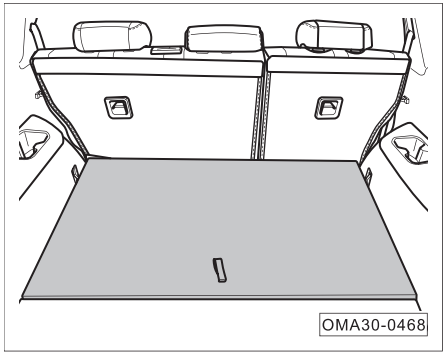


– Pull up the third row seat backrest fold down switch (1). Fold down the third row seat backrest forward, to enlarge the trunk capacity.

Note

- Ensure that the liquid container in the trunk is securely sealed to prevent leakage. As much as possible do not place the container on the third row seat backrest, to prevent liquid leakage wetting the seat.

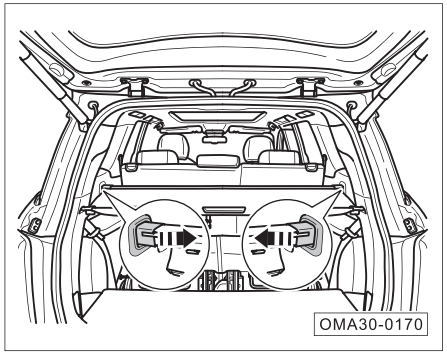
Trunk Warning Plate /On-Board Tools/ Masking Curtain



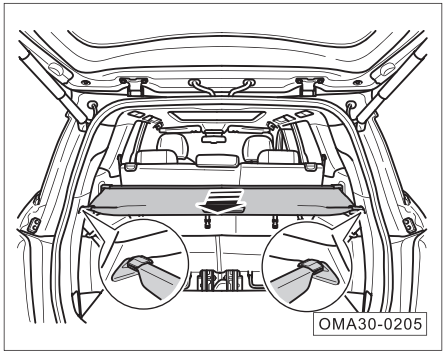
– Open the hatchback door (Please refer to page 88)

– Take up the trunk carpet, you can find the warning plate, on-board tools, and masking curtain there.

Install/Use the Trunk Masking Curtain



– Take out the masking curtain.
– Fold down the third row seat backrest forward.
– In direction of arrow, hold both ends of the masking curtain to retract it.
– Insert both ends of the masking curtain in to the retaining grooves.
– Ensure the masking curtain is installed securely.

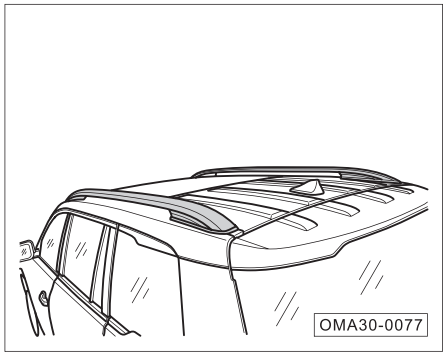


– In direction of arrow, pull out the masking curtain. Fix the left and rear ends of the masking curtain to the left and right retaining grooves in the trunk, respectively.

Note

- Do not place any heavy object on the masking curtain, to avoid damage.
- Do not let the masking curtain retract by itself. Be sure to manually guide it. Otherwise damage could occur.

2.4.9 Luggage Rack



The luggage rack of this vehicle can support 35kg of articles at maximum.

Warning

Do not place articles exceeding 35kg on the luggage rack!

2.4.10 Accessories and Modifications

The data labels and signboards attached to the factory fuel tank cap, engine hood lock rack and other auto components contain important data and information on vehicle operation. Do not remove or damage such labels and signboards. Always keep the data and information on the labels and signboards clear and readable.

This vehicle is designed with the latest safety technique to ensure excellent active safety and passive safety. Therefore, to maintain the vehicle's excellent characteristics, before installing accessories and replacing components, be sure to consult GAC Motor dealer.

We recommend you always use the accessories and components which have been designed and approved for your vehicle. We are not responsible for any component not manufactured by us.

⚠ Warning

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and other performance, and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

If cellular phones, alarm device, two-way radios, and low-powered audio systems need to be installed, they should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as Anti-lock Break System (ABS).

Before installing any accessory, please attention:

1. Make sure the accessory does not obscure any lights, or interfere with proper vehicle operation or performance.
2. Do not install accessories on the B-pillar or across the rear windows on vehicles equipped with side curtain airbags. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Modifying Your Vehicle

Removing components from your vehicle, or replacing components with non-GAC MOTOR GA8 components could seriously affect your vehicle's handling stability and reliability. Such as the following:

- Installing larger or smaller wheels and tires can interfere with the operation of your vehicle's anti-lock brake system (ABS) and other systems.
- Modifying your steering wheel or any other part of your vehicle's safety features can make the systems malfunction.

⚠ Warning

- Improper accessories or modifications can easily cause malfunction and accidents. We recommend you always use the approved accessories and components with strictly-verified adaptability, reliability and safety by GAC.
- Improper maintenance or modifications can weaken the protection from airbags, cause the system failure and fatal accidents. Do not install or connect the beverage cup holder, phone holder and other accessories onto the cover of airbag module or in the range of action of airbags.
- Improper operation or modifications (modification of the engine, brake system, running system or components affecting the performance of the wheels and tires) can affect the function of the airbag system, resulting in serious injury or death.

- Do not install non-GAC MOTOR wheels and tires.
- Modifying the front of the vehicle and the engine compartment can deteriorate pedestrian protection performance of the vehicle and violate the road regulations.

2.5 A/C System

2.5.1 General Instructions

The A/C filters can remove the pollen and dust brought-in by the heating and air-conditioning system from the outside.

Be sure to replace the A/C filters at scheduled maintenance.

See the Maintenance Schedule in the Warranty Manual.

Shorten the replacement interval of the A/C filters if you often drive in the urban area with heavy smoke caused by factories and diesel-powered vehicles. Try to replace the A/C filter as soon as possible if the air flow from the heating and cooling system is not smooth as usual.

Warning

- Activate the Recirculation Mode as needed. Deactivate it when there is no need.
- Blurred windows easily increase the risk of accidents and casualties. For the sake of safety, all the windows must be free of ice, snow and fog to ensure clear vision.
- Turbid air in the vehicle will cause the driver be fatigued, depressed and distracted, resulting in accidents and casualties easily.

Note

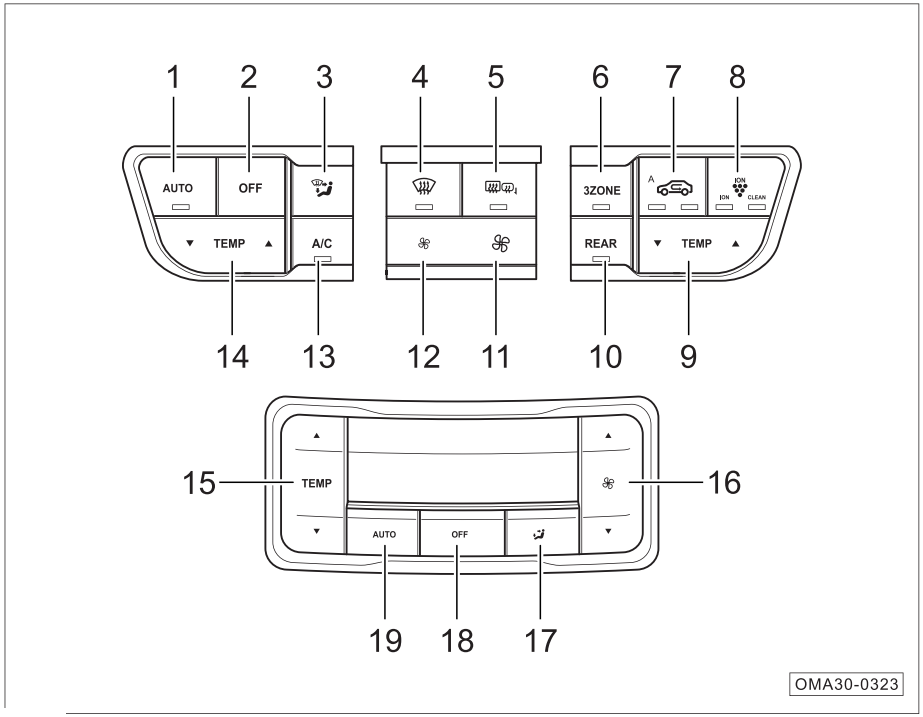
- The expertise and special tools are essential to the diagnosis and repair of A/C systems. Therefore, if your A/C system fails or is suspected to fail, be sure to go to the authorized GAC MOTOR dealer to have it checked and repaired.

Hint

- When the outside temperature and humidity are high, moisture in the air will condense on the evaporator of the refrigeration system, resulting in water droplets dripping from the evaporator which form water under the vehicle. This is normal, and there is no need to fear.
- The air inlet in the front of the front windshield should be unblocked, and make sure it is not clogged by snow, ice and leaves. Make sure the heating and cooling are normal. Prevent the front windshield from fogging up.
- All the windows and the sunroof must be closed for the A/C system to play a maximum effect. If the vehicle has been exposed to the burning sun and it is very hot in the vehicle, you should briefly open the windows to dissipate the heat and accelerate cooling.

2.5.2 Control Panel

3-Zone Full Automatic A/C System(Apply to Certain Models)



1. AUTO A/C button (front row)
   – The interior temperature, blower speed and air outlet mode are automatically adjusted in this mode.

2. OFF button
   – It is used to turn off A/C system.

3. Air vent button
   – The air outlet mode can be selected, and then be shown on the display.

4. Front windshield defroster and defogger button
   – To use the air flow from the air conditioning system to remove the surface snow, frost or fog.

5. Rear windshield and exterior rear-view mirror defogging/defrosting button
   – To heat electrically the rear window and exterior rear-view mirrors to remove the surface snow, frost or fog.

6. 3ZONE independent control button
– The temperatures of the air outlets on both sides of the front row seat and of the rear row seat can be set individually in this mode.

7. Interior/Exterior air circulation button (apply to certain models)
– To choose the mode of A/C intake: AUTO Interior/Exterior circulation, Interior circulation, Exterior circulation.

8. Anion button(apply to certain models)
– To generate anion for purifying the inside air.

9. TEMP Temperature control button (Right side)
– To set the desired temperature in the front seat passenger area in the 3ZONE independent control mode when the indicator of the rear control button is off;
– To set the desired temperature in the rear row seat area in the 3ZONE independent control mode when the indicator of the rear control button is on.

10. REAR control button
– To turn on/off the control of FRONT over REAR.

11. Air speed up button
– To increase the fan speed.

12. Air speed down button
– To decrease the fan speed.

13. A/C compressor button
– To turn on/off the air conditioning cooling system.

14. TEMP Temperature control button (Left side)
– To set the desired temperature in the interior area.

15. TEMP Temperature control button (rear row seats)(apply to certain models).
– To increase/decrease the temperature setting of the rear row seat.

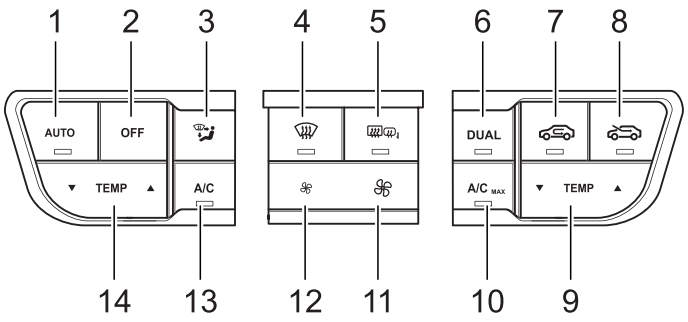
16. Air speed adjusting button (rear row seats)(apply to certain models).
– To increase/decrease the fan speed.

17. air outlet mode button (rear row seats)(apply to certain models).
– air outlet mode button (rear row seats) (apply to certain models).

18. OFF button(rear row seats)(apply to certain models)
– button(rear row seats)(apply to certain models)

19. AUTO button(rear row seats)(apply to certain models)
– The temperature, fan speed and air circulation distribution in the rear row seat area are automatically adjusted in this mode.

Full-automatic three-temperature-zone air conditioning system



1. AUTO A/C button (front row)
   – The interior temperature, blower speed and air outlet mode are automatically adjusted in this mode.

2. OFF button
   – It is used to turn off A/C system.

3. Air vent button
   – The air outlet mode can be selected, and then be shown on the display.

4. Front windshield defroster and defogger button
   – To use the air flow from the air conditioning system to remove the surface snow, frost or fog.

5. Rear windshield and exterior rear-view mirror defogging/defrosting button
   – To heat electrically the rear window and exterior rear-view mirrors to remove the surface snow, frost or fog.

6. DUAL Dual-ZONE independent control button
– The temperatures of the air outlets on both sides of the front row seat and of the rear row seat can be set individually in this mode.

7. Interior air circulation button
– To set the A/C intake as the Circulation mode.

8. Exterior air circulation button
– To set A/C intake as the exterior circulation mode.

9. TEMP Temperature control button (Right side)
– To set the desired temperature of the front passenger area.

10. A/C MAX Maximum cooling mode button
– The inside temperature, blower speed, air outlet mode and air circulation distribution are automatically adjusted to the specific settings in this mode to meet the maximum cooling effect.

11. Air speed up button
– To increase the fan speed.

12. Air speed down button
– To decrease the fan speed.

13. A/C compressor button
– compressor button

14. TEMP Temperature control button (Left side)
– To set the desired temperature in the interior area.

Automatic Mode

If the AUTO button is pressed, the indicator in the button is illuminated and the air conditioning system enters the fully automatic running mode. The following items are automatically controlled according to the set values:

- Outlet air temperature.
- Air speed of the air outlets.
- The air outlet mode
- Air circulation mode.
- Working conditions of air conditioning and refrigeration system (A/C).
- Working conditions of anion purifier.

AUTO button light

– When the button light is on, the air conditioning system is at full automatic running mode.

– When the button light is off, the air conditioning system is at non-full automatic running mode.

Turn Off the Air Conditioning

Press the OFF button to turn off the air conditioning system. After the air conditioning system is turned off, the air conditioning compressor is turned off, so the air speed of the air outlets is zero.

When the air conditioning system is closed, the user can effectively operate (dual-zone full automatic air conditioning system), / (dual-zone full automatic air conditioning system), and , button without turning on the air conditioning system; operating DUAL button (dual-zone full automatic air conditioning system)/3ZONE (3-zone full automatic air conditioning system) and TEMP button will be invalid. Pressing any button of AUTO, A/C, , , and A/C MAX (dual-zone full automatic air conditioning system) will turn on the air conditioning system.

The Air Outlet Mode

Changing the air outlet mode can be achieved manually or automatically. The air outlet mode switches each time when the button is pressed (manually). No manual operation is needed in the automatic mode, and the air conditioning system will control the air outlet mode automatically. When operating button, the system will switch to manual mode from automatic mode.

When selecting manually, several air outlet modes switch in the following order each time when the button is pressed.

: Air flows to the upper body. Air blows from instrument panel vent.

 : Air flows to the upper body and feet. Air blows from vents of both instrument panel and footwell.

 : Mainly air flows to the feet. Air blows from footwell vent.

 : Air flows to the feet and the front windshield. Airflow is divided between the footwell air outlets and the defroster air outlets at the base of the windshield.

In automatic mode, the air outlet mode is part of the automatic control logic. The air outlet mode is automatically selected by the A/C system. The basic factor having an influence on the air outlet mode is the outlet air temperature. When the outlet air temperature is high, the air mainly blows towards feet. When the outlet air temperature is low, the air mainly blows towards face.

Hint

- To ensure the air conditioning system can control all the air outlet modes effectively and automatically, set each air outlet in the vehicle in the opening state.
- In winter cold-start mode, auto mode will transfer gradually starting from blowing front window mode.

Windshield Defroster

When the button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the button turns on the front windshield defroster. The system will perform the following settings automatically:

- The A/C is turned on.
- The air is directed to blow toward the front windshield.
- The exterior air circulation mode is set.

When the button is pressed again, the indicator in the button goes out and the button turns off the front windshield defroster. The windshield defroster returns to the previous state. Or when the AUTO button is pressed, the system directly switches to the automatic control mode and turns off the front windshield defroster.

Note

When the temperature is set to the low limit, turning on the windshield defroster can cause the outside of the windshield to fog up, affecting the view of the driver. When the windshield defroster is turned on, the proposed temperature is set at the HOT or WARM position.

When the ambient temperature is higher than 0 ℃ , use Defrost function; If the compressor (A/C) is closed manually, the front windshield glass may fog, which will influence the driving sight, thus resulting in traffic accident.

Rear Windshield Defroster

When the button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the button turns on the rear window defogger to heat electrically rear window and exterior rear-view mirrors.

When the rear window defogger is operating, the corresponding word is shown on the display. You can press the button again to turn off the rear window defogger. Otherwise, the rear window defogger will automatically stop after 15-minute continuous operation.

Note

Without starting the engine, prolonged use of the rear window defogger may cause the battery voltage to be too low, making it impossible to start the vehicle.

3ZONE Mode (Apply to Certain Models)

Press 3ZONE button, the button light will be on, the air conditioning system will enter 3-zone control mode; press the temperature regulation button (right side) or temperature regulation button (back row), the air conditioning system will also enter 3-zone control mode, and the 3ZONE button light will be on.

In the 3ZONE control mode, the temperatures of the driver's side and the front passenger's side and the rear row seat area are controlled independently.

- The temperature control button (left) sets the temperature of the driver’ s side.
- The temperature control button (right) sets the temperature of the driver’ s side.
- The temperature control button (rear row) sets the temperature of the rear row area.

Hint

With the rear control function enabled (i.e., the indicator of the rear control button comes on), operate the temperature control knob (right) to set the temperature of the rear row seat area.

Pressing the 3ZONE button again causes its indicator to go out and the air conditioning system to leave the 3ZONE control mode and enter the single zone control mode.The temperatures of the driver's side and the front passenger's side and the rear row seat area are controlled simultaneously：

- The temperature control button (left) regulates the temperature of the whole area in the vehicle.

DUAL-ZONE Mode (Apply to Certain Models)

If you press the DUAL button, the indicator in the button comes on, causing the air conditioning system to enter the DUAL-ZONE control mode. Or directly press the temperature regulation button (right side), the air conditioning system will also enter dual-zone control mode, and the DUAL button light will be on.

In the DUAL-ZONE control mode, the temperatures of two sides are controlled independently.

- The temperature control button (left) sets the temperature of the driver’s side.
- The temperature control button (right) sets the temperature of the front passenger’s side.

Pressing the DUAL button again causes its indicator to go out and the air conditioning system to leave the DUAl-ZONE control mode and enter the single zone control mode.The temperatures of the two sides are controlled simultaneously.

- The temperature control button (left) sets the temperature of the driver's and front passenger’s side.

Air Circulation Mode (Apply to Certain Models)

Continuously press the button to make the air circulate at automatic internal and external circulation, internal circulation, and external circulation in a cyclic manner.

– Automatic control of internal and external circulation: continuously press the button, the left button light will be on, the air circulation will enter internal and external circulation automatic control mode. At this mode:
  - This function will automatically control the air suction mode of air conditioner according to the condition of automobile exhaust in outside air. When the exhaust content in the outside air increases, the air suction mode will be controlled as internal circulation; when the exhaust content in the outside air decreases, the air suction mode will be controlled as external circulation.

– Interior air circulation: When the button is pressed continuously, the indicator of the button at the right comes on and the interior air recycles through the system (the interior circulation mode). When in the interior air circulation mode:
  - It can prevent the outside air from entering the vehicle, thus allowing the inside air to circulate;
  - It can prevent the exhaust of other vehicles or other dirty air from entering your vehicle.
  - Under auto control mode in summer, the system uses inner circulation mode to optimize cooling effect.

– Exterior air circulation: When the button is pressed continuously, the indicator in the button comes on and the exterior air recycles through the system (the exterior circulation mode). When in the exterior air circulation mode:
  - This function will introduce the outside air into the vehicle, so as to maintain the inside air fresh.

– Interior air circulation: When the button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the interior air recycles through the system (the interior circulation mode). When in the interior air circulation mode:
  - It can prevent the outside air from entering the vehicle, thus allowing the inside air to circulate;
  - It can prevent the exhaust of other vehicles or other dirty air from entering your vehicle.
  - Under auto control mode in summer, the system uses inner circulation mode to optimize cooling effect.
– Exterior air circulation: When the button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the exterior air recycles through the system (the exterior circulation mode). When in the exterior air circulation mode:
  - This function will introduce the outside air into the vehicle, so as to maintain the inside air fresh.

Note

- Prolonged interior air circulation causes accumulation of carbon dioxide in the vehicle, and this is not conducive to keep the driver awake.
- Using the interior air circulation mode in cold or rainy weather can cause the windows to fog up, affecting the view of the driver.

Anion air purifier (apply to certain models)

Continuously press button to switch the working mode of anion air purifier among ION, CLEAN and OFF in a cyclic manner.

Turning on the anion air purifier produces negative ions which can effectively decompose the interior formaldehyde, benzene and other harmful gases and purify the interior air, thereby reducing the driver's fatigue, relieving the driver's stress and protecting health of the driver and passengers.

– When the button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the A/C system turns on the anion air purifier.
– When the button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the A/C system turns on the anion air purifier.
– When the button is pressed again, the indicator in the button goes out and the A/C system turns off the anion air purifier.

Hint

- CLEAN mode will generate a larger amount of ion than ION mode.
- Pressing AUTO button will also enable anion purifier function.

Temperature Setting

The target temperatures on both sides of the front row seat can be independently set for the vehicle equipped with the DUAL-ZONE fully automatic air conditioning system. The temperature regulation button is used for setting the in-car temperature.

The target temperatures on both sides of the front row seat and of the rear row seat can be independently set for the vehicle equipped with the 3ZONE fully automatic air conditioning system. The front temperature button is used to set the temperature in the front row seat area and the rear one is used to set the temperature in the rear row seat area.

When pressing the temperature regulation button to set the in-car temperature:

- The set temperature value is shown on the display. The temperature ranges from 18.5 to 31.5 .
- Press the ▼TEMP▲ button to increase/decrease the temperature. Step for temperature adjustment is 0.5 .
- With the set temperature less than 18.5 , display shows LO; with the set temperature more than 31.5 , display shows HI.

Temperature settings do not change the operation mode of the A/C system. In automatic mode, when entering LO/HI, the system will keep operating in the large air supply state.

In automatic mode, to obtain the most ideal interior temperature, we recommend the set temperature of 25.0 . If necessary, you can adjust the temperature by yourself.

Hint

The temperature on the display screen is the target value of the setting temperature, instead of the measured value of the interior temperature.

Rear Row Control (Apply to Certain Models)

When the REAR button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the air conditioning system turns on the rear control function. The buttons on front air conditioner panel are equal to the corresponding buttons in back row:

- TEMP Temperature control button (Right side).
- AUTO button.
- OFF button.
- Air vent button.
- / Air volume regulation button.

When this function is enabled, pressing the temperature regulation button (left side) on the front air conditioner panel will be considered as invalid operation.

When this function is enabled, the air conditioning system will work at corresponding mode through pressing the following buttons on the front air conditioner panel:

- Interior and exterior air circulation button.
- Front defroster and defogger button.
- A/C compressor button.
- 3ZONE Independent Control Button

When the REAR button is pressed again or no operation is performed within the predetermined time (6 seconds), the indicator in the button goes out and the air-conditioning system turns off the rear control function.

Hint

If the rear control function is enabled (i.e., the indicator in the rear control function comes on), the temperature of the front passenger's side cannot be set individually.

Maximum Cooling Mode (Apply to Certain Models)

When the A/C$_{MAX}$ button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the air conditioning system switches to the A/C$_{MAX}$ mode. The system will perform the following settings automatically:

- The A/C is turned on.
- The temperature is set to LO.
- The air is directed to blow the upper body.
- The interior air circulation mode is set.
- The fan speed is set to the maximum.

When the A/C$_{MAX}$ button is pressed again, the indicator in the button goes out and the air conditioning system exits the A/CMAX mode and returns to the previous state. Or when the AUTO button is pressed, the air conditioning system directly switches to the automatic control mode or exits from the A/CMAX mode.

Fan Speed Setting

The fan speed can either be adjusted manually or controlled automatically. Press the or button to adjust the fan speed and airflow manually. In AUTO mode, the air conditioning system can control the fan speed and airflow automatically. Operating the fan speed control button will change the system state from the automatic mode into the manual mode, causing the word AUTO in the display to go out.

In the manual control mode, press the corresponding button to adjust progressively the fan speed (1~7 levels). The fan speed is shown on the display

The fan speed decreases by a level each time you press it.

The fan speed increases by a level each time you press it.

In the automatic mode, the fan speed acts as part of the automatic control logic. The fan speed is not limited to the 7 levels (when manually adjusted), but there are only 7 indicating bars shown on the display. So, the number of the indicating bars shows the nearest fan speed. To allow the interior temperature to reach the target, the fan speed can be adjusted automatically.

A/C Switch

When the A/C button is pressed, the indicator in the button comes on and the air conditioning system begins to cool the air. When the air conditioning is turned on:

- This means the air conditioning/ dehumidifying the interior is needed, but the compressor is not necessary to run.
- If the temperature outside the vehicle is less than 0 ℃ , the indicator in the button comes on, but the compressor may not work.

If the A/C button is pressed again, the indicator in the button goes out and the air conditioning system turns off the air conditioning.

Sunlight/Temperature Sensor

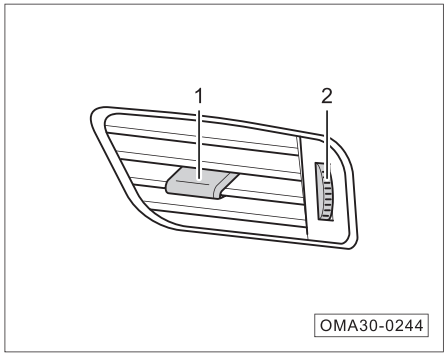
The air-conditioning control system can detect the interior and exterior temperatures and sunlight through the sun/temperature sensor. Be careful not to cover the interior sensor when driving.

Note

Due to different environment areas and vehicle conditions, the ambient temperature may be displayed differently from the actual value.

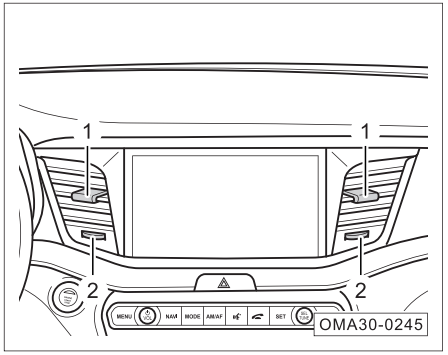
2.5.3 Air Outlets

The Outlets on the Side of the Instrument Panel



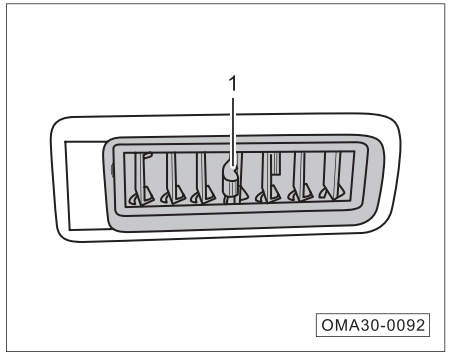
– Move the flap (1) at the air outlet leftward, rightward, upward and downward to adjust the wind direction.
– Rotate the rotary knob (2) near the air outlet from bottom to top to gradually increase the air volume, the lowest position refers to OFF.

The Center Outlets of the Instrument Panel



– Move the flap (1) at the air outlet leftward, rightward, upward and downward to adjust the wind direction.
– Rotate the rotary knob (2) near the air outlet from bottom to top to gradually increase the air volume, the lowest position refers to OFF.

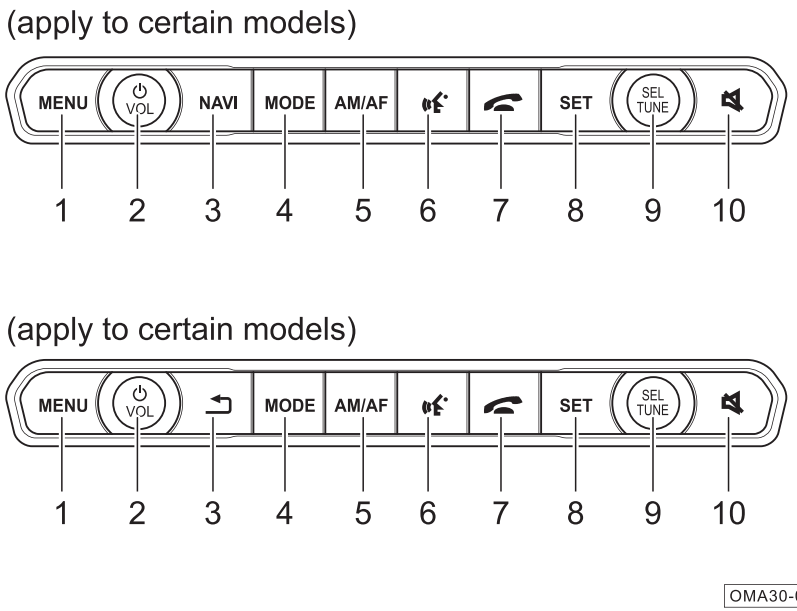
The Outlets on the Car Roof



– Move the flap (-1-) at the air outlet forwards and backwards to adjust the air volume (from small to large) and wind direction;
– Move the air outlet assembly upward and downward to adjust the wind direction up and down.

2.6 Sound System

2.6.1 Control Panel



1. Main menu interface button
   – Short press this button to switch to the "Main Menu" interface.
2. Power button/Volume adjustment knob
   – Short pressing this button can start or shut down the machine.
   – Long pressing this button can turn off or on the screen.
   – Turning the volume adjusting knob clockwise increases volume, and turning counter-clockwise decreases volume.
3. Navigation button (apply to certain models)/return button (apply to certain models)
   – Short press this button to switch to the navigation map interface.
   – Short press this button to return to the previous interface.
4. Sound source switching button
   – Continuously short pressing this button can switch: FM → AM → USB/ipod → BT Audio → FM.

– Pressing this button will not actively switch to Carlife music; if Carlife music is playing currently, pressing this button will switch to Radio.

5. AM/FM radio button
– In other audio source mode, short press this button to switch to the AM / FM radio;
– In radio mode, short press this button to switch the AM or FM radio band.

6. VR voice button
– Short press (less than 0.5s) this button to start local VR or end VR.
– During Siri process, short pressing (less than 0.5s) and long pressing (more than 0.5s) can both end Siri.

7. Telephone button
– Short press this button to switch to the Bluetooth phone interface.

8. Setting button
– Short pressing this button can firstly enter the System Setting interface; continuously short pressing this button can switch: System Setting → Vehicle Setting → Exit.

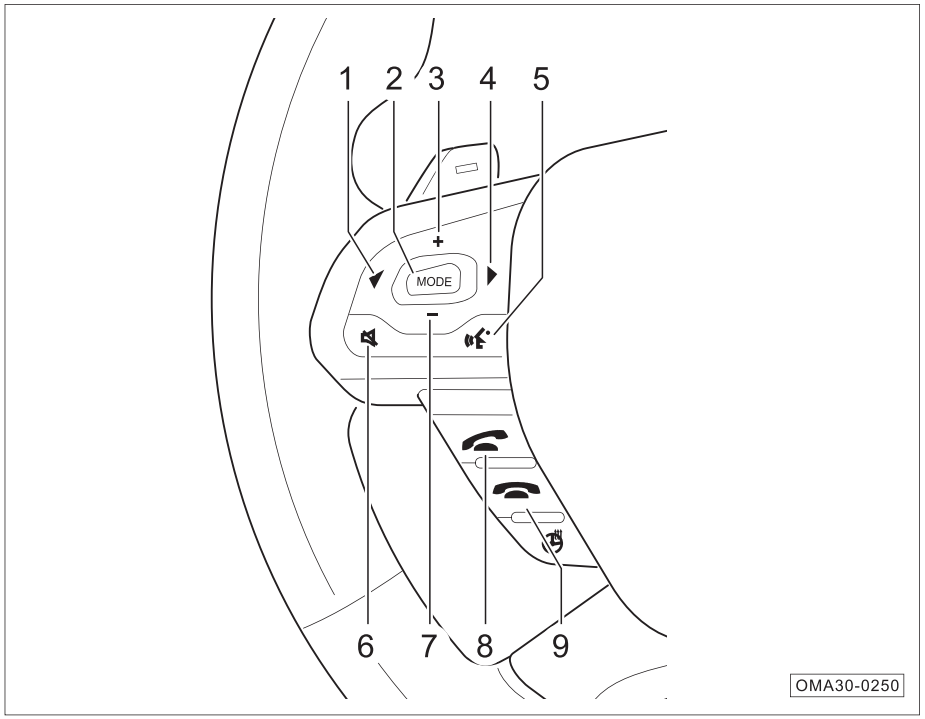
9. Option button
– Short press this button to select.
– At radio state, clockwise rotation can increase the radio frequency; counterclockwise rotation can decrease the radio frequency.
– At navigation interface state, clockwise rotation can enlarge the navigation map interface; counterclockwise rotation can shrink the navigation map interface.

10. Mute button
– Short press this button to mute the media source and CarLife media.
– Long press this button to mute the media source, CarLife media and navigation.
– After muting, press again to relieve mute.

Hint

The interface or function of audio system introduced by the User's Manual may differ due to different vehicle configurations, i.e. it is for reference only. Please refer to the actual car you buy.

2.6.2 Control Buttons on the Steering Wheel



1. Backward button
   - When in radio mode, the button searches automatically for a radio station toward a low frequency. Once it meets an effective radio station, the button will stop the automatic search and start playing.
   - The button changes the track into previous one when playing the media.
2. Sound source switching button
   - Continuously short pressing this button can switch: FM → AM → USB/ipod → BT Audio → FM.
3. Volume up button
4. Forward button
   - When in radio mode, the button searches automatically for a radio station toward a high frequency. Once it meets an effective radio station, the button will stop the automatic search and start playing.
   - The button changes the track into previous one when playing the media.

5. VR voice button

– Short press (less than 0.5s) this button to start local VR or end VR.

– During Siri process, short pressing (less than 0.5s) and long pressing (more than 0.5s) can both end Siri.

Hint

MODE button will interrupt VR process, and enter Radio mode.

6. Mute button

7. Volume down button

8. Answer Call button

– When an incoming call is on the Bluetooth phone system, you can press this button to answer.

9. Hanging up button

– When an incoming call is on the Bluetooth phone system, you can press this button to reject.

– You can press this button to hang up during a call.

2.6.3 Basic Operations

ON/OFF

– When the start switch is at the "ACC" or "ON" position, the system displays the standby interface.

– Short press the button to turn on the audio equipment.

Start-Up Guest Greeting Function

After the user unlocking through remote control, the car door will open and the audio host machine will start automatically; maintain the start switch at “OFF” position, the audio host machine will work for 10min, afterwards, it will power off automatically; if start-up is required, short press button or switch the start switch to “ON” position to restart.

Note

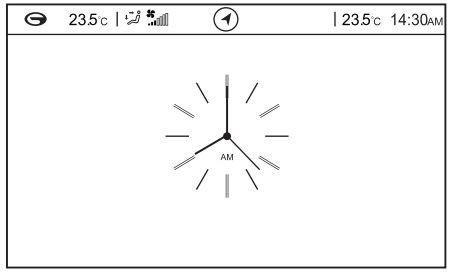
Do not let the audio host machine start repeatedly or work for a long time when the car is not started, so as to avoid power shortage of the vehicle.

Screen Saver

Short press button, the system will enter shutdown mode and display the screen saver.

Click the Clock at card mode on main interface, on which digital clock or simulation clock can be selected as the current screen saver.

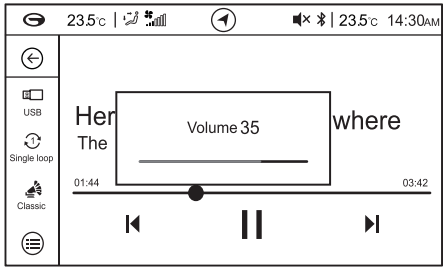
– Digital clock display



– Analog clock display

Volume Control

Adjusting the Volume



– Turning the volume control knob clockwise increases volume.
– Turning the volume control knob counterclockwise decreases volume.
– Short press the volume button + on the left side of the steering wheel to increase the volume.
– Short press the volume button − on the left side of the steering wheel to decrease the volume.

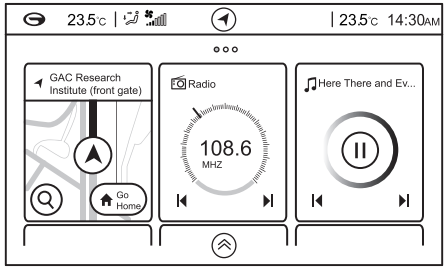
MUTE

– Short press the button to start muting;
– Short press the button again to cancel muting.

Main Interface

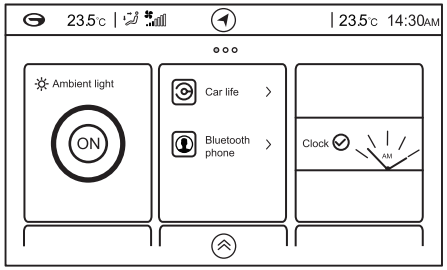
The main interface includes: card mode and button mode.

Card Mode



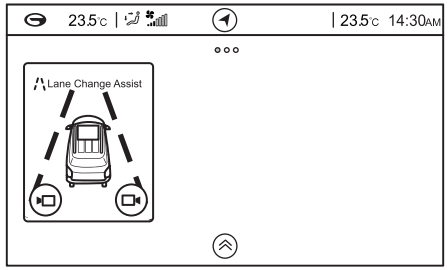
– The functions at card mode include: navigation, radio, music, atmosphere light, Car life, Bluetooth telephone, screen saver selection, and lane change assist; slip leftward or rightward to switch card.

Function	Description
	Short press to switch to the function button mode.
	Short press to skip to the navigation interface and enable the search function.
	Short press to skip to the navigation interface.
GAC Research Institute (front gate)	Address title, touch to enter navigation interface.
Radio	Title, touch to enter radio interface.
Here There and Ev...	Title, touch to enter music interface.
	Short press to switch to the last effective frequency.
	Short press to switch to the next effective frequency.
	Play or pause the current music.



Description of soft button functions:

Function	Description
	Turn on or off the ambient lights.
Car life	Skip to Car life interface.
Bluetooth phone	Skip to Bluetooth telephone interface.
Clock	Turn on the choosing interface of Clock mode

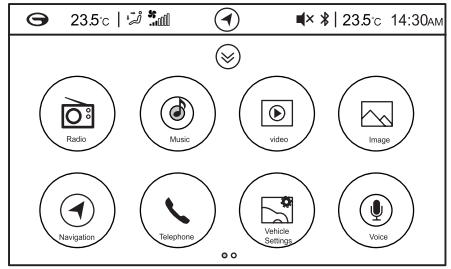


Description of soft button functions:

Function	Description
Lane Change Assist	Turn on or off the lane change assist.

Button Mode

On card mode interface, touch button, the main interface will skip from card mode to button mode.



– The functions of button mode include: radio, music, video, image, navigation(apply to certain models), telephone, vehicle settings, voice, and settings; slip leftward or rightward to turn pages.
– Short press the corresponding function soft button, the system will skip to the corresponding function interface.

2.6.4 Radio

Enter the radio playback interface through the following ways:

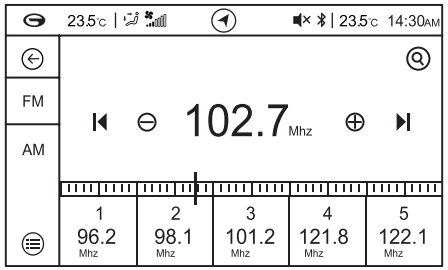
– Short press the “Radio” soft button on card mode interface or button mode interface to enter radio mode;

– You can switch to radio broadcast by continuously pressing the " MODE " button on the panel;

– You can switch to radio broadcast by continuously pressing the " MODE " button on the left side of the steering wheel;

– Short pressing the " AM/FM " button on the panel to enter the radio mode;

Band Selection



– In the radio playing interface, continuously short press the " AM/FM " button or press the FM or AM soft button on the screen to switch bands.

Radio Search Function

Radio stations are searched manually or automatically.

Manual searching

– Short press the ⊕ soft button to make the radio frequency to change in the direction of high-frequency by one step.

– Short press the ⊖ soft button to make the radio frequency to change in the direction of low-frequency by one step.

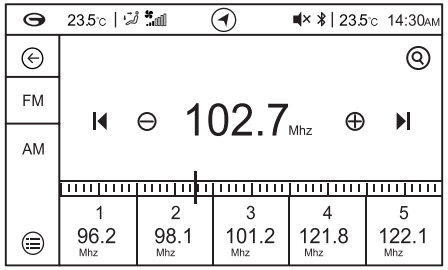
– You can also drag the cursor I on the frequency axis to search for radio stations.

Auto Searching

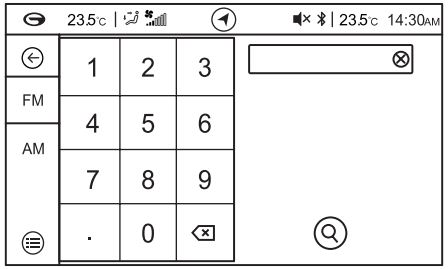
– Short press the soft button or the ► button on the left side of the steering wheel to cause radio stations to be searched automatically toward high-frequency. If an effective radio station is met, automatic search stops and the radio station starts playing.

– Short press the soft button or the ◄ button on the left side of the steering wheel to cause radio stations to be searched automatically toward low-frequency. If an effective radio station is met, automatic search stops and the radio station starts playing.

Manually Input the Frequency of Radio Station

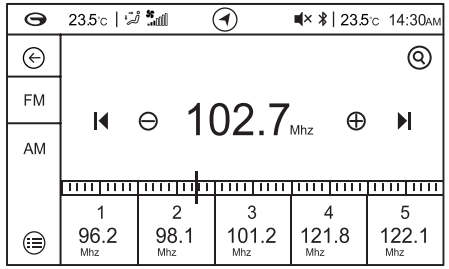


1. Touch on top right corner to open the keyboard.



2. Able to manually input the frequency of radio station.

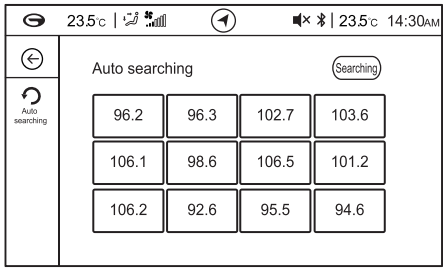
Add Radio Station as Favorite



– Long press the soft buttons (1-5) under the radio station interface to add the currently playing radio station as favorite to the corresponding position (1~5).

– Short press any of 1~5 positions can play the corresponding favorite radio station.

Auto Store

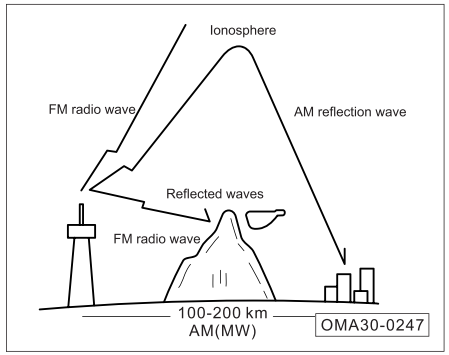


– Short press soft button to search the radio stations from the current frequency. After search, the system will save 12 radio stations with strong signals in the list and start to play the radio station with the strongest signal. During the search process, returning or switching sound source will interrupt the search.
– If the radio station has been pre-stored in the radio station list, touch “Search” to search radio stations again.

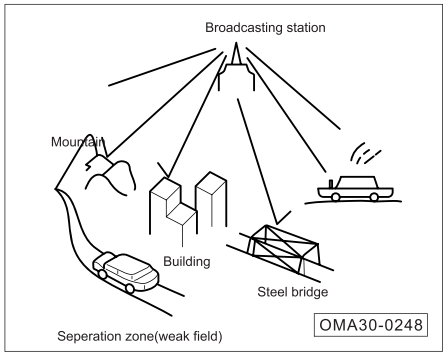
Hint

When the signal reception is bad, the number of stored radio stations may be less than 12.

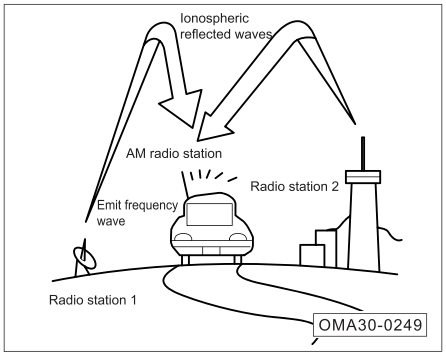
AM/FM Car Stereo Reception Form



VHF channels on FM pass through the ionosphere directly without reflection, but once they hit high mountains and high-rise buildings and other barriers, they will produce reflections. FM broadcasting distance is usually about 40 to 50 kilometers. It will become shorter when stereo signals are transmitted.



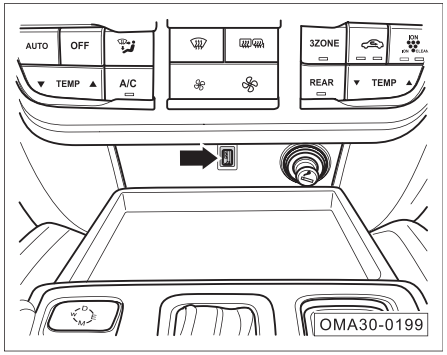
The radio is far away from the broadcasting station, so the signals are too weak to be received. As a result, the radio will only receive noises. When the vehicle driving through the area with two strong stations with a similar signal frequency which can be received at the same time, the radio may lose sound suddenly or produce noise interference.



AM medium waves or short waves cannot pass through the ionosphere, resulting in diffraction.When the waves are deflected by large objects such as mountains and buildings, its broadcasting distance is farther than that of FM. Therefore, it is likely to simultaneously receive the signals from two AM radio stations.

2.6.5 USB Play

Selection of USB Sound Source



– As shown in the figure, the position indicated by the arrow is USB interface.

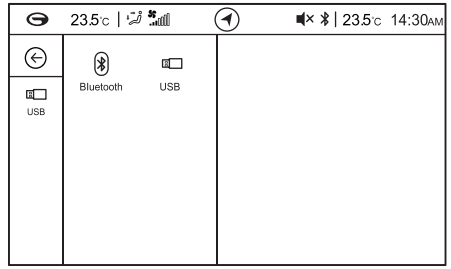
There are four ways to enter the main interface of the USB media source:

– Short press the “Music” soft button on card mode interface or button mode interface to enter USB audio play mode;

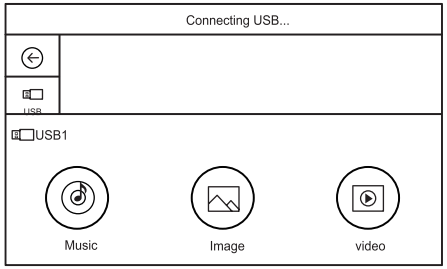
– You can switch to USB play by continuously short pressing the " MODE " button on the panel;

– You can switch to USB play by continuously short pressing the " MODE " button on the panel;

USB Music Player



– Short press USB to select external devices; support USB and Bluetooth music.



– After USB device is successfully connected, a popup prompt will appear. Support USB music, image and video.

Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
	Previous Track/Fast Backward button
	Next Track/Fast Forward button
	Play button
	Pause button
	Drag fast forward/fast backward of playing progress

– The play interface can display the song name, singer name, total song duration and play time.

Loop Play

Short press soft button to change the play mode of USB music:

– All random: the songs will be played according to random list, and will stop after the play ends;
– All loop: the songs will be played according to the ordered list, and will play from the start again after the list ends;
– Single loop: play one song repeatedly; if the next song is selected, the next song will be played repeatedly.

Sound Effect Switch

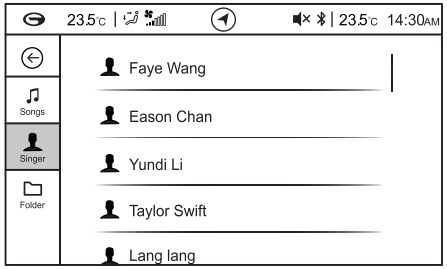
Short press Classic soft button to switch the preset sound effect. The system supports five preset sound effects and customized effect:

– Some vehicle models: classics, popular, rock, default, jazz, custom;

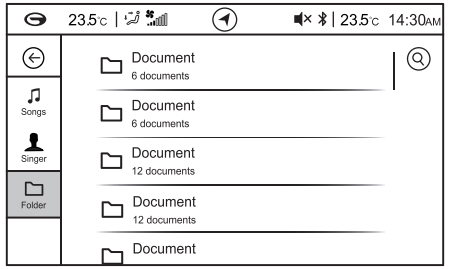
– Some vehicle models: classics, popular, rock, Hi-Fi, jazz, custom;
– For the custom sound effect, the user can adjust the high, middle and low pitches voluntarily (please refer to the sound effect setting function).

Music List

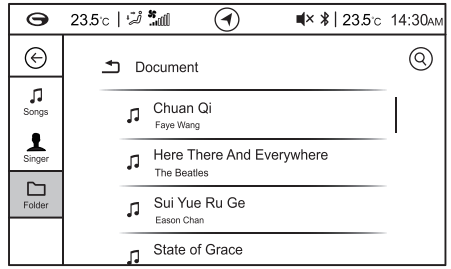
– Short press to enter list:
– Short press Song to enter song list: Touch the selected song to enter the Play interface.
– Slide the scroll bar on the right of list up and down to find the song.



– Short press Singer to enter singer list: select the singer to enter the song list of that singer, and then select a song to enter Play interface.
– Slide the scroll bar on the right of list up and down to find the singer.



– Short press Folder to enter folder list.
– Slide the scroll bar on the right of list up and down to find the folder.

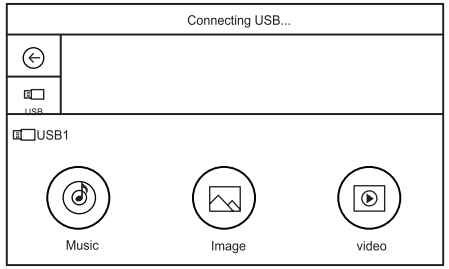


– Select a folder under the Folder to enter the next level of folder list or song list, and select a song under that folder to enter the Play interface;
– Slide the scroll bar on the right of list up and down to find the song.
– Short press to return the previous level of folder directory.

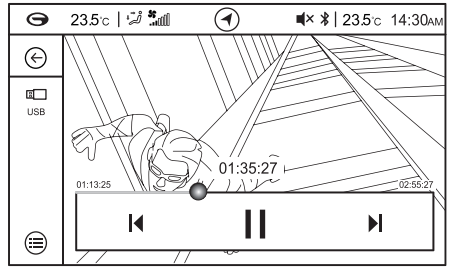
Music List Search

– Short press on the top right corner to open the search keyboard, and input initials or English letters to find the song, singer or folder.
– Short press 123 button on the left bottom of keyboard to switch letter form and the number;
– Short press ⌫ on the right side of keyboard to delete the input contents one by one;
– Short pressin ⊗ the search box to delete all input contents.

USB Video Play



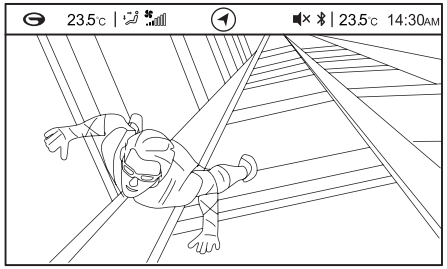
– Enter the video play interface through the video button under button mode or the pop-up box when inserting USB device.



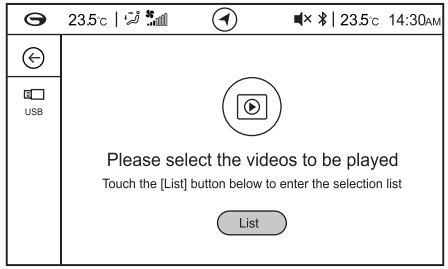
Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
⏮	Play the last video
⏭	Play the next video
▶	Play button
⏸	Pause button
●	Drag fast forward/fast backward of playing progress

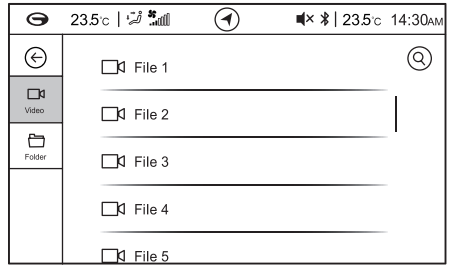
Video List



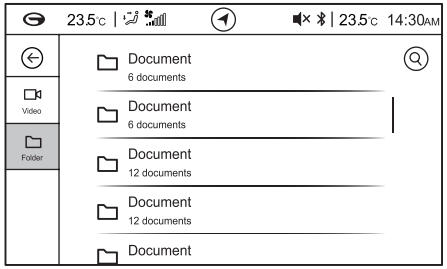
– Short press the blank area in the video playing interface to enter full-screen play mode (the status bar still exists).



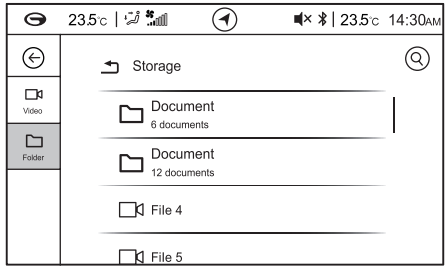
– Short press to enter list:



– List is divided into video list and folder list.
– On video list interface, select a video to enter video play interface.
– Slide the scroll bar on the right side of list up and down to find the video



– Short press Folder to display the video list and folder list under this folder;
– Slide the scroll bar on the right side of list up and down to find the video or folder list.

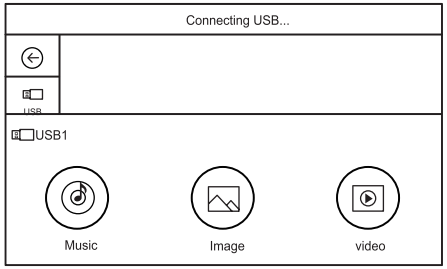


– Short press a folder in the folder list to enter the next file directory;
– Touch to return to the previous folder directory.

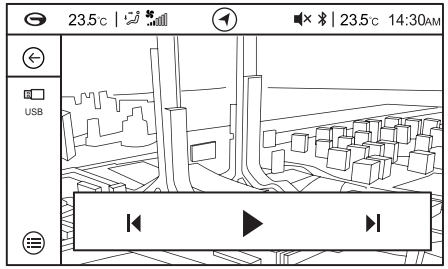
Video List Search

– Short press on the top right corner to open the search keyboard, and input initials or English letters to find the video or folder.
– Short press 123 button on the left bottom of keyboard to switch letter form and the number;
– Short press on the right side of keyboard to delete the input contents one by one;
– Short press in the search box to delete all input contents.

USB Image Play



– Enter the image browsing interface through the image button under button mode or the pop-up box when inserting USB device.

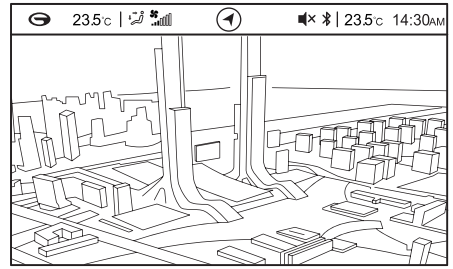


Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
	Play the last video
	Play the next video
	Play button
	Pause button

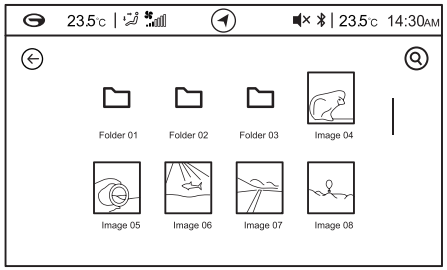
Hint

The selection of image device does not rely on music and video devices, and will not change with the music and video devices.

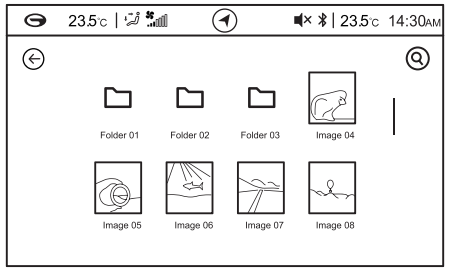


– Short press the blank area in the image playing interface to enter full-screen play mode (the status bar still exists).

Image List



– Short press to enter image list.



The image list will be displayed in the form of thumbnail:

– Short press a folder to enter the next level file directory;
– Short press to return the previous level of folder directory.

Image List Search

– Short press on the top right corner to open the search keyboard, and input initials or English letters to find the image or folder.
– Short press 123 button on the left bottom of keyboard to switch letter form and the number;
– Short press on the right side of keyboard to delete the input contents one by one;
– Short press in the search box to delete all input contents.

2.6.6 Bluetooth

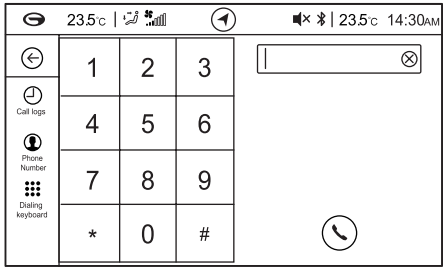
Description

Bluetooth is a short-range wireless communication technology. Without any physical connection, the unit can exchange information within 5 m. You can use the Bluetooth of the system to establish a wireless connection with your Bluetooth phone to achieve hands-free answer.

Instructions:

- Turn on Bluetooth connection function: Turn on your phone’s bluetooth and the host Bluetooth of the system when using the Bluetooth function, and make sure your Bluetooth phone is at a distance within 5m away from the host of the system.
- The Bluetooth part of this system has passed the relevant certification. If your cell phone in use cannot be paired to the host Bluetooth of this system properly, or the bluetooth functions abnormally after connection, check whether your phone meets the design requirements of the international Bluetooth standards or not.
- The Bluetooth part of this system only supports that one device is connected at the same time, and generally, the Bluetooth phone also only supports that one device is connected. If your phone has searched the Bluetooth of this system, but it cannot be connected, check whether your phone has been connected to other Bluetooth device around. If so, try to cut off all your phone connection, or try to power off your phone, and then re-power on it and turn on the Bluetooth connection.
- And check whether your system has been connected to other Bluetooth phone around. If so, try to cut off all the Bluetooth connection to the system, and then turn on the Bluetooth connection function of the system.
- Just like using a mobile phone to answer calls, prolonged Bluetooth conversation by connecting the system with your phone can do harm to your health due to electromagnetic radiation.
- After the host Bluetooth is turned on, use your phone to search for the Bluetooth device and connect it.

Selecting the Bluetooth Mode

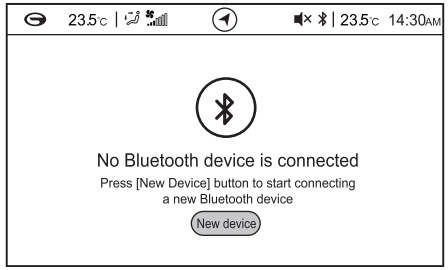


You can switch to the Bluetooth main interface by the following ways:

– Enter Bluetooth mode through short pressing [Bluetooth Phone] soft button on card mode interface or [Phone] soft button on button mode interface;

– Short press button on the panel to enter Bluetooth mode;

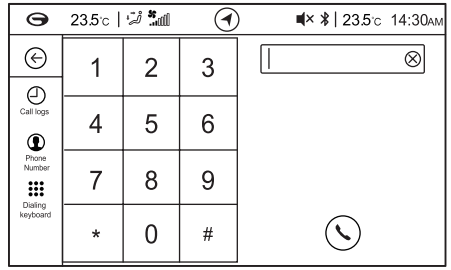
– At non-call mode, short press button on the left side of steering wheel to enter Bluetooth mode.



– If there is no Bluetooth device connected, the system will prompt in connecting new device.

– Short press to enter Bluetooth setting interface, and refer to system settings/ Bluetooth part for the setting mode.

Make a Call



– Dial the number through dialing keyboard.

- If there is any contact person on the dialing interface, the name and default image of such person will be displayed;
- If there is no contact person, the number and default image will be displayed;
- When the call is connecting, it will display “call connecting”;
- When the call is connected, it will display the call time.

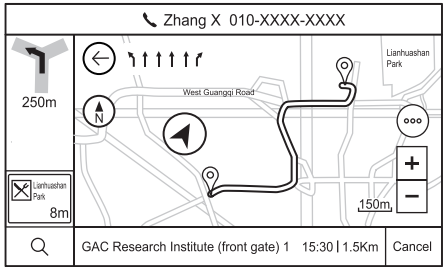
Buttons on the call interface can realize:

- Short press to hang up;
- When the call is connected, short press to switch Hands Free and Private mode (when the call is connected, the default mode is Hands Free);
- When the call is connected, short press to mute and relieve the mute microphone;
- When the call is connected, short press to input numbers.

Answer a Call

When there is an incoming call, the full screen will display the call interface, the user can:

- Short press on the screen to answer the call;
- Short press on the screen to reject the call;
- Press the Answer button on the steering wheel to answer the call;
- Press the Hangup button on the steering wheel to reject the call.

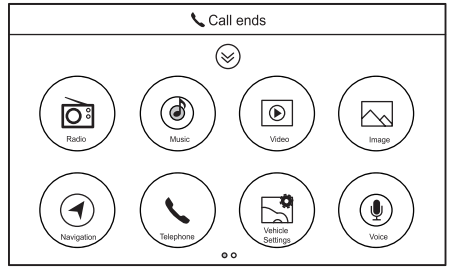


– If navigation function is used when the call comes, the incoming call interface will display, but after the call is connected, the call state will be displayed on the status bar, and the navigation interface will continue displaying.

Hint

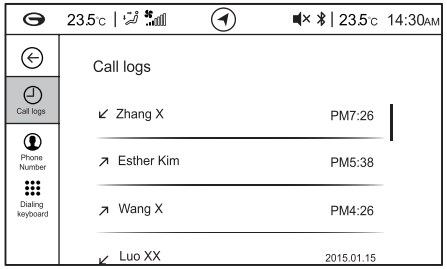
If a call comes when rear camera is displaying, the incoming call interface will not display, and there is also no state display after the call connected.

– Except for rear camera display, the user can switch to other interfaces during the call, and the call state will be displayed on the status bar.

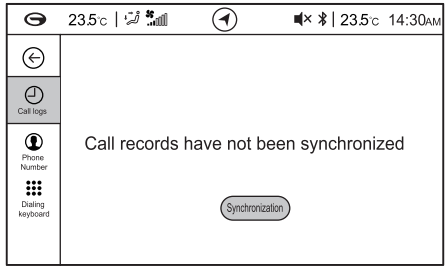


– After the call ends, the statue bar will give prompt, and the system will stay on this interface.

Call Records

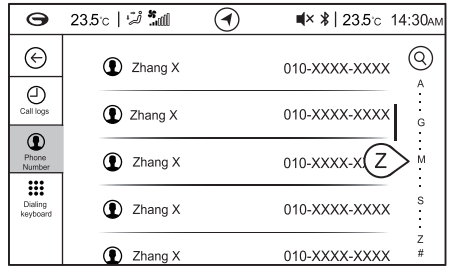


– After the Bluetooth device is successfully connected, the system will automatically synchronize the call records;
– The call records include received calls, missed calls and dialed calls;
– Pull down the scroll bar on the right side to browse the call records.



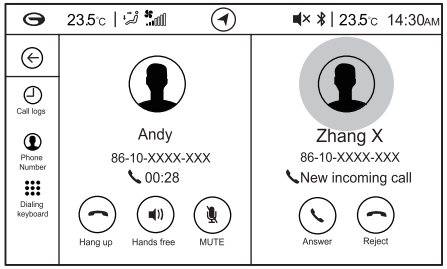
– If the call records synchronization fails or is not completed, short press [Sync] to manually synchronize the address book.

Phone Number



– After the Bluetooth device is successfully connected, the system will automatically synchronize the contact numbers;
– If the address book synchronization fails or is not completed, manually synchronize the address book.
– Pull down the scroll bar on the right side to browse the address book, pointer display exists during the pulling process of contact list;
– Short press on the top right corner to open the keyboard, input initials and English letters to find the contact number.

Call Waiting

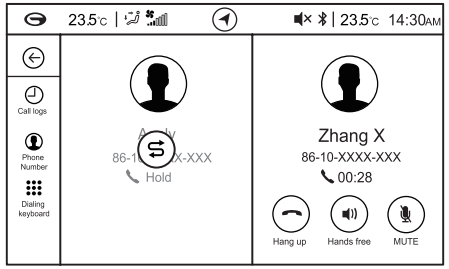


During the calling process, if a third-party call comes, the system will display the third-party call interface:

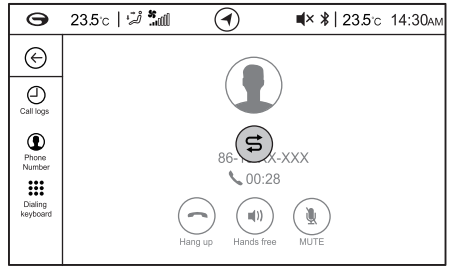
– Short press to hang up the current call and display the third-party call on full screen;

– Short press to hold the current call and answer the third-party call;

– Short press to reject the third-party call and display the current call on full screen.

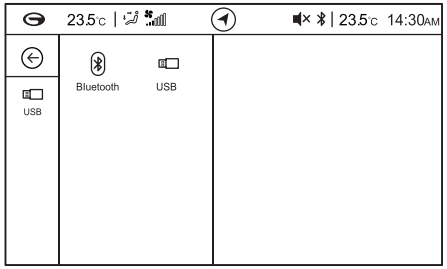


– After choosing to answer the call, the current call will be at holding state, the third-party call will be at connecting state; short press to switch the call.



– After finishing one call, button will display on the full screen; after exiting, the full screen will display the other call.

Bluetooth Music



– Short press to select Bluetooth music, the music on device can be played through Bluetooth.

Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
	Play the last video
	Play the next video
	Play button
	Pause button

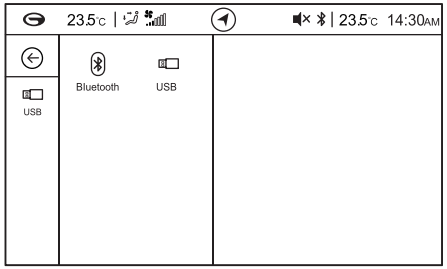
– Bluetooth music supports the display of song name and singer; supports selection of preset sound effect; it does not support playing progress display, loop mode selection or playlist.

Hint

- This function requires your phone to support. Some mobile phones may need to enter the music player mode.
- Whether the information on the music player interface ID3 is displayed or not depends on the phone support.

2.6.7 iPod Play

This product has been certified by the Apple iPod, supporting iPod professional equipment to play iPod music.



After connecting iPod to audio host machine by USB wire, short press USB to select and play the music on iPod.iPod

iPod Music Play

Description of soft button functions:

Icon	Description
	Play the last video
	Play the next video
	Play button
	Pause button
	Drag fast forward/fast backward of playing progress

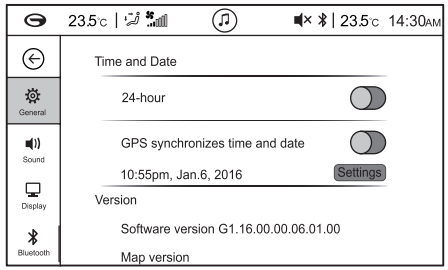
- iPod supports pause, play, last song, and next song;
- Support play progress bar, total song duration and play time display;
- Support the display of song name and singer;
- Support the selection of preset sound effect;
- Support play list (the effect is same to USB music);
- Do not support loop mode selection (loop mode relies on iPod).

2.6.8 System Settings

You can enter the system setup interface by the following ways:

– Short press “Settings” button on the button mode interface to enter the System Settings interface;

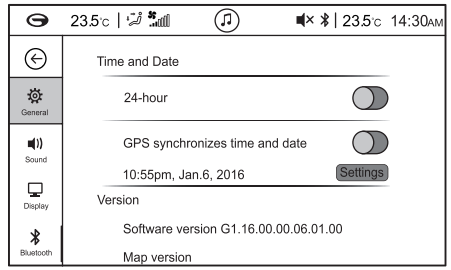
– Short press the " SET " button on the panel to enter the system setup interface.



– On System Settings interface, General, Sound, Display, Bluetooth, WIFI, and Factory Reset can be set.

– Shortly press the left soft button to enter into the corresponding setting interface.

General Settings



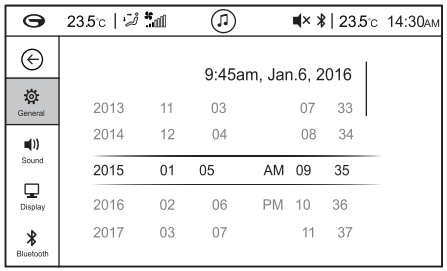
On this interface, display time and date, version and vehicle information can be set.

Time and Date

– 24-hour system is on, the system time will be calculated by 24 hours;

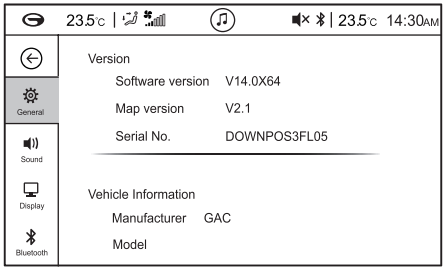
– GPS time and date is on, GPS time and date will be automatically synchronized.

– Manual setting of time and date:



– Short press the time and date on bottom right corner to enter manual setting interface.

– Scroll year/month/date/hour/minute to adjust the date and time, which will be saved when exiting this interface.



Version Information

– Display system software version;

– Display map version;

– Display serial number.

Vehicle Information

– Display manufacturer;

– Display model;

– Display serial number;

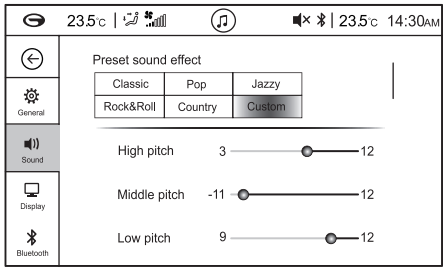
– Display firmware version;

– Display hardware version;

– Display current language;

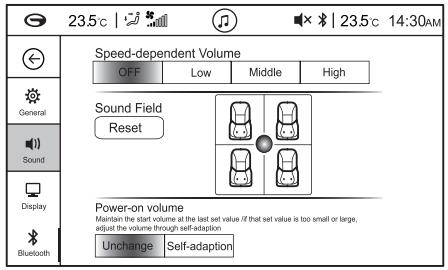
– Display supported language.

Voice Setting



Preset sound effect

- Select preset sound effect: classics, popular, jazz, rock, country (Hi-Fi), custom, which correspond to different high, middle and low pitch combinations respectively;
- Select custom mode, where high, middle and low pitch can be adjusted manually.



Speed-dependent Volume

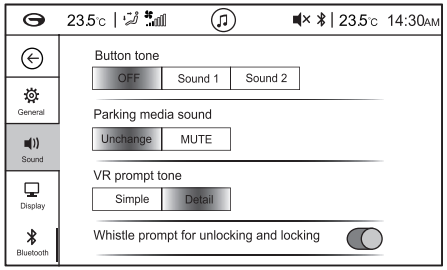
- Speed Related Sound can select: close, low, middle, and high; select to adjust the variation of volume changing with the increase or decrease of speed.

Sound Field

- Adjust the position of sound field through touch screen.
- Short press “Reset” to restore the default values for resetting.

Power-on Volume

- Constant: the starting volume will maintain the volume when the machine is closed last time;
- Self-adaption: if the volume is less than 5 or more than 19 when the machine is closed last time, the system will automatically return to the default volume; if the volume is between 5 and 19, the system will maintain that value.



Button tone

– Adjust the button tone of touch screen with the options of: close, Tone 1, and Tone 2.

Parking media volume

– Constant: the radar will keep constant volume when parking;
– Mute: the radar will be mute when parking.

Note

- When the host machine is at normal working state and the parking media volume is set as mute, set at the reverse gear, the host machine will be mute.
- When the host machine is at normal working state and the parking media volume is set as constant, set at the reverse gear, the host machine can play the media sound source normally, and the user can operate the volume adjusting knob/buttons on steering wheel to manually adjust the media volume.
- When the host machine is at screensaver mode, the host machine media source will maintain mute no matter the parking media volume is set as constant or mute.

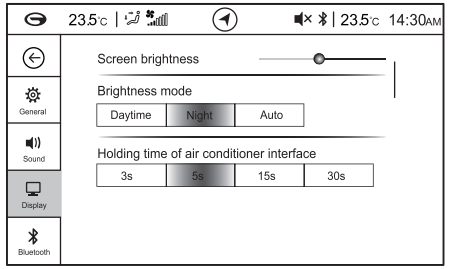
VR prompt tone

– Adjust the button tone of touch screen with the options of: simple and detail.

Unlock/Lock Prompt Tone

– On: the vehicle will give prompt when locking and unlocking;
– Off: the vehicle will not give prompt when locking and unlocking.

Display Setting



Screen brightness

– Adjust through pulling the progress bar.

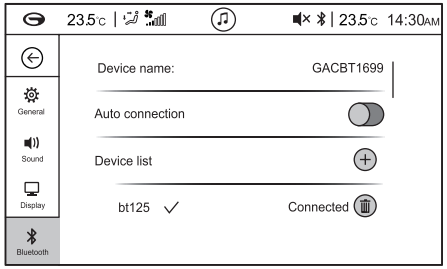
Brightness mode

– Day mode: default luminance of day mode;
– Night mode: default luminance of night mode;
– Automatic mode: switch between day mode and night mode according to the lamplet.

Holding time of air conditioner interface

– The holding time of air conditioner interface without operation can be 3s, 5s, 15s,and 30s

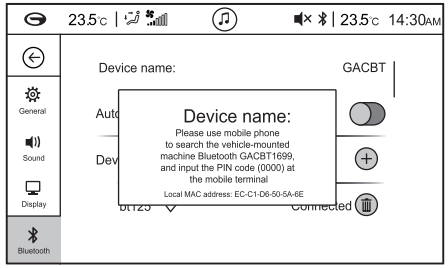
Bluetooth Settings



Auto connection

– On: paired devices in the device list will automatically connect after entering the connecting scope;
– Off: paired devices in the device list will not automatically connect after entering the connecting scope.

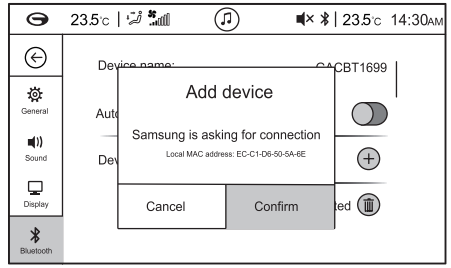
Device List



– Short press ⊕ to open the Bluetooth visibility of host machine.

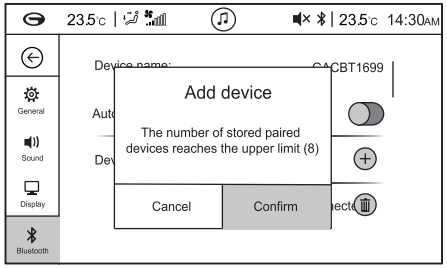
Note

Whether to input the PIN code or not shall be judged according to different phone models.

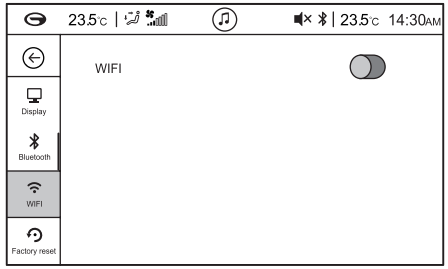


– Search “GAC BT” at mobile terminal, short press to start pairing, the host machine will present confirmation box after receiving the pairing request.
– Short press “OK” to start pairing; short press “Cancel” to end pairing. After successfully connected, the device will be displayed in the device list.
– The device list will display the paired Bluetooth device, and if the device is successfully connected, it will display “connected”.

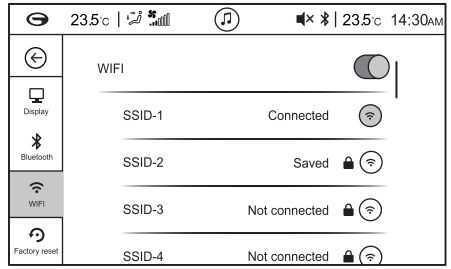
WIFI Setting



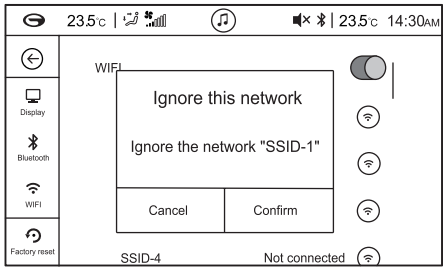
– Touch on the right side of device to delete the paired device. Up to 8 paired devices can be stored, when the 9th device is trying to connect the host machine, the system will prompt the user to delete the device in the paired list.



– Turn on the WiFi switch, search the surrounding hot spots, after successfully connecting the selected hot spot, the wireless network can be connected.



– After successful connection, connected and signal intensity will be displayed on the right side of this network. Encrypted network will display secret key mark.
– When choosing a network with secret key, enter password to finish the connection.

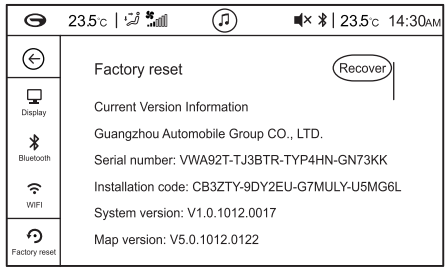


– Touch [OK] to delete this network from the network list.

Note

WiFi network is only used for searching points of interest on voice cloud and real-time traffic conditions; it has no other application.

Factory Reset



– Touch [Reset] on top right corner of Factory Reset interface to restore the System Settings to factory settings.

2.6.9 Vehicle Setting

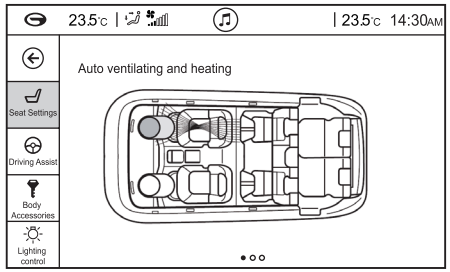
Short press “Vehicle Settings” on button mode interface to enter Vehicle Settings interface, and slide the interfaces on Vehicle Settings interface leftward/rightward/upward/ downward to switch the setting interfaces.

Note

Some vehicle setting functions will only be valid when the starting switch is at “ON” position, so that guarantee the starting switch is at “ON” position when setting the vehicle.

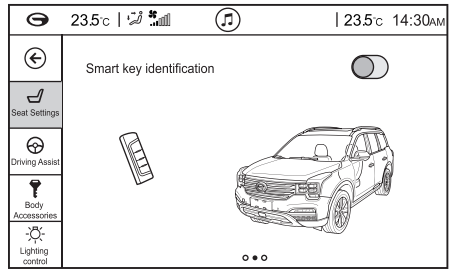
Some vehicle setting functions may differ due to different vehicle configurations, please refer to the configuration of actual vehicle.

Seat Setting



Auto seat heating (apply to certain models)

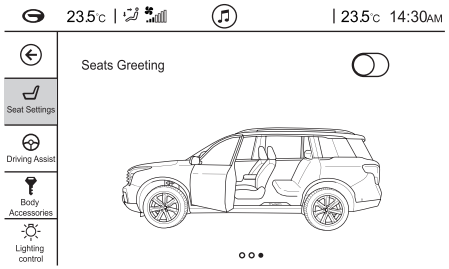
– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.



Smart key identification (apply to certain models)

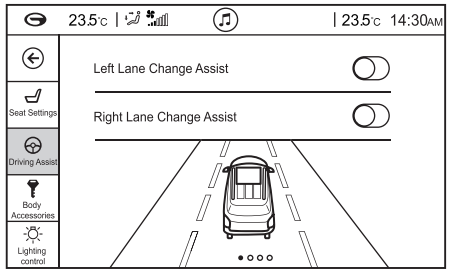
– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Driving Assist



Seats greeting (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

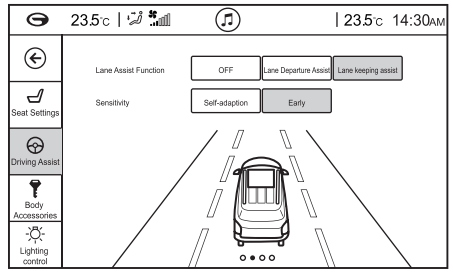


Left lane change assist (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Right lane change assist (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

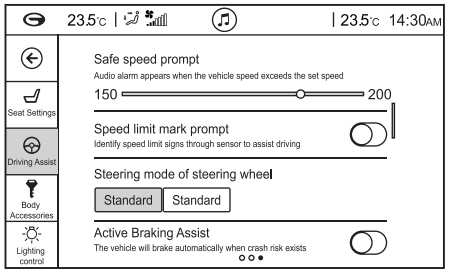


Lane assist function (apply to certain models)

– Short press the soft button to set as “OFF”, “Lane Departure Assist”, and “Lane Keeping Assist”.

Sensitivity (apply to certain models)

– Short press the soft button to set as “Self-adaption” or “Early”.



Safe speed prompt

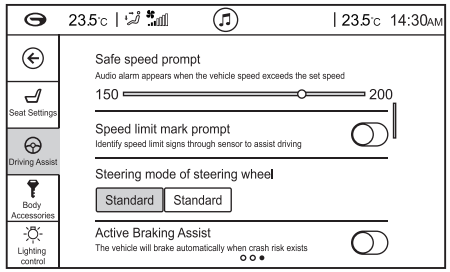
– Pull the cursor leftward or rightward to set the speed with safe speed prompt, the scope is: 0 ~200 km/h.

Speed limit mark prompt

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Steering mode of steering wheel (apply to certain models)

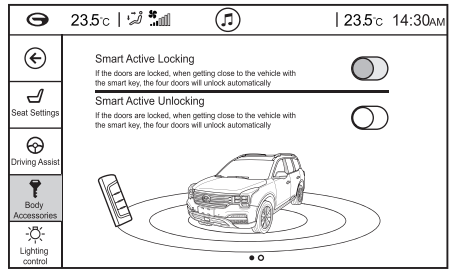
– Short press the soft button to set as “Standard” or “Motion” mode.



Active Brake Assist (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

车身附件

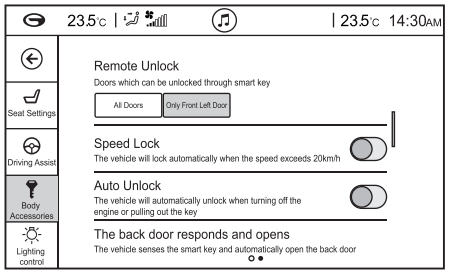


Smart Active Locking (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Smart Active Unlocking (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.



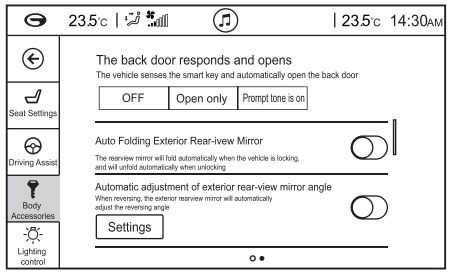
Remote Unlock

– Short press the soft button to set "all doors" or "left front door only".

Speed Lock

– To set the function on/off, short press Auto Unlock

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.



The back door responds and opens (apply to certain models)

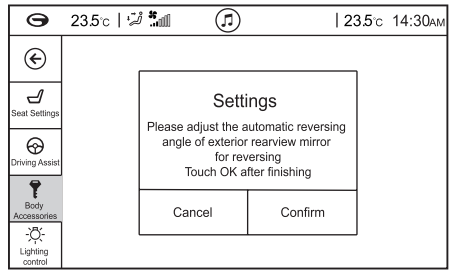
– Short press the soft button to set as "Close", "Open Only", or "Prompt Tone On".

Auto Folding Exterior Rear-view Mirror

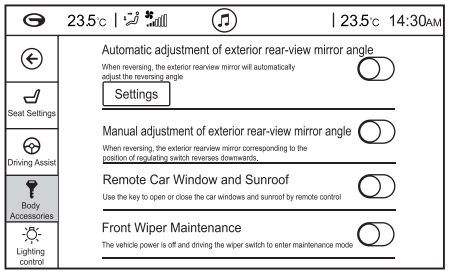
– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Automatic adjustment of exterior rear-view mirror angle (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.



– Short press "Settings" soft button to set the automatic adjustment of exterior rear-view mirror angle.



Manual adjustment of exterior rear-view mirror angle (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

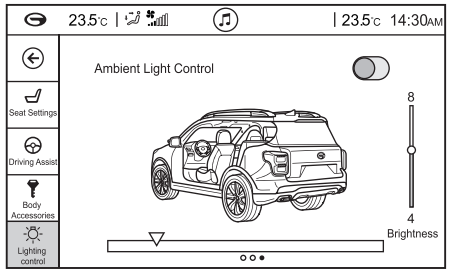
Remote controlled car window and sunroof

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Front Wiper Maintenance

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Light Control



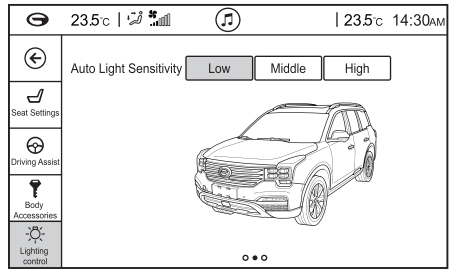
Ambient light control (apply to certain models)

– In case the lamplet is on, the user can:

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

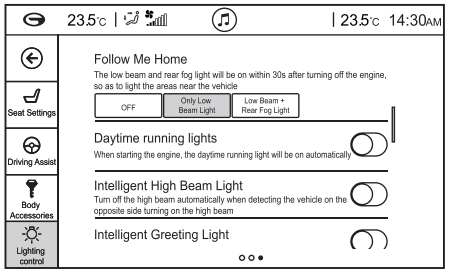
– Adjust the color of atmosphere light through pulling the color cursor right and left;

– Adjust the luminance of atmosphere light through pulling the luminance cursor up and down.



Auto light sensitivity

– Short press the soft button to set as “low”, “middle” or “high”.



Follow me home

– Short press the soft button to set as “OFF”, “low beam”, “low beam + rear fog lamp”.

Daytime running light (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

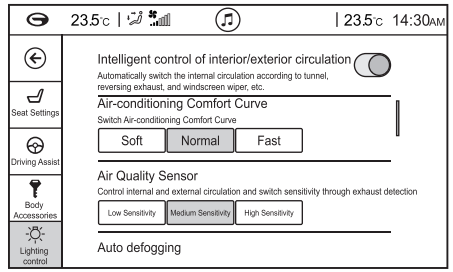
Intelligent high-beam (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Intelligent guest greeting light (apply to certain models)

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

Air-Conditioning Setting



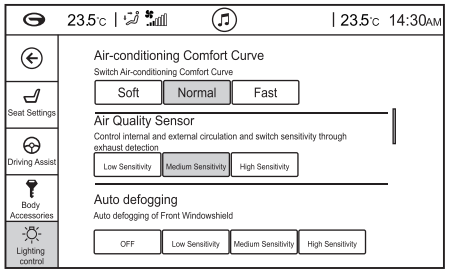
Intelligent control of interior/exterior circulation

– To set the function on/off, short press soft button.

– When this function is enabled, if the air conditioner is at automatic control mode, the internal and external air doors will be automatically controlled according to the tunnel, reversing exhaust, and windscreen wiper action, etc.

Air-conditioning Comfort Curve

– Short press the soft button to set as “soft”, “normal” and “fast”.



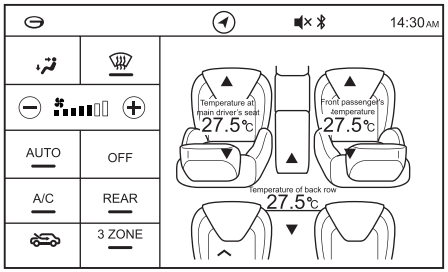
Air quality sensor (apply to certain models)

– Short press the soft button to set as “low sensitivity”, “middle sensitivity” and “high sensitivity”.

Auto defogging

– Short press the soft button to set as “OFF”, “low sensitivity”, “middle sensitivity” and “high sensitivity”.

A/C Control (Apply to Certain Models)



– Touch [status bar] on status bar to enter air conditioning control interface:

[blowing mode] : Switch blowing mode.

[front defrost] : Turn on/off the front defrost.

[air volume] : Adjust the air volume.

[AUTO] : Turn on/off the A/C.

[OFF] : Turn off the A/C.

[A/C] : Turn on/off the A/C.

[REAR] : Turn on/off the rear row A/C.

[circulation] : Switch circulation mode (internal and external circulation).

[3 ZONE] : Turn on/off the 3ZONE A/C.

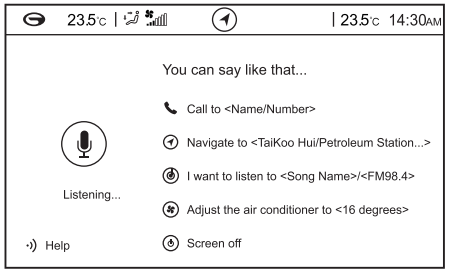
[▲/▼] : Increase/decrease the temperatures of main driver seat, co-driver seat and back row by zones.

Note

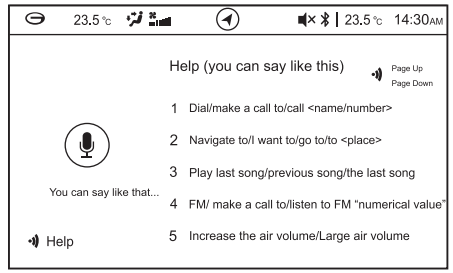
- See detailed descriptions provided by air conditioning system for the air condition display and operation logic.

2.6.10 Voice

Press the VR button on audio system control panel or the VR button on steering wheel to start the voice recognition function, the system will give a prompt box.



– Voice supports calling, navigation, music, radio, air condition and screen off.
– The user can call the number or contact person to dial the Bluetooth telephone;
– The user can search the surrounding points of interest, house number or crossroad, and then start navigation;
– The user can adjust the FM or AM frequency of the radio, or listen to the music or the songs of a singer;
– The user can adjust the temperature, air flow, internal and external circulation, and other functions of the air conditioner through voice;
– The user can turn off the screen through voice;



– The user can turn off the screen through voice;

2.6.11 Precautions for Product Use

Warning

- When navigation system is used for route navigation, please drive according to the actual traffic rules. If the driver only follows the route navigation of the navigation system when driving, sometimes he will break traffic regulations or even cause traffic accident.
- During the driving process, the driver shall check the images within the shortest possible time. Watching the image for a too long time may cause traffic accident.
- During the driving process, the driver shall not execute address login, facility search or other operations, which must be operated after parking. Inattention to observe the front situations may cause traffic accident.
- Do not privately disassemble or transform this product, which may cause traffic accident, fire or electric shock, etc.

Warning

- It should be noted that water or other foreign matters shall not intrude into the product, which may cause smoking, fire or failure, etc. In case smoking or other abnormal condition occurs due to foreign matter intrusion or water soaking, immediately stop using, and contact the 4S Shop of the Company. Any continued use may cause failure.
- Do not use at failure state, including no image display or no sound, which may cause accident, fire, electric shock, or critical failure, etc.
- Turn off the touch screen before wiping, for which soft dry cloth shall be used. Do not use coarse cleaning cloth, chemical cleaning cloth or organic reagent (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, and etc.), which will damage or deteriorate the panel.

Warning

- During thunderstorm weather, do not touch antenna or other circuit, which may cause electric shock due to lightning stroke.
- Do not operate this product in area where parking is prohibited, which may cause traffic accident.

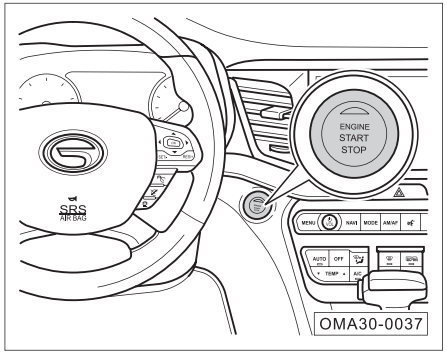
Note

- Please drive according to the traffic conditions. During the navigation process, the driver may drive the car into an area of no entry due to change of rules.
- During the driving process, the volume shall be adjusted in such a manner that the driver can hear the conditions outside the vehicle. If the volume is too high and the driver cannot hear the conditions outside the vehicle, accident may occur.

3.1 Starting and driving

3.1.1 Start Switch

Start Switch Mode



The pattern of this vehicle's Start switch (“ENGINESTART/STOP” button) is same with conventional key rotary ignition switch gear. When operating, you can simply bring smart key into the vehicle and press the start button to switch each gear or start/stop the engine.

Hint

Only when the smart key is inside the vehicle and detected, the start switch can be operated.

Start switch not pressed, and it's in "OFF" gear.

When the transmission gearshift lever is in the “P” gear and the brake pedal is not pressed, press the start button to switch gear in the “OFF→ACC→ON→OFF…” sequence.

OFF: switch indicator light is off and the start switch is off.

ACC: switch indicator light is orange and the cigarette lighter and other accessory circuits are switched on.

ON: switch indicator light is orange, instrument light is on and all electrical equipment circuits are switched on.

Hint

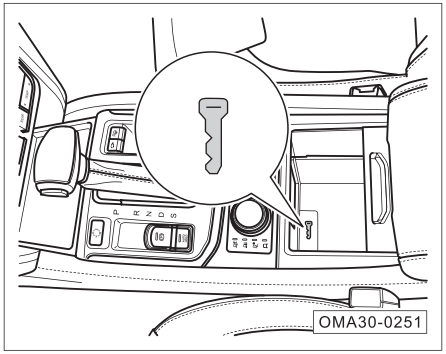
- When the transmission shift lever is in other gears other than the “P” gear and the brake pedal is not pressed, press the start button to switch from “OFF” to “ACC” gear. If you continue pressing, it will switch gear in the“ACC➞ ON➞ ACC …” sequence and will not return to the previous “OFF” gear.
- Under normal conditions, you can only switch sequentially in cycle, i.e. switching from “ACC” gear to “ON” gear. But when the transmission gearshift lever is in "P" position and the start switch is in the “ACC” gear for one hour without change, it will enter the power-saving mode and automatically return to the “OFF” gear.

When the automatic transmission shift lever is in any gear and the brake pedal is pressed, the start switch indicator light turns green.

When the automatic transmission shift lever is in the “P” or “N” gear position and the brake pedal is pressed, the start switch indicator light turns green, then press the start switch to switch to the “START” gear

START: switch indicator light is green and the engine is started. After the engine starts, release the start switch and brake pedal, then the start switch will automatically switch to the “ON” gear.

Limphome Mode



In case the engine cannot be started due to power shortage of smart remote key, place the remote key on the marked key position on the bottom of armrest box horizontally, press the start switch to switch to “ACC” or “ON” position, and then tread on the brake pedal, the indicator light of start switch will turn green; press the start switch again to start the engine.

Hint

- In case of smart key electricity shortage, if you press the start switch, the combination instrument display will indicate “no key detected”.
- This start method is a temporary emergency start; please replace the smart remote key batteries as soon as possible.

3.1.2 Starting the Engine

– Carry smart remote key into the vehicle.
– Floor the brake pedal and maintain at this position to guarantee that the indicator light of start switch is green.
– Put the shift lever in the “P” or “N” gear position.
– Press the start switch to start the engine.

Hint

- In case of cold engine start, conduct idle running for preheating before driving. Also, because the valve lifter needs a few seconds to reach the normal operating pressure, it may produce operation noises, which is a normal phenomenon and there is no need to worry.

Note

- After the successful engine start, immediately release the start switch.
- Engine start time shall not exceed 10 seconds. If engine start fails, try again after about 30 seconds.
- It is prohibited to make the engine operate with a high speed after start or step on the accelerator pedal urgently to make engine overload. Otherwise, the engine can be easily damaged.
- If the battery is too low to start the engine, you can try the emergency engine start through jumper cables (Please refer to page 419).
- It is preferably not to adopt pushing or towing methods to start the engine.

Warning

- The engine shall not be started for a long time in poorly ventilated or enclosed indoor premises. Because the engine exhausts contain harmful gases which will cause coma or even death by suffocation.
- When the engine is running, do not leave the vehicle alone without supervision.
- Do not start the engine with any auxiliary starting device. Doing so can cause explosion or make the engine run at high speed, resulting in personal injury or death.

3.1.3 Shutting Down the Engine

– Apply the EPB when totally stop the car.
– Tread the brake pedal, and set the shift lever at “P” gear.
– Release the brake pedal, and press the start switch to turn off the engine.

Hint

After the engine is stopped, the radiation fan may continue running for some time.

Note

- During vehicle driving, if it needs to stop the engine under emergency circumstances, long press the start switch or continuously press the start switch for three times, then the start switch will return from the “ON” gear to the “ACC” gear to stop the engine and achieve urgent flameout. The engine can be restarted after a few seconds of emergency flameout.
- During vehicle driving, in case of automatic engine flameout or emergency flameout, put the transmission shift lever in the “N” gear and press the start button again to re-start the engine.
- If brake signal faults occur during engine start, firstly press the start switch to the “ACC” gear and then long press the start switch to start the engine. During start, the transmission gearshift lever must be in the “P” gear or “N” gear.

Warning

- When the engine stops, the brake booster does not work, a greater force shall be applied on the brake pedal when braking to stop the vehicle; the steering mechanism does not work and a greater force shall be used to turn the steering wheel when steering.
- When driving, the start switch shall not be turned off under non-emergency situations. Otherwise, the airbag will not work.

Precautions for Parking

When parking, put the shift lever in the “P” gear and pay attention to the following matters:

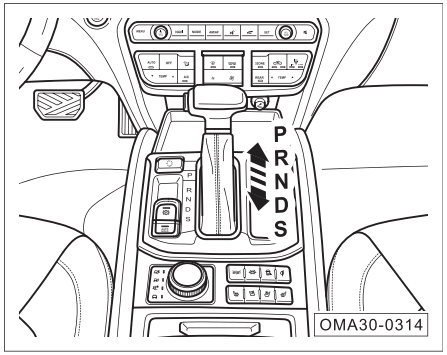
- Pay attention to the vehicle parking direction and do not make the exhausts discharged to the plant to damage the green belt.
- Park on straight roads and avoid parking on steep roads as far as possible.
- When parking, no matter the vehicle faces the top or base of the slope, the front wheel shall face curb.
- EPB shall be applied to the car.
- Confirm the sunroof, windows, doors and hatchback door are closed or locked.
- Turn off all lights and other electrical equipments, check the indicator lights on the instrument cluster and ensure the anti-theft system has been activated.
- When leaving the vehicle, be sure to carry valuables and the key, stop the engine and lock doors.

⚠ Warning

- Even if temporarily leaving the vehicle, be sure to stop the engine, apply electronic parking brake and carry the vehicle key. Otherwise, people left in the vehicle may mistakenly start the engine or electrical equipments which may cause serious injury or death.
- After the driver parking and leaving the vehicle, no people especially children shall be left in the vehicle, otherwise closed vehicle may easily cause suffocation, coma or even death.
- Do not park the vehicle near flammables or explosives.

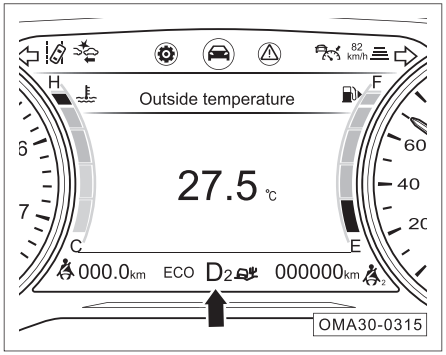
3.1.4 Gear and Driving Descriptions

Description of Gear Positions



Move the shift lever from front to back to select the “P→R→N→D→S” gear. After putting in the gear, the corresponding gear light on the gear shift panel will light up and the instrument cluster will display the corresponding gear.

Shift Lever Gear Display



Based on the received signal, the lower of the instrument cluster display will show the “P, R, N, D, D1 ~ D6, S” gears.

“P” gear (parking gear):

The "P" gear is engaged after the vehicle completely stops.

– Press the unlocking button on the front end of the shift lever to put the shift lever in the “P” gear.
– When exiting the “P” gear, in addition to pressing the unlocking button on the front end of handle, you also need to press the brake pedal.

Hint

- Put the “P” gear only when the vehicle is completely static.
- Before switching from the “P” gear to other gears, it must be ensured that the engine has been started and the brake pedal has been completely pressed.

“R” gear (reverse gear):

Engage R (Reverse) if you need to reverse your vehicle.

– Press the brake pedal to completely stop the vehicle
– Press the unlocking button on the front end of the shift lever to put the shift lever in the “R” gear. At the time, the reversing light will automatically light up and the reversing assist system (if any) will automatically start (Please refer to page 323).

Note

Before engaging the “R” gear, be sure that the car has been stopped completely, and the engine speed shall not be too high, otherwise the transmission may damage, or even accident may occur.

“N” gear (neutral gear):

Switch the shift lever from the “R” or “D” gear to the “N” gear directly.

Note

Before exiting the shift lever from the “N” gear, please press the brake pedal and do not step on the accelerator pedal.

Warning

When driving the vehicle, do not glide in the "N" gear which will easily lead to driving dangers.

“D” gear (driving gear):

This gear is usually put while driving forward.

– Switch the shift lever from the “N” or “S” gear to the “D” gear directly. In this gear, the system will automatically upshift or downshift according to the engine load and vehicle speed.

“S” gear (sport gear):

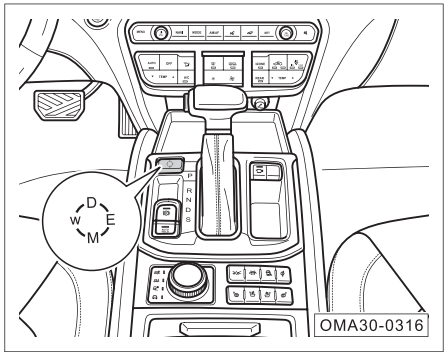
Press the unlocking button on the front end of the shift lever to put the shift lever in the “S” gear.

When putting the shift lever in the “S” gear, the transmission will start the sport mode which will change into a lower gear based on resistance change (such as traction, climbing on a long slope, etc.) while keeping the engine operating with a higher speed to provide a larger vehicle power. The “S” gear is mainly used for driving in pursuit of dynamics and driving in mountain road conditions to avoid frequent gear shifting.

Warning

During driving, do not suddenly switch the shift lever to the “R” or “P” gear. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged or even accidents may occur.

Driving Mode



Transmission gear has four driving modes. After switching the start switch to the “ON” gear, continuously press the driving mode button on the gear shift panel to switch in the “D→E →M→W→D …” mode sequence.

“D” mode:

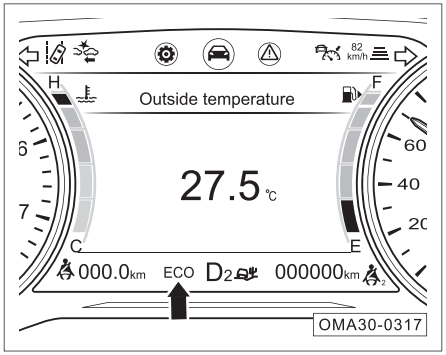
Generally, the default transmission gear is in the “D” mode, i.e. the normal “D” gear driving mode (Please refer to page 263).

“E” mode:

“E” mode is the ECO economy mode. When the vehicle enters this driving mode, not only the transmission control unit uses fuel-efficient shift strategy, but also the air conditioning adopts the appropriate economy policy.

Hint

- ECO economy mode can be entered when the shift lever is in the “P, R, N, D” gear but it only works in the “D” gear.
- In the current ECO economy mode, if the shift lever enters the “S” gear sport mode, after leaving the “S” gear, it will return to the ECO economy mode.
- ECO economy mode has the power off memory function, i.e. when the engine is restarted after flameout, the transmission will remain in the ECO economy mode.



When the vehicle enters the ECO economy mode, the instrument cluster displays the energy level graph and the “ECO” indicator light is on.

Energy level graph is represented by the petal and one petal represents a level. There are a total of five levels. More petals represent a higher energy level.

Hint

After entering the ECO economy mode:

- When the vehicle speed is less than a certain value, the instrument cluster does not display the petal graph, but the “ECO” indicator light is on.
- When the vehicle speed is greater than a certain value, the instrument cluster displays the petal graph and the “ECO” indicator light is on.

“M” mode:

“M” mode is the manual gear driving mode. When transmission operates in this mode, the driver can press the “+/- ” on the side of shift lever to upshift / downshift according to road conditions and driving habits to improve driving pleasure. After entering the “M” mode, the instrument cluster will display the current actual gear (M1 to M6). No matter under driving or parking condition, you can manually shift gears.

Hint

- Gear shifting sheet is installed on the steering wheel of some vehicle models, while at “M” mode, the driver can also upshift/downshift through moving the gear shifting sheet on the steering wheel.

Hint

- The transmission will upshift or downshift only under the premise of ensuring the engine and transmission safety: when using the “M” gear to switch to M1~M4 gear, if the engine has reached the maximum speed the transmission can withstand, the transmission will automatically increase a gear; also, to prevent too low engine speed, the transmission will automatically lower a gear at a certain speed.
- When driving in the mountain or hilly areas and other road conditions, it is recommended to use the “M” mode. Fixing the transmission in a gear for operation can prevent frequent gear shifting of transmission.
- Once entering the “M” mode, unless you stop the engine, switch the shift lever to the “S” gear or exit through pressing the driving mode button, the transmission will remain in this mode all the time.

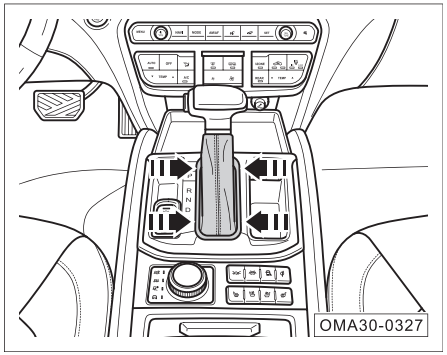
"W" mode:

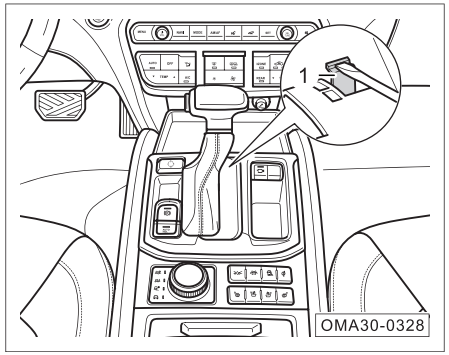
“W” mode is winter driving mode. Driving the car at winter mode can guarantee the car has more stable and softer torque output. At this mode, the transmission will automatically control the starting gear to avoid the vehicle slipping on road with ice and snow or other slippery roads, and help the driver to control the vehicle on snowfield more easily.

Hint

Winter mode will limit the PTO of the engine, so that it is suggested that winter mode will only be used when driving on road with ice and snow or other slippery roads; while on other roads, winter mode is not recommended, so as to avoid influencing the drivability and fuel economy.

Release the Shift Lever Locking



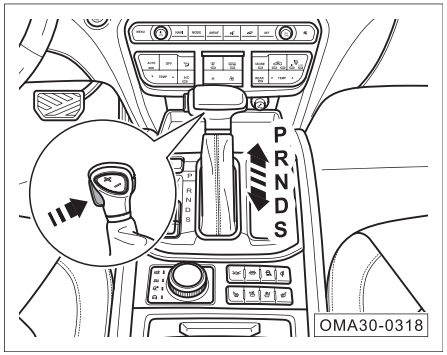


– Apply electronic parking brake (Please refer to page 269).
– Ensure the start switch has been turned off.
– Carefully lever the middle leather panel along the arrow direction.
– Use a screwdriver or other bar tools to push the shift unlocking switch (1), press the unlocking button on the front end of shift lever handle and switch the shift lever from the “P” gear to the “N” gear.
– Reinstall the middle leather panel.
– Press the brake pedal, start the engine and check whether the shift lever restores the normal engagement operation.

Note

If the shift lever is locked and cannot exit the “P” gear normally, you can use this method to release. However, if failure occurs which indicates possible vehicle problems, you shall go to our vehicle sales and service shop for inspection as soon as possible.

Driving Instruction



– Completely press the brake pedal to start the engine (Please refer to page 259).
– Press the unlocking button on the front side of shift lever handle to put shift lever in the gear.
– Release the brake pedal.
– Release the electronic parking brake (Please refer to page 270) and slowly press the accelerator pedal to start the vehicle.
– Press the brake pedal to completely stop the vehicle (Please refer to page 261)
– Apply electronic parking brake (Please refer to page 269), put the shift lever in the “P” gear, and release the brake pedal.
– Press the start switch and stop the engine (Please refer to page 260).

Note

- To ensure safety, make sure the shift lever is in the “P” or “N” gear before starting engine and not start the engine in other gears.
- The idle speed of cold engine is very high, so please be careful when putting in the gear before the engine preheating.
- Please do not step on the accelerator pedal urgently when the vehicle is stationary, which may result in unexpected vehicle movement.
- After stopping the engine, if the shift lever is not in the “P” gear, the system will provide a warning beep.

3.1.5 Electronic Parking Brake System (EPB)

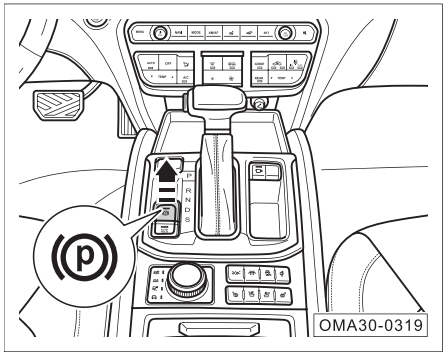
The vehicle is configured with the latest generation of motor integrated caliper EPB. The driver can achieve the vehicle parking and release function through the parking switch operation. In ramp road conditions, the assistant starting function can be used. In the parking case, after pressing the accelerator pedal, the electronic parking will be automatically released to provide the driver with a convenient driving assistance.

Note

Electronic parking brake system will adopt a fixed parking force based on the slope. If there is decreased braking efficiency:

- If the vehicle slides downward after parking on slopes, the electronic parking brake will automatically increase the braking force. If this phenomenon occurs frequently, please go to GAC dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.
- If the vehicle continues sliding downward after the automatic increases of braking force, please press the brake pedal and stop the vehicle on flat roads, and contact our vehicle sales and service shop for maintenance as soon as possible.

Apply Static Parking Brake



– Pull up the electronic parking switch button along the arrow direction to apply the parking brake until the instrument indicator light (P) is on which indicating that the parking brake has been applied to prevent sliding.

– When the vehicle is in a static state or even the start switch is “OFF” gear, the parking brake can be applied. Ensure the parking brake is applied when leaving the vehicle or parking.

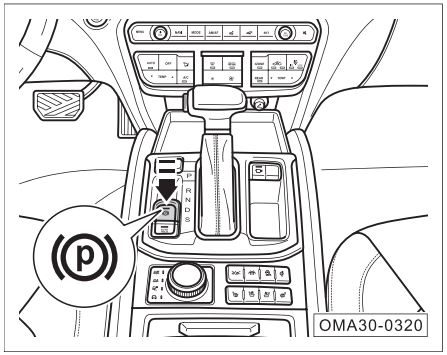
Hint

- After the vehicle is completely stopped, firstly apply the electronic parking brake and then put the shift lever in the “P” gear.
- When applying electronic parking brake, it may produce operation noises, which is a normal phenomenon.
- In case of trailers or parking on a large ramp, pull the electronic parking brake switch again after the first parking is completed to ensure the maximum parking force.
- On ramp with a slope of 17%~26%, EPB will clamp again 5 minutes after the first application of force, at the moment, noise will occur, which belongs to normal phenomenon; on road with a slope of 27%~30%, EPB will clamp again 5 minutes after the first application of force, at the moment, noise will occur, which belongs to normal phenomenon.

Note

- The parking brake must be applied when parking.
- When driving vehicle, electronic parking brake shall not be used to reduce the speed in non-essential states, because the parking brake only applies braking force on rear wheels which may easily cause accidents.

Apply Static Parking Brake



– When the start switch is in the “ON” position, press the brake pedal.

– Press the EPB switch button along the arrow direction to release the parking brake until the instrument indicator light (Ⓟ) is off which indicates that the parking brake has been released.

Hint

- If you do not step on the brake pedal and press the electronic parking brake switch, the electronic parking will not be released. The buzzer will alarm and the instrument cluster display will prompt "Please press the brake pedal to release the electronic parking".
- The releasing of electronic parking brake may produce operation noises, which is a normal phenomenon.
- When the vehicle battery has no power, the system cannot release the electronic parking brake. If conditions permitted, conduct the engine emergency start through jumper cables (Please refer to page 419), and then release the parking brake or contact our vehicle sales and service shop for processing.
- If the electronic parking brake is not used for a long time, the system will automatically detect and the operating noise can be heard.

Automatic Driving Release

After doors are closed and the driver has fastened the safety belt, the electronic parking brake will be automatically released when pressing the accelerator pedal.

Note

- When the vehicle is in a parked state, be sure not to press the accelerator pedal quickly, otherwise the electronic parking brake life shortening will be accelerated.
- The use of automatic release function will shorten the electronic parking brake life, so it is recommended to use it only for starting on ramps.

Warning

When the staff is operating in the front/rear of or under the vehicle, if the engine is in the running state and the transmission has put in the driving gear, even if the electronic parking brake has been applied, the accelerator pedal shall not be pressed. Otherwise, the vehicle will move and cause damages or casualties.

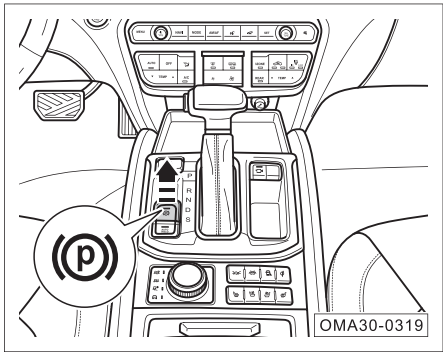
Uphill Start Assist

When the vehicle has been parked on the ramp, fasten the safety belt, start the engine and put the vehicle in gear and step on the accelerator pedal for uphill start assist and avoiding sliding. The electronic parking brake will be automatically released after the smooth starting.

Note

If the safety belt is not fastened, the vehicle cannot automatically release the parking brake.

Apply Dynamic Emergency Brake



– During vehicle driving, continually pull up the electronic parking switch button along the arrow direction to achieve dynamic emergency braking. If the accelerator pedal is treaded during the emergency braking process, the system will quit braking. If emergent braking is triggered by non-driver operation, please step on accelerator pedal repeatedly and heavily to exit from braking.

Hint

Switch the start switch in the “ON” gear and apply electronic parking brake, the corresponding indicator light(Ⓟ)(red) in instrument cluster will be on; after releasing the electronic parking brake, the indicator light (red) will go out. If the following phenomena occur, please perform and release the electronic parking brake again; if the failure phenomenon persists, please go to GAC dealer for maintenance.

- If the indicator light continuously flashes in red, it indicates that the electronic parking brake is in a partial engagement / release state or the system has fault.
- If the indicator light lights up in red when the electronic parking brake is not applied, the system is abnormal.
- If the indicator light lights up in yellow, it indicates that the electronic system failure is detected and the electronic parking level reduces.

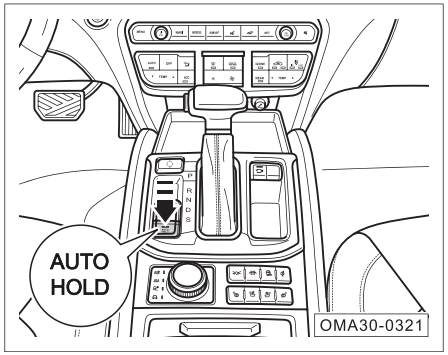
Note

- Do not use dynamic emergency braking under non-essential states, because the parking brake only applies braking force on rear wheels which easily leads to accidents. And the braking distance is longer than that when using the brake pedal and it will shorten the parking brake system life.
- During vehicle driving, when pulling up the electronic parking brake switch, the buzzer will alarm and the instrument cluster display will prompt “Release electronic parking brake switch”.
- During vehicle deceleration, release the electronic parking switch or press the accelerator pedal to restore the parking brake release state. If you continue pulling up the electronic parking brake switch to stop the vehicle, the parking brake will remain the engaged state.

Autohold

Autohold will automatically keep the vehicle stationary according to the driver's braking needs; automatically release the braking when the system detects the driver's intention to start (e.g. pressing the accelerator pedal); ensure the vehicle starting convenience when automatically releasing according to ramp information; automatically increase the pressure to keep the vehicle stationary when the braking force is insufficient.

Turn On and Turn Off



– When the engine is running and the driver's safety belt is fastened, press the automatic parking switch button AUTO HOLD to turn on the function and the automatic parking switch button indicator light is on. Press again to release the automatic parking function and the indicator light goes out.

Activation

When the function is turned on, it supports to automatically hold and release brake in the moving or stopping condition. When the driver stops the vehicle, stop the vehicle by yourself to avoid sliding at the time of starting driving.

Exit

In the following conditions, automatic parking will exit and parking brake will not be locked:

1. Step on accelerator pedal when starting to drive.
2. The engine stops during the process of driving.
3. Release electronic parking manually.
4. Press automatic parking switch when stepping on the brake.

In order to ensure safety, automatic parking function activated in the following conditions shall be closed and parking brake is locked:

1. Engine is stopped.
2. Open driver door or seat belt in stopping state.
3. Press the switch to cancel automatic parking.

Note

When the vehicle is transferred on the conveyor belt, such as vehicle cleaning device, it is necessary to close automatic parking function. Otherwise, the vehicle cannot be moved or deviates from running track.

Electronic Parking Brake Adaptive Learning

In some cases (e.g. the accumulator suffers power failure suddenly, or the vehicle has not been used for a long time), the red indicator light of EPB will flicker, and manually pulling the EPB switch will cause EPB unable to work. At the moment, the driver shall tread the brake pedal and press EPB switch to make EPB execute self-learning, so as to make EPB work normally.

3.2 Service Electronic Brake System

3.2.1 Anti-lock Braking System (ABS)

Anti-lock braking system (ABS) is an important part of the automotive active safety system.

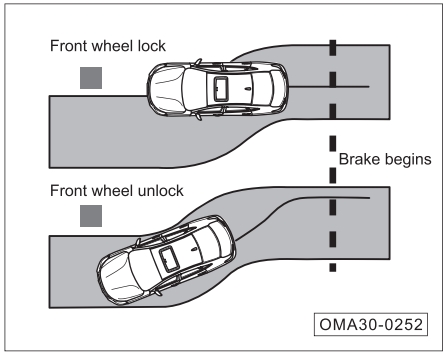
When the anti-lock braking system (ABS) works, the friction between wheels and the road belongs to the rolling friction, which would take advantage of the maximum adhesion between wheels and the road for braking to improve the braking deceleration, shorten the braking distance, and ensure the vehicle's directional stability during braking.

The ABS operation is equivalent to the snub with a high frequency. In emergency situations, after pressing the brake pedal, the driver feels the brake pedal vibration accompanied with the "da da" sound generated by the brake master cylinder operation. In this case, the ABS is in the normal working condition. Since the brake master cylinder adjusts the brake pressure constantly, a force will be fed back to the brake pedal continuously. Therefore, in this case, be sure to press the brake pedal down all the way. Do not press the brake pedal repeatedly.

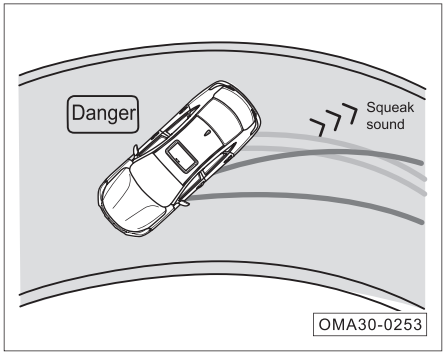
As ABS is safety assistant system, their functions are very limit. For example, when making a brake on sand and stone road or snowy road, it may have a longer braking distance compared with braking on concrete road or dry road. Do not think that the braking performance of ABS can achieve the desired state in any case. So, do not depend on the system excessively. Only safe driving is the most important.

In the following cases, when pressing the brake pedal slightly, ABS will be activated and you may feel the vibration, which is a normal phenomenon:

- When shifting.
- When taking emergent braking.
- When turning at high speed.
- When driving on wet road.
- When driving on projected or pit road.
- When starting immediately after the vehicle starts.



If front wheels are locked, the vehicle will lose the turning ability and can only slide forward along the braking direction.



If rear wheels are locked, the drift phenomenon may easily occur which can up to 180 ° in severe situations.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator Light

After switching the start switch to the “ON” gear, ABS indicator light (ABS) is on for about a few seconds and the warning light goes out after the completion of system self-inspection (Please refer to page 60).

One of the following conditions indicates a fault develops in the system:

- Start switch is switched to "ON" position, but the indicator light does not illuminate.
- Start switch is switched to "ON" position, but the indicator light stays illuminated.
- When the vehicle is running, the indicator light will be illuminated.

In case the above circumstances occur, the car braking is normal, but ABS may not work, go to the 4S Shop of the Company for maintenance.

If the ABS indicator light and brake system indicator light are on at the same time and the parking brake is fully released, it indicates that the brake system failure occurs, please go to GAC dealer for system maintenance as soon as possible.

Warning

Always adjust the vehicle speed according to the climate, road and traffic conditions. To avoid accidents, do not risk driving depending on the limited safety function provided by the system.

- The ABS cannot go beyond the kinematic law. Even if the vehicle is equipped with ABS, it is still dangerous when driving on slippery road. While driving, if the ABS is adjusting the brake pressure, immediately slow down to adapt to the road and traffic conditions.
- Improper operation or modification (such as modification of engine, braking system, traveling system or components of wheels and tires performance) may affect functions of ABS, EBD and ESP.
- Tires must adopt the specified size. If the tire size is incorrect or the sizes of all tires are inconsistent, ABS will not work effectively.

Warning

- If the ABS indicator light and the brake system indicator light come on together, immediately stop your vehicle in a safe place and check the brake fluid level in the reservoir.
- If the brake fluid level is normal, then the brake system failure may be caused by the abnormal ABS control function. When braking in this case, rear wheels may soon be locked which will cause drift and sideslip. Please go to GAC dealer for troubleshooting.

3.2.2 Electronic Brake-force Distribution (EBD)

Electronic braking-force distribution system (EBD) is a part of the anti-lock braking system (ABS) used for balancing the braking force distribution on front and rear wheels according to the vehicle load in conventional vehicle braking.

EBD applies a greater braking force on rear wheels through adjusting the slip ratio to obtain the shortest possible braking distance under the premise of ensuring the braking stability. Especially, the EBD improves the stability and operability when the vehicle braking on poor or slippery surfaces.

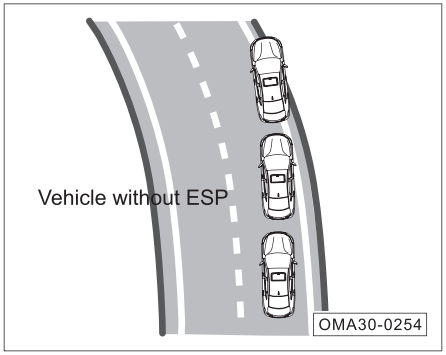
3.2.3 Vehicle Body Electronic Stability Program (ESP)

Vehicle body Electronic Stability Program (ESP) can effectively reduce the risk of vehicle sideslip.

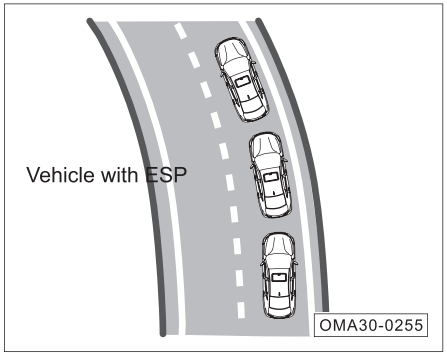
Operating Principle of ESP System

ESP determines the driver's driving intention according to steering wheel angle, vehicle speed and other information and compares with the actual vehicle driving condition continually. If the vehicle deviates from the normal driving route (for example, in case of vehicle sideslip), ESP will correct the route through applying braking force on the corresponding wheel.

ESP restores the stable driving state through the torsional force generated by braking. If the vehicle tends to oversteer (i.e., drift), the ESP will mainly apply the brake to the front wheel on the outer side of the curve. If the vehicle tends to understeer (i.e., excessive turning radius), the ESP will mainly apply the brake to the rear wheel inside of the curve.



Vehicle not equipped with ESP sideslips and deviates from the normal route during driving.



Vehicle equipped with ESP can correct the braking force according to the sideslip amount to prevent deviating from the route.

ESP indicator light is lit or flashing

- After switching the start switch to "ON" gear, the indicator light illuminates for 2 seconds and then flame out.
- If ESP works during driving, the indicator light will flash.
- After the ESP is turned off, the indicator light will be on.
- If there is something wrong with the ESP, the indicator light will be on.
- When ABS fault occurs, ESP indicator light and ABS indicator light , parking brake and brake system indicator lights will be on.

If the indicator light is on and does not go out after the engine is started, it indicates that the control system has temporarily turned off the ESP. In addition, relevant text information appears on the instrument cluster display to remind or warn the driver. In this case, turn off and then turn on the start switch again to turn on the ESP. If the indicator light goes out at this time, the system has fully entered the operation state. If the battery is disconnected, the indicator light may be lit when you turn start switch to the ON position, and then the indicator light should go out after traveling a short distance.

Warning

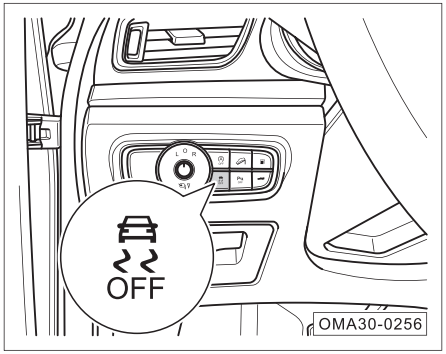
Always adjust the vehicle speed according to the climate, road and traffic conditions. To avoid accidents, do not risk driving depending on the limited safety function provided by the system.

- Remember that the ESP cannot go beyond the physical limit of adhesion of the road. Be sure to drive on slippery surfaces or drive while towing a trailer with extra care.
- Be sure to adjust the driving style at any time according to the road and traffic conditions.
- The ESP cannot reduce the risk of accidents caused by high speed, short distance from the front vehicle and other improper driving style.
- Improper operation or modification (such as modification of engine, braking system, traveling system or components of wheels and tires performance) may affect functions of ABS, EBD and ESP.

ESP only works when the engine is running. Under special circumstances, ESP function can be released. For example:

- When vehicle is running with tire chain.
- When driving on deep snowy or spongy road surfaces.
- When the vehicle is caught in muddy road and requires forward and backward movement.
- In the absence of the above conditions, for the sake of safety, turn on the ESP.

Turn On and Turn Off ESP



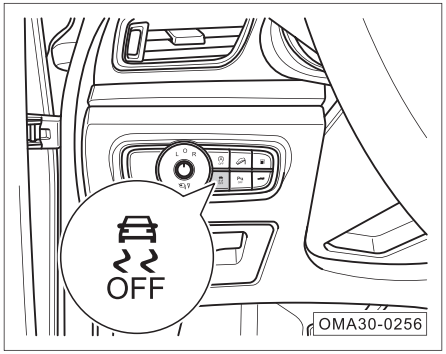
Under normal circumstances, the ESP system is turned on when the vehicle is running by default.

Long press ESP system turn-off button (more than 3 seconds and less than 10 seconds) to close the ESP system, then indicator light on the instrument cluster is on and the instrument cluster display shows the corresponding note icons.

3.2.4 Traction Control System (TCS)

Traction Control System (TCS) is a subsystem of ESP. TCS determines whether the drive wheel is slipping based on the speed of the drive wheel and that of the driven wheel. When the former exceeds the latter, TCS will control the speed of the drive wheel to control the vehicle slipping.

Turn On and Turn Off TCS



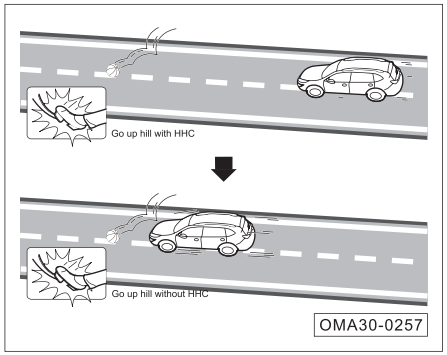
Under normal circumstances, the TCS system is turned on when the vehicle is running by default. TCS system will also be turned off/on when manually turning off/on the ESP system.

Long press ESP system turn-off button (more than 3 seconds and less than 10 seconds) to close the ESP and TCS system, then OFF indicator light on the instrument cluster is on and the instrument cluster display shows the corresponding note icons.

Hint

- When the vehicle speed is greater than 80 km/h, the system will automatically turn on the ESP/TCS function.
- If the ESP/TCS function is turned off and the vehicle speed is less than 80 km/h, press button to turn on again.
- If you press the button for more than 10 seconds, the system will consider it as an erroneous operation and the system working state will not be affected.

3.2.5 Hydraulic Brake Assist (HBA)



The hydraulic brake assist (HBA) system helps get a shorter braking distance in an emergency using the pressure produced quickly in the brake system. It takes full advantage of the properties of ABS. After the brake pedal is released, the HBA system will automatically shut down, and the brake system will return back to normal working conditions.

Most of the drivers can press the brake pedal timely in dangerous situations, but cannot press it with sufficient force in a short time, thus the brake system cannot provide the maximum braking force, resulting in increased braking distance and risk of accidents.

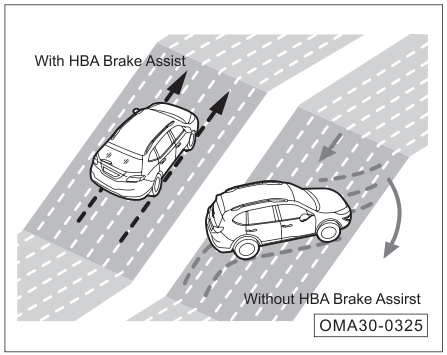
For vehicles using HBA system, when quickly treading the brake pedal and maintaining, a brake pressure larger than that of normal brake will generate, which gives full play to the critical value of ABS, and allows the braking system to generate the pressure required for the maximum deceleration of the vehicle within the shortest time, thus realizing minimum braking distance.

⚠ Warning

The HBA system improves driving safety, but cannot go beyond the kinematic law. Always adjust your driving speed according to the road conditions and traffic conditions.

3.2.6 Hill Hold Control System (HHC)

HHC system allows the driver to easily move the feet from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal when starting on slopes without using the parking brake to prevent accidents.



HHC Starting Conditions

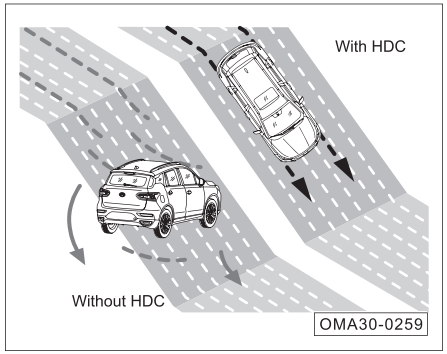
- When the ramp slope is greater than 4%, the shift lever is not in the “P” or “N” gear, electronic parking brake is not applied and the driver presses the brake pedal to stop the vehicle and keeps it in a static state, if the driver releases the brake pedal, the HHC function will be started to apply brake to the vehicle for 1 second.
- Under HHC working condition, when the engine torque exceeds the resistance torque of the vehicle, the brake pressure will be released to finish starting smoothly.
- When putting in the “R” gear downhill, HHC function will also work.

Hint

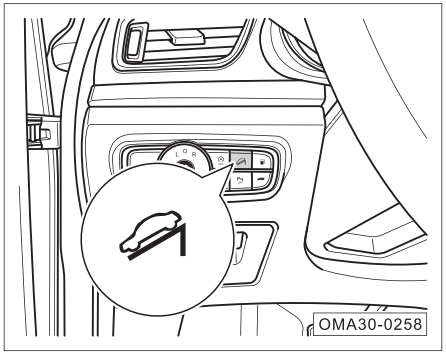
- The HHC can apply the brake automatically when starting on a steep uphill or shifting into reverse when going downhill, to prevent slipping.
- HHC is integrated on ESP system. If the HHC fails, the ESP indicator light is lit and the instrument cluster display gives prompts accordingly.

3.2.7 Downhill Assist Control System (HDC)

Downhill Assist Control System (HDC) is an additional function of ESP system related to driving comfort. During the downhill process, even if the driver does not tread the brake pedal, HDC will actively apply braking force through ESP to reach the goal of decelerated downhill.



Turn on and off Downhill Assist Control System



– When the speed is less than 35km/h, press the button to activate HDC function, the indicator light on the instrument will turn on.

– Pressing the button again will turn off HDC function, the indicator light on the instrument will be off.

– The indicator light flickers when downhill assist control system is working and the brake light of rear combination light will be on simultaneously.

After activating the HDC function, the vehicle will travel at the minimum speed of 8km/h when traveling downhill, and will maintain this speed constant.

In addition, the driver can tread the accelerator pedal or brake pedal to adjust the speed, if the speed when the driver releasing the pedal is 8km/h ~ 35km/h, HDC function will be triggered again, and the current speed will maintain constant during the downhill traveling.

- HDC will be off automatically when the speed exceeds 60km/h.
- When HDC is enabled, if the wheel over-slips, ESP will automatically intervene.

Hint

When HDC fails, this function will be off, the combination instrument display screen will display “Please Inspect HDC”, and an audible alarm of about 5s will appear. At the moment, HDC system will not work normally, the driver shall not forcibly use this system to drive down an abrupt slope, instead he shall tread the brake pedal to decelerate, and go to the the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible for detection.

In certain special environments, HDC system will become a thermal protection system due to too high braking temperature. For example, if the ambient temperature is relatively high and the system has been used for a long time, the temperature of braking system will increase constantly due to friction, when reaching the limit value, HDC function will enter thermal protection mode; this function will be activated but will not work, HDC function will be invalid temporarily, and the vehicle will show acceleration indication; after the temperature of braking system decreasing to the effective operating temperature, HDC will work again.

3.3 Driving Assistance System

3.3.1 Smart Start/Stop System (Apply to Certain Models)

The smart Start/Stop system is called the Start/Stop system, which can help save fuel and reduce emissions.

After enabling the start-stop system, the engine will automatically stop when the traveling vehicle stops. The start switch will maintain On state when the engine is off, when needed, the engine will automatically start again.

When entering the Start/Stop shutdown, in order to reduce power consumption, air conditioning will automatically reduce the blower speed to the third gear (if opened) and seat heating ventilation will set the heating gear to the first gear with the lowest power consumption (if opened).

Basic Service Conditions of Start-Stop System

Before using the Start/Stop system, check the following conditions. Only if such conditions are met, the start-stop system can operate properly.

- Make sure the engine hood is closed
- Make sure the driver's door is closed
- Engine water temperature exceeds 54 ℃, i.e. the engine operates normally for a period of time after starting.
- Vehicle speed has exceeded 8 km/h since the last stop.
- Other conditions.

Note

- If you replace the battery, please select battery complying with the specified type (Please refer to page 400), otherwise it will affect the normal operation of Start-Stop system. Please go to our vehicle sales and service shop for replacement.
- If the vehicle speed remains below 8 km/h, the Start-Stop system will not turn off the engine.

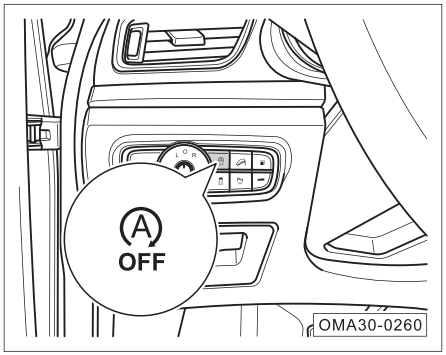
Warning

- Do not turn off the engine to let your vehicle coast. You could lose control of the vehicle. This may cause accidents and serious injuries.
- The brake booster and steering assist system do not work when the engine is turned off. You have to apply the brake and turn the steering wheel hard.
- To avoid injury, make sure the Start-Stop system is turned off before opening the engine compartment for inspection or operation.

Note

- When wading, always turn off the Start-Stop system.
- If the vehicle is stopped and the Start/Stop system stops the engine, the start switch will remain in the turn-on state. Be sure that the start switch is turned off before leaving the vehicle.

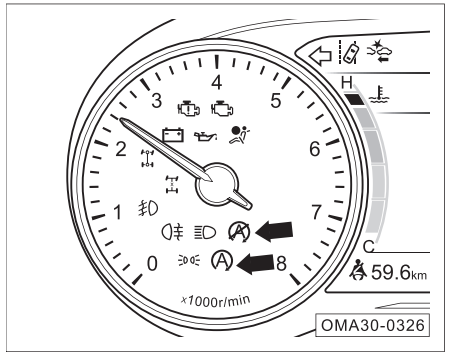
Turning on/off the Start-Stop System



Start/Stop system has the power off memory function and the switch status after starting the engine will be same with that before the last flameout. If in the start state, the corresponding Start/Stop system indicator light Ⓐ on the instrument cluster is on.

Press the Start/Stop system turn-off button Ⓐ OFF to turn off the Start/Stop system and the Start/Stop system indicator light Ⓐ on the instrument cluster will go out.

Start/Stop System Working Process



– When the vehicle speed has exceeded 8 km/h since the last stop, put the vehicle brake to a stationary state and step on the brake, then the Start/Stop systemwill automatically shut down and the indicator light Ⓐ on the instrument cluster will be on.

– In the engine shuts down and the start switch is on, if you release the brake pedal, the engine will automatically start again, Ⓐ indicator light on the instrument cluster will be off and Ⓐ indicator light will be on.

In the following cases, the start-stop system will automatically start the engine:

- If the shift lever is in the “D” gear, release the brake pedal to trigger the start.
- If the shift lever is in the “D” gear, move to the “S” gear while pressing the brake pedal to trigger the start.
- If the shift lever is in the “N” gear, the release of brake pedal will not trigger the start and it needs to press the brake pedal again to trigger the start.
- If the shift lever is in the “N” gear, release the brake pedal and move to the “R” or “D” gear to trigger the start.
- In the automatic shutdown state, the start will be triggered when the turning of steering wheel exceeds a certain angle.
- In the automatic shutdown state, press the start-stop switch button to trigger the start.
- When the driving mode is “D” or “E”, the engine will start when changing to “M” mode.

Hint

- If you want to switch to the “D”, “S” or “N” gear after putting in the reverse gear, you must firstly drive at 15 km/h to enable the system turn off the engine again.

Conditions of inoperative Start-Stop system

Under the following circumstances, the Start/Stop system will not work:

- The engine has not reached the minimum temperature to turn on the start-stop system.
- Insufficient brake booster vacuum.
- It has not yet reached the internal temperature set by the air conditioning.
- The external temperature is too high or too low.
- Front windshields are being defrosted.
- Battery power is too low.
- Altitude is too high.
- Steering wheel has a substantial deflection or is turning.
- The shift lever is in the “R” gear.
- Driving on roads with very steep slope.
- Start/Stop switch is turned off.
- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) function is enabled.
- Autohold function is enabled.
- The automatic parking function is on (apply to certain models)
- All Terrain Response System receives mode switching request (apply to certain models)
- Other conditions.

Engine is Started Automatically Again.

In the engine shutdown stage, the following circumstances will disrupt the conventional start-stop function of start-stop system and the engine can be started again without the driver's operation:

- Roll back on a slope, for example.
- Internal temperature deviates from the set value of the air conditioning.
- Front windshields are in the deforest state.
- Insufficient brake booster vacuum.
- Battery power is too low.

Automatic Start Failure Description

After automatic start fails, the instrument cluster will display the prompt of "start-stop system is turned off, please manually start the engine" and the driver needs to press the start button again to start the engine:

- There is a fault in the Start/Stop system when the engine idling or shut down.
- Automatic start fails for more than three times in the engine idle shutdown state.
- The engine hood is opened in the engine idle shutdown state: Do not start automatically and press the Start switch to restart the engine even if the engine hood is closed.
- The doors are opened in the engine idle shutdown state: Do not start automatically and press the Start switch to restart the engine even if the doors are closed.

Self-Learning after Battery Power-Off

In case of battery power-off operation or replacement, Start/Stop system self-learning operation shall be conducted according to the following steps after power restoration:

1. Turn off the start switch and all electrical equipments on the vehicle and keep the stationary state for at least 4 hours.
2. Start the engine for 3 times and the engine operates continually for at least 1 minute after each start.

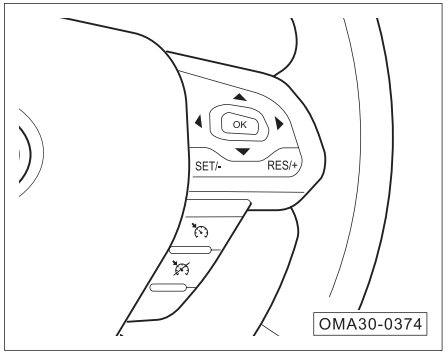
3.3.2 Cruise Control System (apply to certain models)

Cruise Control System can be set when the vehicle speed is 40 km/h and above. Once the storage speed is set, the driver can move the feet away from the accelerator pedal and the vehicle will run at the preset speed.

⚠ Warning

- To avoid accidents, the cruise control system is not recommended for conditions such as traffic-intensive sections, hills, winding roads, or slippery roads.
- The set speed and the vehicle-to-vehicle distance must be adapted to the current traffic conditions. The cruise control system is only a parking assist system. Use the cruise control with extra care.
- Be sure to deactivate the cruise control system after using it.

Operation Button



SET/-:Set constant speed cruise control/ deceleration

RES/+:Restore constant speed cruise control/ acceleration

:Start/close constant speed cruise control

:Cancel constant speed cruise control

Start Constant Speed Cruise Control

– Short press button, the white instrument cluster indicator light will be on.
– Increase the speed to the cruising speed (40 km/h and above).
– Short press SET/- button, then the corresponding white indicator light in instrument cluster will turn green.
– The vehicle enters the constant speed cruise control state, and release the accelerator pedal.

Hint

When the transmission is in the “P”, “N” or “R” gear, cruise control state cannot be entered.

Exit Cruise Control

Cruise control can be exited through the following actions and the corresponding instrument cluster indicator light will go out:

- Depress the brake pedal.
- Put the transmission in the “N” gear.
- Short press button.
- Short press button (exit cruise control and clear the set cruise control speed value).
- Operating the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) switch.
- When ESP system starts.

When exiting cruise control in the following modes, it can be restored through pressing RES/+ button:

- Step on the brake pedal.
- Put the transmission in the “N” gear.
- Short press button.

Restore Constant Speed Cruise Control

When correspondent cruise control indicator light in instrument cluster is white, cruise control can be reset through the following operations:

- When the vehicle speed is higher than 40 km/h, short press RES/+ button, then cruise control indicator light in instrument cluster will be green and the vehicle speed will be restored to the last cruise control set speed memory value and maintained.

When exiting constant speed cruise control in the following modes, it cannot be restored through pressing RES/+ button:

- Short press button to close cruise control.
- The shift lever is put in the “P” gear.

Increase the Cruising Speed

To increase the speed, perform the following:

– To speed up through pressing the accelerator pedal.
– Short press RES/+ button to increase the speed of 2km/h each time.
– Long press RES/+ button to increase the speed continually.

Release the accelerator pedal or the RES/+ button, i.e. start cruise at a higher set speed.

Hint

The maximum cruise speed can be set is 145 km/h. When the vehicle speed is higher than it, the cruise control will be automatically exited.

Decrease the Cruising Speed

To decrease the speed, perform the following:

Short press SET/- button to reduce the vehicle speed of 2km/h each time.

Long press SET/- button to reduce the speed continuously.

Release SET/- button, the vehicle will remain at a relatively low speed.

Hint

When the vehicle speed is below 35 km/h, cruise control will be automatically exited.

3.3.3 Adaptive cruise control system (apply to certain models)

Self-adaptive cruise control system, ACC for short, can automatically adjust the distance with the front vehicle during constant speed cruise; the speed range applicable to cruise is: 0~150km/h.

ACC will detect the relative distance and speed between the front vehicle along the route and this vehicle through the radar installed in the front of the vehicle:

– When there is a vehicle in the front, if that vehicle stops, ACC will control this vehicle to stop automatically following the front vehicle; if the front vehicle starts, ACC will control this vehicle to start and travel automatically. After stopping for a certain time, simply operate the button or accelerator pedal to realize followed start and travel

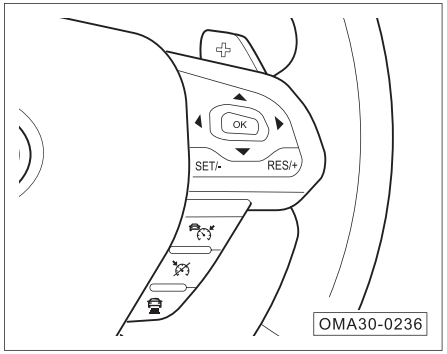
– When there is a vehicle in the front, this vehicle will follow the front vehicle while keeping a safe distance, the distance between two vehicles is adjusted by four gears.

– When there is no vehicle in the front, this vehicle will travel by a constant speed set by the driver.

⚠ Warning

- ACC system is not a safety system, obstacle detector or collision warning system, but a comfort system, the driver must keep control of the vehicle all the time and bear full responsibility for the vehicle.
- Be sure to adjust the speed and driving mode based on the current visibility, weather condition, road condition and traffic condition. You shall be always responsible for the vehicle speed and the distance with other vehicles.

Operation Button



SET/- :Set ACC/ deceleration

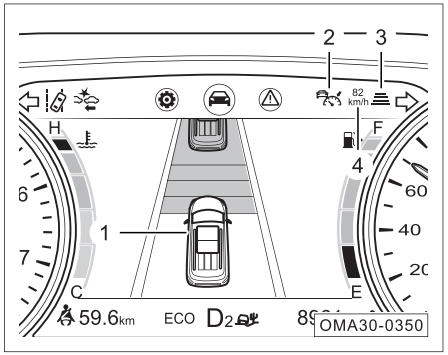
RES/+ :Restore ACC/ acceleration

:Start/close ACC

:Cancel ACC

:Adjust ACC vehicle distance

Interface Description



1. Indicate the vehicle displayed on LCD
2. Adaptive cruise indicator light
   – White means that ACC is being prepared, and there is a target vehicle in the front; green means that ACC is working, and there is a target vehicle in the front.
   – White means that ACC is being prepared, and there is no target vehicle in the front; green means that ACC is working, and there is no target vehicle in the front.
   – Yellow means that ACC fails, timely go to the 4S Shop of the Company for maintenance.
3. Set cruising distance with front vehicles.
4. 82km/h is the saved cruise speed.

When ACC braking function is insufficient to maintain an appropriate distance between your vehicle and the front vehicle, it will issue a “driver takeover request”, the instrument cluster will have takeover graph and sound, then the driver shall step on the brake pedal to reduce speed according to system requirements.

Start ACC

– Short press button, the white instrument cluster indicator light will be on.
– Short press SET/- button, then the corresponding white indicator light in instrument cluster will turn green.
– Vehicle enters the ACC control state, release the accelerator pedal.

Hint

- When the transmission shift lever is in the “P”, “N” or “R” gear, it is unable to enter the ACC control.
- When starting ACC, white indicator light in the instrument cluster is on (green light means the ACC is working) and the instrument cluster display shows the stored ACC speed and status.

Exit ACC

ACC control can be exited through the following actions and the corresponding green indicator light in the instrument cluster turns white:

- Any of the four doors is opened.
- The driver’s side safety belt is loosened.
- Depress the brake pedal.
- Put the transmission in the “N” gear.
- Short press button.
- Short press button (the corresponding indicator light in the instrument cluster goes out, and then exist ACC and clear the set ACC speed value).
- Operating the Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) switch.
- When ESP system closes.

When exiting adaptive cruise in the following modes, it can be restored through pressing RES/+ button:

- Step on the brake pedal.
- Short press button.
- The transmission is in the “N” gear (put the transmission in the “D” or “S” gear).
- Operating Electronic Parking Brake (EPB) switch (EPB system shall be released).
- ESP system is turned off (ESP shall be turned on again).

Restore ACC

When cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster is white, adaptive cruise control function can be reset by the following actions:

- Short press RES/+ button, the corresponding cruise indicator light in the instrument cluster is green and the speed will be restored to the last set cruising speed memory value and the cruise control status will be entered. If the cruising speed is not stored, the system will set the current vehicle speed as the cruise speed (when the current speed is less than 30 km/h, the cruising speed will be set to 30 km/h).

When exiting adaptive cruise in the following modes, it cannot be restored through pressing RES/+ key button:

- Short press button to turn off cruise.
- Shift lever is in the “P” gear or “R” gear.

Increase the Cruising Speed

To increase the speed, perform the following:

– To speed up through pressing the accelerator pedal.

– Short press RES/+ button to increase the speed of 1km/h each time.

– Long press RES/+ button to increase the cruise speed of 5 km/h continually until the button is released.

Release the accelerator pedal or the RES/+ button, i.e. start cruise at a higher set speed.

Hint

The maximum cruise speed can be set is 150 km/h.

Decrease the Cruising Speed

To decrease the speed, perform the following:

– Short press SET/- button to reduce the vehicle speed of 1km/h each time.

– Long press SET/- button to decrease the cruise speed by 5 km/h continually until the button is released or the cruising speed is 30 km/h.

Release SET/- button, the vehicle will remain at a relatively low speed.

ACC Vehicle Distance Adjusting

After switching the start switch to the “ON” gear, the system defaults that the distance with the front vehicle is the fourth gear (the following distance of the fourth gear is the farthest).

Short press button to switch gear of distance with the front vehicle. Switch one gear when pressing each time. Switch in cycles following the sequence of “fourth gear→third gear→second gear→first gear→ fourth gear…”. At the same time, the instrument cluster display will show bar in the same number with gear.

Activate ACC after Following to Stop.

When following the front vehicle, if the front vehicle stops, the vehicle will also stop. Within a period of time of following to stop, ACC will take the initiative to pressurize through ESP to keep the vehicle stationary; after some time, ACC will maintain the vehicle stationary by starting EPB. When the front vehicle leaves, the ACC activation strategy is divided into the following three types:

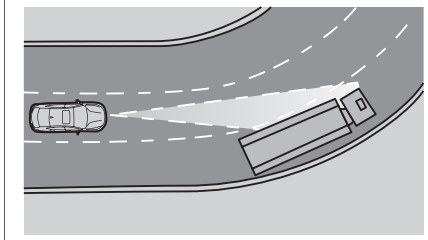
1. If indicator light is green, after the front vehicle leaves, ACC can automatically restore and re-drive the vehicle;
2. If indicator light turns white and EPB is not started, the driver can press the RES/+ button or step on the accelerator pedal, then ACC can automatically restore and re-drive the vehicle;
3. If indicator light turns white and EPB is started, the driver can firstly step on the accelerator pedal and press the RES/+ button after EPB is automatically released, then ACC can automatically restore and re-drive the vehicle.

Special Driving Environment

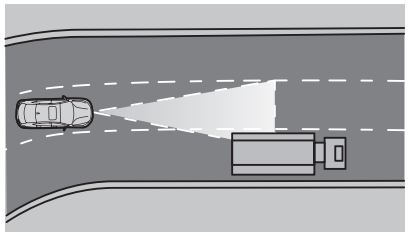
ACC is restricted by physical laws and has some system limitations. Under some driving environments, the driver may feel the ACC reaction lag or unable to control the vehicle as expected, so the driver must be ready to control the vehicle at any time.

In the following driving conditions, the radar system sensor function may be affected. Under the following circumstances, the driver shall be specially vigilant:

1. Slow down and stop. If the front vehicle has a brake stop, then ACC reduces the speed until alarming to exit, the driver can intervene the braking actively to completely stop the vehicle as needed.

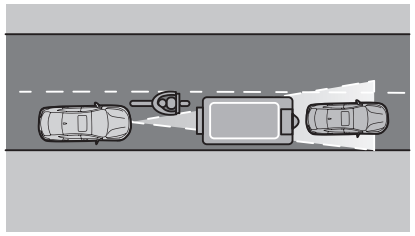

OMA30-0261

2. Driving through curves. When driving through curves, the radar sensor may not catch the front vehicle or respond to vehicles at the adjacent lane. In this case, ACC may apply brake to the vehicle to reduce speed, or have no response to the front vehicle, press the brake pedal or manually cancel ACC to stop the ACC vehicle braking.



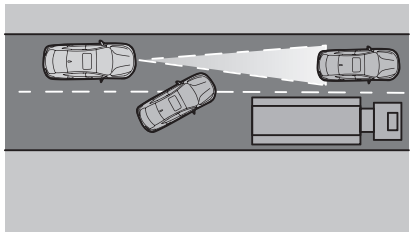
OMA30-0262

3. Driving out of curves. When driving out of long curves, the system will calculate in advance the traffic lane, so the radar sensor may respond to vehicles at the adjacent lane for vehicle braking. This braking process can be interrupted by pressing the accelerator pedal.



OMA30-0263

4. Narrow vehicle or Z-shaped traffic stream in the front. Only narrow vehicles in the front or vehicles driving in the front left or right entering into the radar sensor detection range can be identified by the sensor. The system cannot identify vehicles not within the sensor detection range, especially motorcycles and other narrow vehicles.



OMA30-0264

5. When other vehicles change lanes. Vehicles at the adjacent lane not entering the front detection range when changing to your lane may not be detected by the radar sensor, resulting in ACC response lag.

6. Influencing factors may deteriorate the sensor function. Rains, fogs, snows or sludge are likely to deteriorate the radar sensor function and result in the temporary closure of ACC, and the instrument cluster display shows the following text message: “Adaptive cruise is currently unavailable” or “Please check the front collision warning system” or “Please check the active brake assist system”. In this case, the front collision warning system, adaptive cruise control system and active brake assist system cannot work.
7. Brake overheating. In case of brake overheating due to emergency braking or driving along the steep slope downward, ACC will automatically shut down temporarily, and the instrument cluster display shows the following text message: “Adaptive cruise is currently unavailable”. After that, ACC cannot be activated. ACC can be activated only after the brake temperature has reduced to a reasonable extent.

Warning

- The driver must be ready to control the vehicle at any time.
- For safety’s sake, ACC shall not be used in urban driving, traffic congestion, curved road, poor road conditions (such as freezing, fogs, roads covered with gravels, heavy rains and hydroplaning phenomena) and other conditions with risks of accidents.
- ACC shall not be used when driving in areas without road or on dirt roads, and ACC can only be enabled on hard pavements.

Note

- ACC may have no response under some circumstances. For example, the system may have no response when the vehicle approaches vehicles broke down or waiting due to traffic jams and other stationary obstacles, or vehicles driving at the same lane.
- ACC will not respond to people, animals and vehicles laterally crossing or approaching the vehicle at the same lane.
- When changing lanes and driving at highway exits or on construction road sections, ACC shall be temporarily turned off to prevent the vehicle automatically accelerating to the set speed in these situations.

Note

- Be careful not to accidentally put your feet on the accelerator pedal, otherwise ACC will not brake the vehicle. Because the driver's pressing of the accelerator pedal may cause excessive vehicle speed and distance control.
- If ACC fails to play a role as stated in this chapter, stop the use and go to GAC dealer for maintenance as soon as possible.
- When driving the vehicle in heavy rains and snows and it is difficult or impossible for the system to identify front vehicles, ACC shall be turned off.
- If the vehicle is getting closer to the front vehicle at a speed higher than that of the front vehicle, ACC braking effect has not been able to ensure security and the vehicle may collide with the front vehicle, thus the driver must step on the brake pedal to reduce speed.
- ACC is impossible to accurately identify all driving environments.

Note

- ACC system allows the automatic exit of vehicle after short vehicle stop or obtaining the driver's confirmation (control button or accelerator pedal). During this period, the driver must ensure that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians in front of the vehicle.
- Do not collide the radar sensor. If the sensor suffers misplacement due to collision, despite of correction, it will still deteriorate the system performance, or even cause system shutdown.
- If the surface of radar sensor is dirty or covered by rainstorm, ice and snow, or mud, ACC may be unable to function.

Hint

- When ACC is open, the ACC state displayed on the instrument cluster display screen may be covered by other functions (e.g. telephone call).
- When the system is automatically applying brake on the vehicle after activating the ACC, abnormal running noise may occur, which is a normal phenomenon; such noise is caused by the running of braking system, and requires no worry.
- For safety's sake, turning off the Start switch will delete the stored cruising speed.
- You can step on the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed at any time. After releasing the accelerator pedal, this system will adjust the vehicle speed back to the previously stored vehicle speed.
- When entering into the tunnel, the radar may enter blind mode, and ACC may be closed temporarily.

Radar Sensor

The radar sensor is installed right under the front bumper, which is used for monitoring traffic conditions, and can detect the vehicles within a distance of about 160m in front of this vehicle.

The radar sensor must be adjusted and calibrated under the following circumstances:

1. The mounting and positioning support of the radar sensor has been dismantled and installed.
2. The radar sensor has been dismantled and installed.
3. During the four-wheel positioning process, the toe-in has been adjusted or the rear axle wheel cambers.

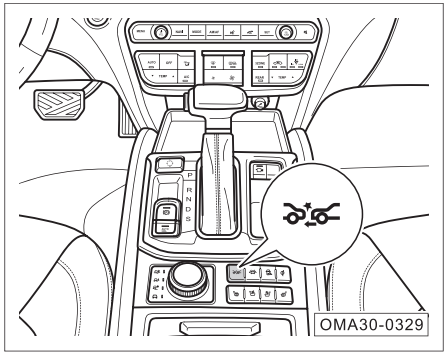
Note

Special purpose tools and equipments shall be used for adjusting and calibrating the radar sensors of Front Collision Warning System / Adaptive Cruise Control System /Active Brake Assist System. If the radar sensor requires adjustment or calibration, please be sure to contact GAC dealer for the related work.

3.3.4 Front Collision Warning System (apply to certain models)

Based on the radar installed in front of the vehicle, the Front Collision Warning System can detect the relative distance between the vehicle in the front and this vehicle and the speed, combined with the other operations of the driver, such as depressing the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal, evaluate the pre-collision danger level, and alarm the driver when necessary, i.e. timely remind the driver of taking measures to avoid or mitigate collision if collision danger exists.

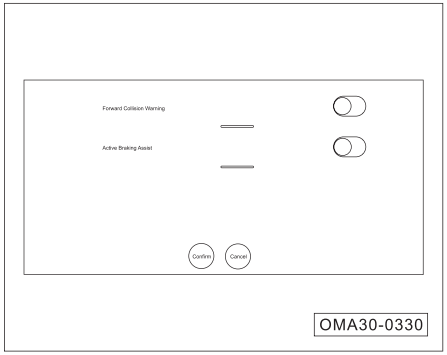
Turn on and off the Front Collision Warning System



When the Start switch is at “ON” gear, the Front Collision Warning System is open by default.

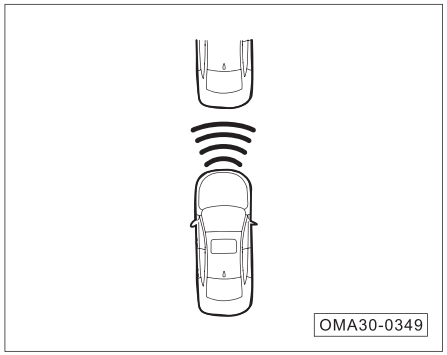
If manual turning on/off is required, the following operations can be executed:

– Short press button.



– The audio system display screen will present a pop-up window, short press soft button on the right side of “Forward Crash Warning” to turn on or off this function, and then short press “OK”.

Alarm Prompt



There are three prompts when the Front Collision Warning System is alarming:

1. Alert Alarm.

Alert Alarm will be triggered when ordinary collision risk exists.

2. Approaching Alarm.

Approaching Alarm will be triggered when higher collision risk exists, for which icon will flicker on the instrument, and beep sound will give out.

3. Short brake.

Short brake will be triggered when very high collision risk exists, for which short brake will occur, so as to better remind the driver of braking.

Hint

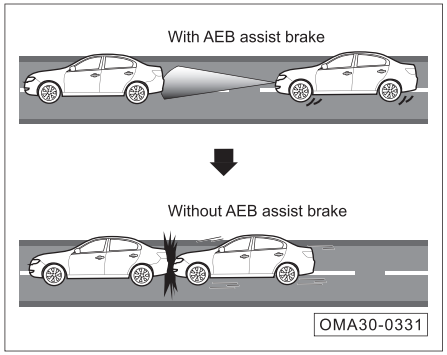
- Treading the accelerator pedal or rotating the steering wheel will terminate the alarm of the Front Collision Warning System.

Warning

The Front Collision Warning System cannot violate the physical laws, so that do not utilize the convenient functions provided by the Front Collision Warning System to drive in an adventurous manner.

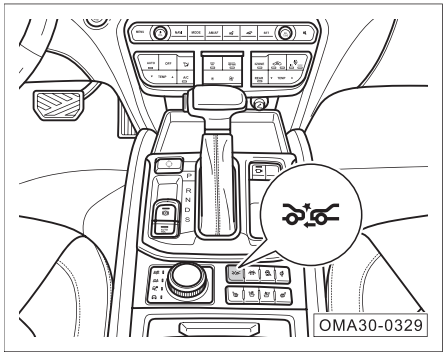
- The Front Collision Warning System is unable to remind the driver of collision avoidance in any case.
- When encountering complex driving environment (e.g. driving the vehicle on circuitous section), the Front Collision Warning System may give out unnecessary alarm.
- If the Front Collision Warning System gives out alarm, the driver must apply brake to decrease the speed or avoid the barrier according to the traffic conditions.
- The driver must be ready to control the vehicle at any time.

3.3.5 Autonomous Emergency Braking System (AEB) (apply to certain models)



Based on the radar installed in front of the vehicle, the Active Brake Assist System (AEB) can detect the relative distance between the vehicle in the front and this vehicle and the speed, combined with the other operations of the driver, such as depressing the brake pedal and the accelerator pedal, evaluate the collision danger level, and apply braking interference to the vehicle when necessary. When the detection shows that the collision is about to occur, AEB will automatically brake the vehicle; when the driver is braking but the braking force is insufficient to avoid the collision, the system will automatically increase the braking force to avoid or mitigate the collision

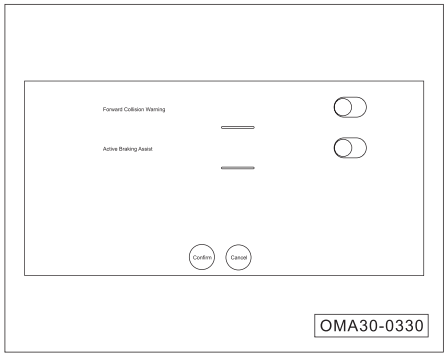
Turn on and turn off AEB



When the Start switch is in “ON” gear, the Active Brake Assist System is open by default.

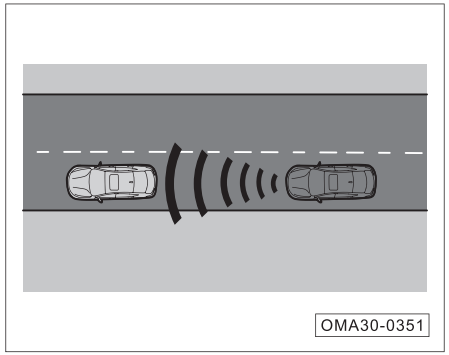
If manual turning on/off is required, the following operations can be executed:

Short press button.

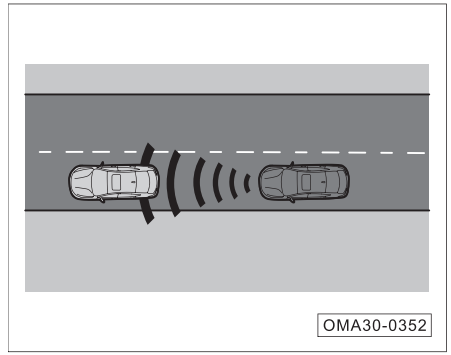


– The audio system display screen will present a pop-up window, short press soft button on the right side of “Active Brake Assist” to turn on or off this function, and then touch “OK”.
– Turn on/off on “Vehicle Settings” of audio system (please refer to page 208).

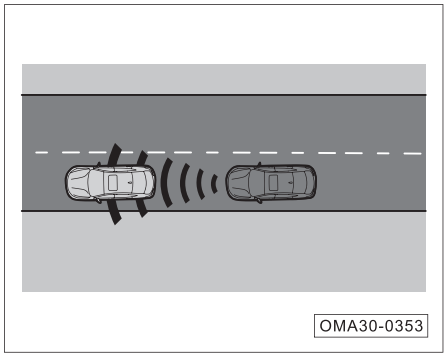
AEB Braking Level



– Level I braking: when approaching the front vehicle, brake in a short and quick manner.



– Level II braking: when approaching further, execute slight automatic emergency braking.



– Level III braking: rear-end collision is unavoidable, execute fully automatic brake.

Turn off the AEB system when any of the following circumstances occurs:

- The vehicle is towed.
- The vehicle is on the drum dynamometer.
- The radar sensor had fault.
- External force (rear-end collision) acts on the radar sensor.

AEB system may not work if any of the following circumstances occurs:

- Drive through the sharp curve.
- Press the accelerator pedal completely.
- The transmission is not at forward gear (“D” or “S”).
- Manually turn off the ESP system.
- The driver does not have the seat belts fastened.
- The radar sensor is dirty or covered.
- Drive in snowy days or rainstorm.
- Narrow vehicle (e.g. motorcycle) travels in the front.
- Vehicles traveling in a cross manner are met.
- All braking signal lights fail.
- There are static barriers in the front (e.g. broken-down vehicles).
- A vehicle comes from the opposite side.

Hint

- Treading the accelerator pedal or rotating the steering wheel will terminate the brake interference of AEB system.
- AEB system will apply braking force to the vehicle when triggered, brake pedal may shake, which is a normal phenomenon.

Warning

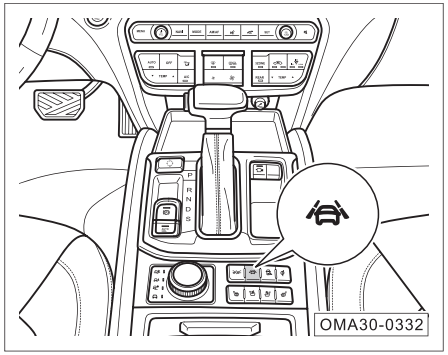
AEB system can enhance your driving safety, which however cannot surpass the kinematic laws, so that do not utilize the convenient functions provided by this system to drive in an adventurous manner. The driver must be ready to apply braking to the vehicle at any time, so as to decrease the speed or avoid barrier.

- AEB system is unable to autonomously prevent the occurrence of vehicle accident, or avoid injuring persons.
- AEB system is unable to autonomously and fully stop the vehicle, so that the driver must be ready to operate the vehicles at any time.
- When encountering complex driving environment (e.g. driving the vehicle on circuitous section), the AEB system may appear necessary braking interference.

3.3.6 Lane Departure Warning System (apply to certain models)

Lane Departure Warning System will detect the lane lines on the road, analyze the driving behaviors of the driver, and alarm when the vehicle departs from the lane accidentally due to the driver's fatigue, distraction or call. Generally, the alarm will be given when the front wheel crossing the lane line, the system will display graphs on the instrument cluster or give out beep to remind you.

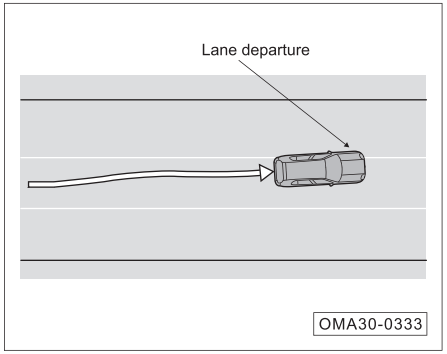
Turn on and off Lane Departure Warning System



When the Start switch is at the "ON" gear, press key, the key light will be on, and the system will start; press the key again, the key light will be off, and the system will shut down.

The system possesses on-off state memory function, i.e. after restarting the vehicle, the on-off state will be the same as that when the vehicle stops by the last time.

Alarm Prompt



In order to timely and necessarily alarm you when the vehicle crossing the lane marks, if the road has lane lines and the system detects such lines, the system will identify some conditions and alarm you accordingly; see the following three sections for the specific conditions.

1. Alarm will not occur under the following conditions:

- Vehicle speed less than 60km/h;
- No lane line is detected

2. When the speed is ≥ 60km/h, if the vehicle departs from the lane due to one of the following circumstances, the system will only remind the driver of lane departure, and flicker the graph on the display screen by a frequency of 2 flickers/s through the instrument cluster:

- Accelerate or decelerate through accelerator pedal;
- Depress the brake pedal;

3. When the speed is ≥ 60km/h, if the vehicle actually departs from the lane without the action mentioned in Item 1 or 2 above (e.g. the vehicle departs from the lane accidentally due to the driver’ s fatigue, distraction or call), the system will alarm the driver, and flicker the graph and state indicator light on the display screen at a frequency of 2 times/s through the instrument cluster, accompanied by beep at a frequency of 2 times/s.

The table below describes the meanings of graphical alarms appeared on the instrument cluster display screen:

Graph		Meaning
	Flicker by 2 times/s	Left departure
	Flicker by 2 times/s	Right departure
	Flicker by 2 times/s	System failure

Hint

If the instrument cluster display screen displays “please check the lane departure system”, it is indicated that the system fails, please drive to the vehicle sales and service shop of the Company for maintenance.

Factors Infecting the Alarm

Even if the Lane Departure Warning System has been started and worked, it may wrongly detect or may be unable to detect the lane lines due to unavoidable environmental factors and conditions. Under the following circumstances, the system may be affected or have no effect:

- Poor visibility, such as snowing, raining, fog or spray;
- The windscreen is dirty or fogged, or the windscreen camera is shielded;
- The ambient temperature of camera is too high due to direct sunlight;
- Glare caused due to direct sunlight, oncoming car, reflected light by road waterlogging, etc.;
- The outdoor luminance changes suddenly, e.g. entering/leaving tunnel;
- The headlight is off at night or in a tunnel where the light is weak;
- There is no lane line, or it is difficult to distinguish the color of lane line and road color;
- The lane line is unobvious, too thin, worn, vague, or is covered by dirt/snow;
- The lane line is too wide or too narrow;

- The number of lanes increases or decreases, or the lane lines intersect complicatedly;
- There are more than two lane lines on either left or right side when the vehicle is traveling;
- There are some marks or objects similar to the lane lines on the road;
- The isolation strip or other object projects shadows on the lane lines;
- Short-term line change, e.g. ramp or highway exit;
- Driving on abrupt slope or winding road;
- The distance from the vehicle in the front is too small, or the lane line is blocked by that vehicle;
- The vehicle shakes seriously.

Note

- In order to make the system work normally, please guarantee that the top surface outside the windscreen is free from dirt, ice and snow, or other barrier.
- Please do not color the front windshield glass of the vehicle or add coating not meeting the specification, any additional object which affect the sight of system camera may affect the normal working of the system.
- If the system camera cannot detect the lane or the speed is < 60km/h, the system will not alarm even though the vehicle deviates or depart from the lane.
- The sound of audio system in the vehicle or the noise outside the vehicle may cause you unable to hear the alarm beep, so that avoid such sounds as far as possible, and concentrate on observing the road conditions.

Warning

- Lane Departure Warning System is only an assistant system, and cannot actively control your vehicle to change or maintain the lane, so that you shall always be responsible for inspecting the road conditions and actively controlling the vehicle.
- The Lane Departure Warning System will alarm when the vehicle leaving the lane, so as to prevent sudden rotation of steering wheel.
- Placing reflective object on the instrument board is prohibited, because such object not only is easy to make the driver blinding, but also may reflect the light to the system camera, which will affect the normal working.
- Prevent the system camera from being impacted intensively, sweated or heated, and do not dismantle or install the parts by yourself.

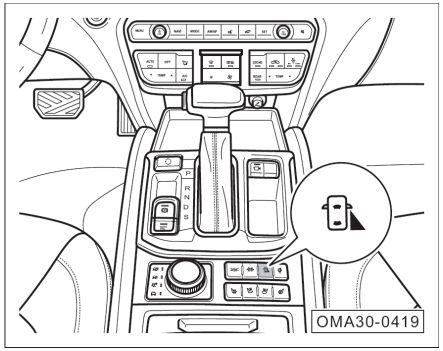
3.3.7 Lane Change Assist System (apply to certain models)

Lane Change Assist System mainly uses the cameras installed on the left and right outside rear-view mirrors of the vehicle to provide the video images in the rear of both left and right side of the vehicle for the driver during the traveling process, which can provide references when the driver is changing the lanes.

Hint

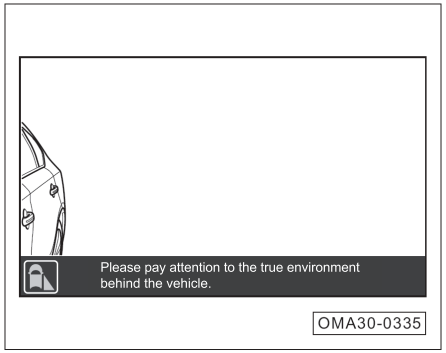
"Lane Change Assist" function can be enabled or disabled through "Vehicle Setting" of audio system (please refer to page 207).

Start and Close the Lane Change Assist System



When the Start switch is at the "ON" gear, press key, the key light will be on, and the system will start; press the key again, the key light will be off, and the system will shut down.

Working of Lane Change Assist System



Working conditions of Lane Change Assist System:

- When the speed exceeds 30km/h and the driver turns on the steering light, the system will automatically start, the audio system display screen will display the back view image on the moving side;
- When the speed is less than 30km/h or the driver turns off the steering light, the system will automatically close, and the audio system display screen will not display any image.

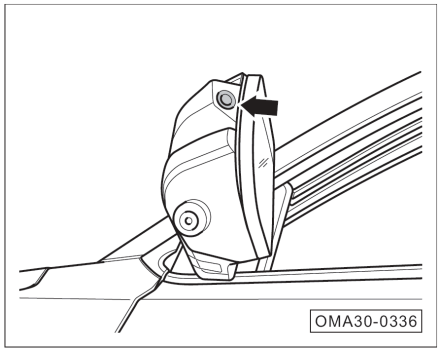
The system may not work normally under any of the following circumstances:

- The image may be vague during heavy rain or snow.
- At night, the light of vehicle in the rear directly shines the camera.
- The surface of camera is stained.
- The outside rear-view mirror is not fully unfolded.
- The installation mechanism of camera is damaged.

Warning

Blind zone exists in the images provided by the Lane Change Assist System unavoidably, so pay attention to the true environment behind the vehicle when changing the lane.

Camera Distribution



The cameras are installed on the sides of outside rear-view mirrors on both left and right sides.

Hint

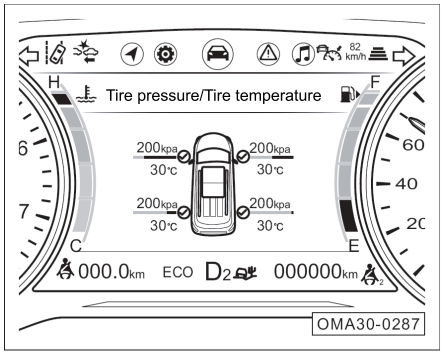
- Always keep the camera surface clean. When cleaning camera, use soft wet cloth to avoid scratching of camera lens.
- Do not use high pressure cleaning device to clean the camera for a long time, and keep a distance of at least 30cm from the camera when cleaning.
- Please do not cover the camera

3.3.8 Tire Pressure Monitoring System

This vehicle uses direct tire pressure monitoring system, i.e. uses the tire pressure sensor installed on the rim to measure the air pressure and temperature of the tire, and sends the pressure and temperature information from inside the tire to the receiver through wireless transmitter. After decoding analysis, the CAN will send information to the instrument to display current pressure and temperature. When the tire encounters low pressure, rapid air leakage and high temperature, the receiver will send the alarm signal, which will be displayed on the instrument.

When the Start switch is at “ON” gear, if the vehicle does not travel or the traveling speed does not exceed 25km/h, the pressure value and temperature value displayed on the instrument cluster are both “---”. If the traveling speed of the vehicle exceeds 25km/h, the instrument cluster will display the actual current value.

Tire Information Display



Indicate the tire pressure/tire temperature corresponding to four wheels of the vehicle.

When the speed exceeds 25km/h, the tire pressure sensor will send the data to the receiver, after decoding and analysis, such data will be sent to the instrument through bus to display the current pressure value and temperature value.

- If the tire pressure is higher than 150% of the normal set value, the indicator light of tire pressure monitoring system will be on, and the text alarm on the instrument cluster display screen will be displayed as high tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure is lower than 75% of the normal set value, the indicator light of tire pressure monitoring system will be on, and the text alarm on the instrument cluster display screen will be displayed as low tire pressure.
- If the tire pressure changing exceeds a certain speed, the indicator light of tire pressure monitoring system will be on, and the text alarm of combination instrument will display tire flat.
- If the tire temperature is higher than 85℃ , the indicator light of tire pressure monitoring system will be on, and the text alarm on the instrument cluster display screen will be displayed as high tire temperature.

Note

If the tire pressure sensor in the tire needs to be replaced, the tire needs to be replaced, or the tire position needs to be exchanged, one should learn the matching of sensors in four tires again, please come to our vehicle sales and service shop for replacement.

Hint

- When the tire suffers high temperature, high pressure, low pressure, or rapid air leakage fault, the instrument cluster will give early warning prompt, and will display the position of the corresponding failed tire in a circulating manner; when the system fails, the instrument cluster will give early warning prompt, and will display “system failure, please inspect” in a circulating manner.
- When the high temperature alarm happens, it is recommended to stop driving and take a rest until the tires cool down.
- If the traveling alarm record has not been removed until stop, such alarm will still exist when driving the next time, and the pressure and temperature will be displayed as “---”; however, when the speed exceeds 25km/h, the receiver will receive the updated data and update, and alarm will be removed.

Hint

- After replacing with spare tire or a new tire in other place, the warning of low tire pressure will not be eliminated when continuing traveling due to the missing of tire pressure sensor; do not misunderstand it as abnormal tire pressure.

3.4 Reverse Assist System

3.4.1 Reversing Radar System (Apply to Certain Models)

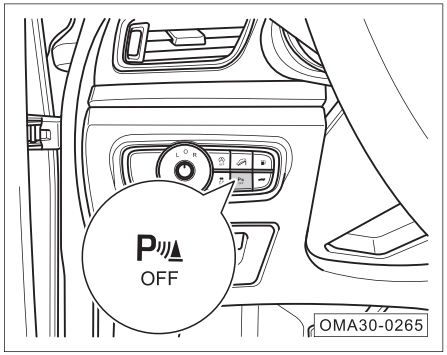
Reversing radar system can assist the driver in parking and adjusting the parking space.

This system will utilize four ultrasonic sensors on front bumper and four ultrasonic sensors on rear bumper, which can send and receive ultrasonic wave, to calculate the distances between the vehicle and the barrier in front or back of the vehicle (the ultrasonic wave will be sent by the sensor and then reflected by the barrier). If the front or rear part of the car is approaching the barrier, the system will give out intermittent audible alarms to the driver, the closer the distance between the front or rear part of the car and the barrier is, the shorter the alarm sound will be; if the distance is very near, the system will give out continuous alarm sound. If, by this time, the car continues approaching the barrier, the system will be unable to detect the barrier behind the car any more. Except for alarm sound, the audio system display screen will also display the dynamic schematic icons of radar detection.

Start and Close the Reversing Radar System

When the forwarding speed is less than 15km/h, the front ultrasonic wave sensor will start working; when the forwarding speed exceeds 15km/h, the front ultrasonic wave sensor will stop working; when the forwarding speed decreases from more than 15km/h to less than 10km/h, the front ultrasonic wave sensor will start working again.

When the Start switch is at “ON” gear, the electronic parking brake will relieve; place the shift lever on “R” gear, when the speed less than 10km/h, the rear ultrasonic wave sensor and front ultrasonic wave sensor will start working simultaneously; when the speed exceeds 10km/h, the rear ultrasonic wave sensor and front ultrasonic wave sensor will stop working; move the shift lever out of the “R” gear, apply electronic parking brake, the Start switch will quit the “ON” gear, and the reversing radar system will quit working.



– During the reversing process, if the reversing radar system is started, pressing the P OFF key can manually shut down the system, pressing again will restart.
– After restarting the vehicle, the reversing radar system will remember the state when quitting last time

Hint

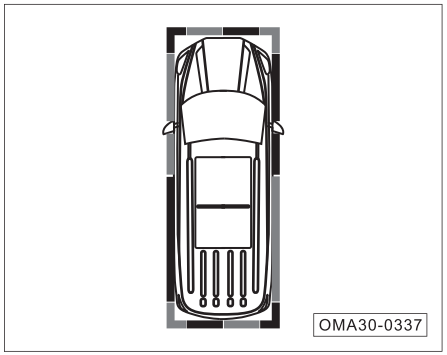
It is suggested that the reversing radar system should be started when reversing.

Distance Reference Alarm Sound

The alarm sound will change with the distance between the barrier and front or rear bumper, and the color displayed on DVD will change correspondingly:

Barrier Detecting Distance				Alarm Sound	Color Displayed on DVD
Front middle sensor	Front corner sensor	Rear corner sensor	Rear middle sensor		
90~110cm	/	/	90 ~ 150 cm	Low-speed intermittent alarm sound	Green
60~90cm	/	/	60 ~ 90 cm	Medium-speed intermittent alarm sound	Green
30~60cm	30 ~ 60 cm	30 ~ 60 cm	30 ~ 60 cm	High-speed intermittent alarm sound	Yellow
Within 30cm	Within 30cm	Within 30cm	Within 30cm	Continuous alarm sound	Red

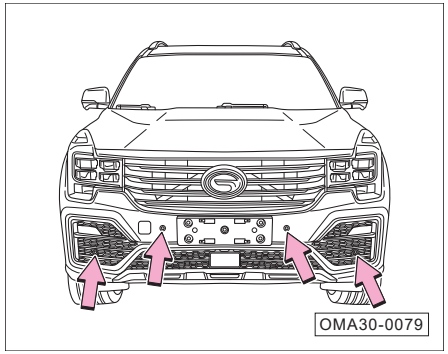
Dynamic schematic icon



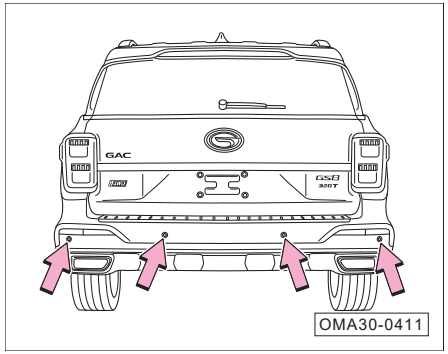
The dynamic schematic icon arising at the top left side of the display screen indicates the current distance between the front or rear part of the vehicle and the barrier. When the barrier is getting more and more close to the vehicle, the outside area of the vehicle changes from green to yellow or red.

The change of dynamic schematic icon is synchronous to the change of distance alarm sound.

Ultrasonic Wave Sensor Distribution



The front ultrasonic wave sensor is installed on the front bumper hood.



The rear ultrasonic wave sensor is installed on the rear bumper hood.

Note

- Always keep the ultrasonic wave sensor surface clean, and do not cover the ultrasonic wave sensor.
- When cleaning the ultrasonic wave sensor surface, use soft wet cloth to avoid scratching surface.

⚠ Warning

- The reversing radar system cannot replace the driver's observation to the ambient environment, so that the driver shall pay attention to safe reversing and parking space adjustment according to the actual conditions.
- Blind zone exists when the ultrasonic wave sensor is detecting the barrier, so that the driver must observe carefully to avoid the occurrence of scraping or collision.
- When reversing in a narrow space or uphill, the ultrasonic sensor may detect the railings, trees or slope. This is a normal phenomenon.
- At a faster reversing speed, the detection accuracy of the untrasonic sensor may lower somewhat. The proposed reversing speed should be no more than 15km/h. If the reversing radar system continuously gives out alarm sound, immediately stop the reversing to be cautious of accident, because the vehicle is very close to the barrier at that time.

⚠ Warning

- Clean the ultrasonic sensor with high pressure cleaning device in a short-time and gentle manner, keep at least 10cm of distance between the nozzle and the sensor.
- Drops of water on the ultrasonic sensor surface of the rear bumper can reduce the sensor sensitivity. To restore the sensor sensitivity, wipe off the drops of water.
- The surfaces of certain items cannot reflect the signals from the ultrasonic sensors , so that the ultrasonic system cannot detect such items or persons wearing such clothing.
- The ultrasonic sensor may not detect the objects if interfered by the outdoor noise.
- The sensors of the ultrasonic sensor are precision parts. Do not remove, install or repair the sensors without authorization. Damage caused by removal, installation or repair without authorization is not covered by the warranty.

3.4.2 Reversing rear-view system (apply to certain models)

The reversing rear-view system can provide 130° wide-angle video irradiation, display a large range of video images behind the vehicle on the audio system display screen, allow the driver to comprehensively master various complex road conditions behind the vehicle, and enhance the reversing safety.

Start and Close the Reversing Rear-view System

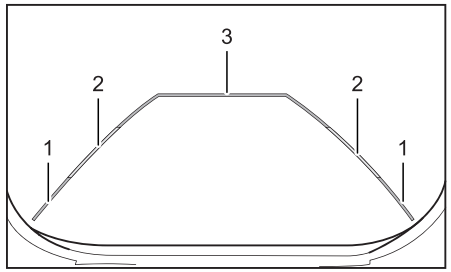
When the Start switch is at “ON” gear, placing the shift lever on “R” gear can make the reversing rear-view system work automatically, the audio system display screen will start displaying the shooting image behind the vehicle, and will display the distance reference line on the image.

Move the shift lever out of “R” gear, the reversing rear-view system will quit working automatically, and the audio system will quit the reversing image display.

⚠ Warning

The reversing rear-view system cannot replace the driver’s observation to the ambient environment, so that the driver shall pay attention to safe reversing and parking space adjustment according to the actual conditions.

Distance Reference Line



The lines in three colors on the display screen represent the horizontal reference distances of such positions with the rear bumper.

Line 1 (Red): 0.1~0.5m

Line 2 (Yellow): 0.5~1m

Line 3 (Green): 1~3m

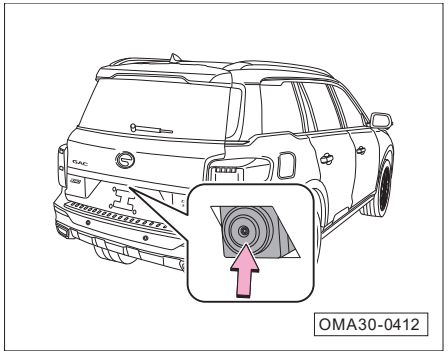
Note

The above distance value is measured on level ground and is only taken as a reference value of view distance. If there is a slope, the above distance isn't correct.

Hint

- The longitudinal lines on both sides of the distance reference line can be used as the reference lines for judging the required parking place size when reversing or parking.
- The distance reference line will adjust constantly with the rotation of steering wheel.

Rear-View Camera



Rearview camera is installed under the panel of hatchback door.

Warning

- Dead zone still exists in the detecting scope of rearview camera, because the camera may be unable to discover the young children or small pet, so that pay special attention to the young children or small pet all around when reversing.
- Upright objects with a higher position, such as wall flange, may also be unable to be identified by the rear-view camera.

Note

- Always keep the rear-view camera surface clean. When cleaning the rear-view camera, use soft wet cloth to avoid scratching of the rear-view camera lens.
- Do not use high pressure cleaning device to clean the rear-view camera for a long time, and keep a distance of at least 30cm from the camera when cleaning.
- Please do not cover the rear-view camera.

3.4.3 Panorama parking system (appy to certain models)

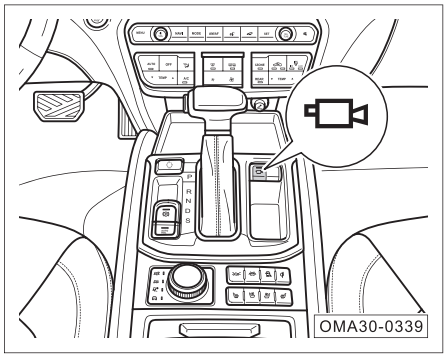
The panorama parking system can provide the information of environment around the vehicle to the driver through real-time image, reduce the blind zones of driving, and forecast the movement track of the vehicle in combination with steering wheel angle and vehicle dimensions and other related parameters; adding such information into the panoramic image can make the driver fully understand the traveling direction of the vehicle and judge whether the reversing is safe. In addition, through obtaining vehicle gear position, steering wheel angle and other related information, the system can also guide the driver to carry out parallel parking, vertical parking and other parking operation through human-computer interaction, so as to be convenient for the driver's parking and enhance the parking safety.

The panorama parking system is composed of one control host module and four 180° cameras. Collect the images at front, back, left and right sides of the vehicle, and splice such images into a 360° aerial view for the environments around the vehicle through image processing algorithm, which will be displayed on the audio system display screen.

Start and Close the Panorama Parking System

Panoramic parking system can be turned on/off by the following two modes of operation:

1. Start and close through shift lever. When the Start switch is in "ON" gear:
   - Place the shift lever on "R" gear, the panorama parking system will automatically start;
   - Move the shift lever out of "R" gear. If the driver has no related operation, the panorama parking system will exit automatically after displaying for 30s.

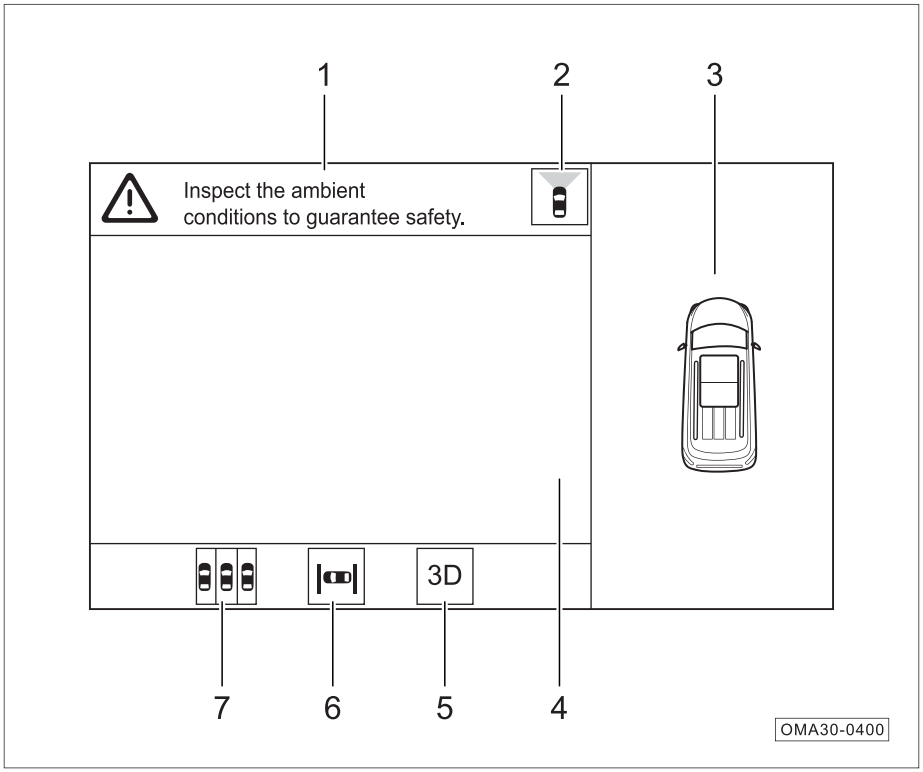


2. Start and close through button. When the Start switch is in "ON" gear:
   - Short press button, the button light will light and the panorama parking system will start.
   - Short press button again, the button light goes out and the panorama parking system closes.

Hint

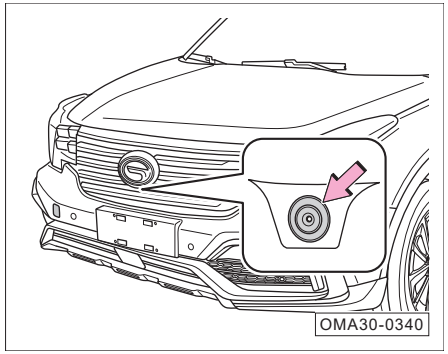
- When the panorama parking system starts, the audio system display screen will start to display the images shot around the vehicle, with some auxiliary lines on the image.
- When the vehicle is forwarding, if the speed exceeds 20km/h, the panorama parking system will close automatically.
- If the vehicle is not on “R” gear and the system has been activated for more than 30s, the system will automatically close (when the speed is zero).
- The panorama parking system cannot be used normally before the audio system fully starts.

Interface Description

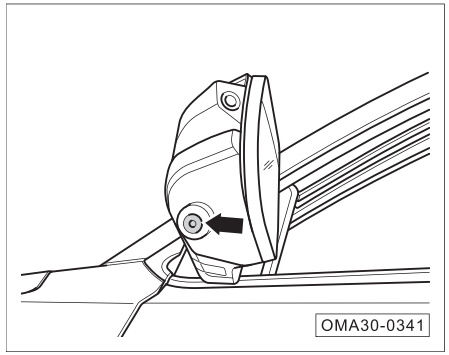


1. Text prompt
2. View indication
3. Image display zone
4. Image display zone
5. 2D/3D switch soft button
6. Parallel parking soft button
7. Vertical parking soft button

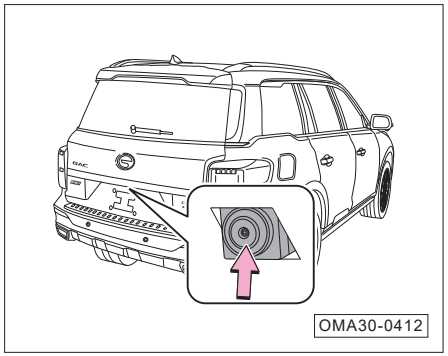
Camera Distribution



Front camera is installed under the front grille vehicle logo.



Left/right cameras are installed on the bottoms of left/right outside rear-view mirrors.



Rear-view camera is installed under the panel of hatchback door.

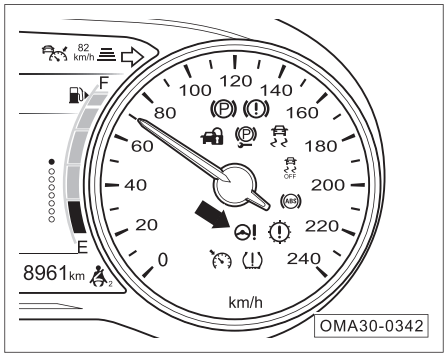
Note

- Please keep the camera surface clean.
- Do not use high pressure cleaning device to clean the camera for a long time, and keep a distance of at least 30cm from the camera when cleaning.

3.5 Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) is a power steering system which directly relies on motor to provide auxiliary torque. EPS is composed of torque sensor, motor, retarding mechanism and electronic steering control unit (ECU), etc.

Through detecting the driver's torque input, and vehicle speed, engine speed and other finished automobile status signals, the electric steering control unit (ECU) will control the assist motor torque output in real time, provide optimal power-assisted steering, guarantee the low-speed steering ease of vehicle and high-speed steering stability, and enhance the driving comfort and vehicle safety.



Electric power steering control unit ECU is equipped with warning light alarm and text alarm. When the start switch is at "ON" position, the indicator light ( ) of electric power steering system (EPS) will be on; after starting the engine for several seconds, the electric power steering control unit will finish the self-inspection, the warning light will be off, which indicates that the electric power steering system works normally.

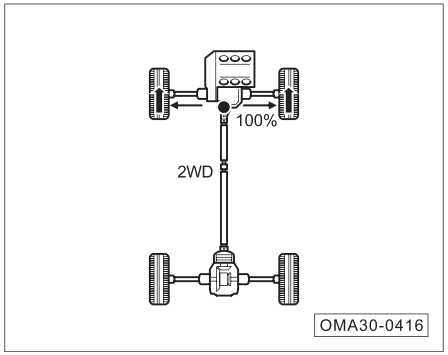
If the indicator light comes on after starting the engine or when driving, it indicates a trouble develops in the EPS, and the corresponding alarm text appears on the instrument cluster display.

If the electric power steering system fails, park the vehicle at safe place and turn off the engine; restart the engine, if the indicator light is still on or lights again during the driving process, please timely come to our vehicle sales and service shop to overhaul the vehicle.

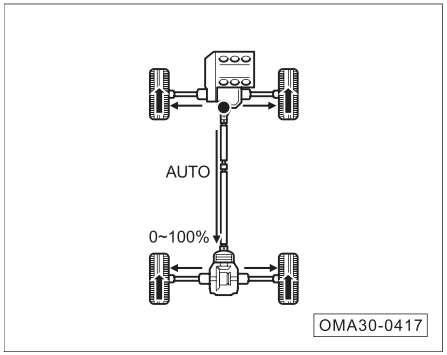
3.6 Smart Four-Wheel Drive System (Apply to Certain Models)

Smart four-wheel drive system is an intelligent control system, possesses multiple control allocation strategies, and can prepare loading torque before vehicle slipping and quickly transmit appropriate torque to the rear wheel, so as to enhance the vehicle's ability to get out of bad situations, such as sand, snow or mud, help the vehicle adapt to different roads, and further improve the maneuverability of the vehicle.

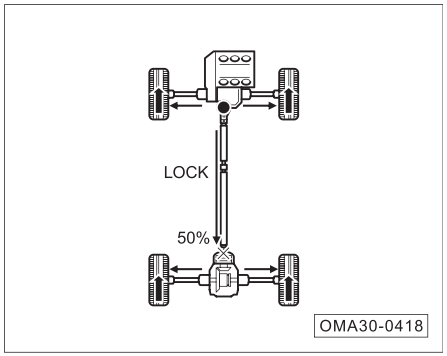
Control Allocation Strategies



– At front axle driving mode, there is no torque transmitting to the rear axle, thus realizing higher fuel economy.



– Smart four-wheel drive system will allocate torque to the front and rear axles according to the vehicle traveling conditions (e.g. slipping of front wheel), so as to make the vehicle possess optimal driving performance.



– When the vehicle suffers the working conditions of getting out of bad situations, the smart four-wheel drive system will lock the four-wheel drive mode (LOCK) and forcibly allocate 50% of the torque to the rear axle, so as to increase the vehicle’ s ability to get out of such situations.

Smart four-wheel drive system will always monitor the vehicle’s conditions. It will automatically start when the engine starts, and will always at activated state; it can automatically adjust the power on front and rear wheels, and can easily cope with various off-road terrains, including sand, snow and mud roads. The driver can use the all-terrain feedback system knob (please refer to page 333) to switch to correct terrain mode, so as to optimize the smart four-wheel drive system.

Note

- When the smart four-wheel drive system overheats or fails, the combination instrument display screen will display the warning message of “The Four-Wheel Drive System is Too Hot, Please Stop”.
- When the smart four-wheel drive system overheats or fails, the smart four-wheel drive system will forcibly enter front-wheel drive mode.

Use Smart Four-Wheel Drive System under Special Circumstances

Smart four-wheel drive vehicle is suitable for traveling on sand, mud and snow roads or highroads with rough surface, but its performances differ from the two-wheel drive vehicle no matter traveling on highroad or field.

If your car is caught in sand, mud or snow, repeatedly engage at the D gear and R gear, and slowly tread on accelerator pedal to avoid wheel slip; do not forcibly tread the accelerator pedal, if the vehicle is found slipping, rotate the steering wheel towards the slipping direction, until the vehicle is under control again; if the vehicle still cannot get out, drag the vehicle to make it leave the related road.

Tire of Four-Wheel Drive Vehicle

Tires of same size, brand, structure (diagonal tire, diagonal belted tire or radial tire) and pattern shall be used on four wheels. Otherwise, the perimeters of tires on front and rear axles will be different, which will cause excessive wear of tire and damage to the transmission, transfer case and rear differential mechanism gear. Please use spare tires specified for four-wheel drive vehicle.

If the tire is found to be over-worn, it is recommended that tires of same size, brand, structure and pattern shall be used for replacing all four tires. In addition, inspect the tire pressure and wheel alignment, and correct as needed; please go to the 4S Shop of the Company for treatment.

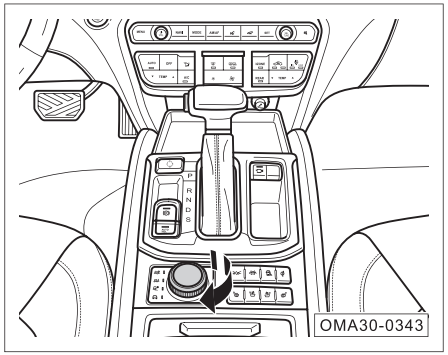
Snow Tire

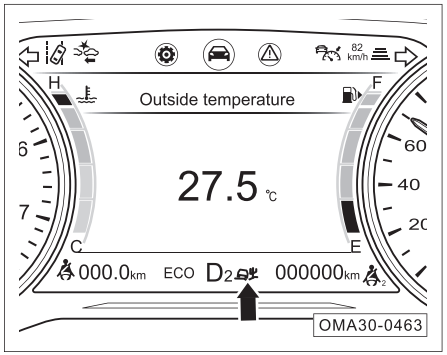
If snow tire is installed, all four wheels shall use tires of same size, brand, structure and tread pattern.

3.7 All Terrain Feedback Control System (ATS) (Apply to Certain Models)

All Terrain Feedback System (ATS) has written mature operation technique into the software, the driver can rotate the ATS selection knob to select the terrain mode suitable for the current terrain, and ATS will call the corresponding internal software according to the selected terrain mode, so as to make the vehicle travel on this terrain at optimal state.

ATS Selection Knob





Four modes can be selected through ATS selection knob:

– Sand mode: applicable to soft dry sand or thick macadam road.

– Mud mode: applicable to muddy, trapping, soft or uneven ground, or used on very wet sand (mixed sand and mud).

– Snow mode: applicable to loose fresh snow, deep snow, compacted snow, and ice surface.

– Normal mode: applicable to ordinary highroad pavement.

When selecting a mode, the indicator light of corresponding mode on the ATS selection knob will be on, and the combination instrument will display: Mode Selected. After selection, ATS will make a judgment: if that mode is successfully entered, the combination instrument will continue displaying: Mode Selected, and the indicator light of corresponding mode on the combination instrument will be on.

If ATS judges failure, the combination instrument will display: Mode Failed, and will return to Normal Mode, and the indicator

light will switch to the indicator light of normal mode.

If it is judged that this mode cannot be entered temporarily, the combination instrument will display: Mode Waiting, and the indicator light of corresponding mode on the ATS will flicker.

Hint

Please select appropriate terrain mode according to the actual terrain. On paved road, do not select “Mud Mode” or “Sand Mode”, otherwise the vehicle will shake slightly when idling; when steering, the braking effect is obvious and the resistance feeling is strong, which will increase the fuel consumption and worsen the tire wear.

Four-wheel drive mode can only be switched to two-wheel drive mode at “Normal Mode” through switching the driving mode switch to ECO mode.

Note

- Sand Mode and Mud Mode can only be used under off-road conditions. Otherwise, when steering, the vehicle will shake slightly, accompanied by brake-in-turn phenomenon and strong resistance feeling, which will increase the fuel consumption and worsen the tire wear, or even damage the four-wheel drive system.
- Only when the all terrain mode is at normal or snow mode, the smart four-wheel drive system can allocate the torques on front and rear wheels according to the actual working conditions, and automatically control two-wheel drive mode or four-wheel drive mode.

3.8 Driving Skills

3.8.1 Check of Driving Safety

You should do a safety check before you drive your vehicle. Checking your vehicle for a few minutes will help to make safe and enjoyable driving.

Before Starting the Engine

1. Vehicle exterior
   - Inspect the tire pressure, and whether incision, bulge, damage or excessive wear occurs to the tire.
   - Guarantee that the tire bolts are not missing or loose.
   - Guarantee that the headlight, brake light, taillight, steering signal light and other vehicle lights work normally. Inspect headlamp lightening direction.
2. Vehicle interior
   - Inspect and confirm the seat belt has been fastened securely. Make sure the seat belts are free of wear or damage.
   - Inspect the instruments and controllers, and especially guarantee the instrument indicator light and defroster work normally.
   - Guarantee the pedal has enough free clearance.
   - Guarantee that the coolant level is correct (Please refer to page 361).
   - Check the situation of 12V battery. Inspect whether there is corrosion or loosening on terminal and cracks on the shell. Inspect if the cable and connections are good.

After Starting the Engine

- Inspect whether the vehicle bottom suffers fuel oil, engine oil, water or other liquid leakage. If the air-conditioning drips after being used, this is normal.
- Park the vehicle on flat ground, turn off the engine, and inspect the oil level after the engine cools down (Please refer to page 356).

While Driving

- Guarantee the instrument works normally.
- When inspecting and confirming the brake on safe road, the vehicle shall not deviate to any side.
- Other abnormal phenomena: inspect whether the components are loose and leaking, and listen whether there is any abnormal noise.

3.8.2 Driving During Running-in Period

To ensure your vehicle's service life, all vehicles should go through a running-in period at the initial stage before putting your vehicle into normal use. When your vehicle is at running-in period, please observe the following regulations:

- The mileage of running-in period is 1,500km.
- Drive on good roads under reduced load at limited speed.
- Avoid full-open throttle starting or rapid acceleration.
- Avoid emergency braking within the first 300km.
- Implement the operating instructions strictly and keep the engine operating temperature normal. Do not change the oil until the scheduled maintenance time.
- Carefully accomplish the routine vehicle maintenance, frequently inspect and fasten the external bolts and nuts, pay attention to the changes of sounds and temperatures during the operating process of various assemblies, and timely adjust.

Running-in Engine

A new engine must accept 1500km of running-in. Within 1000km of traveling mileage of the vehicle:

- The vehicle speed shall not exceed 3/4 of the maximum speed.
- Avoid full-throttle driving.
- Avoid high engine speed.
- Do not tow a trailer.

When the traveling mileage is 1000km~1500km, the engine speed and vehicle speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable range.

At the early stage of running-in period, the internal frictional resistance of the engine is much greater than that after the running-in period. All the moving components of the engine must be run in before achieving the best fit.

Full running-in of the engine can increase the service life and reduce the oil consumption.

Running-in Tires and Brake Pads

Travel at moderate speed within the first 500km to properly run the new tire.

Within the first 200km~300km of traveling mileage, the new braking pad will not reach the optimal friction status, so that drive at medium or low speed and avoid emergency braking as far as possible.

⚠ Warning

- If new tires and brake pads had not been run in, they would not be provided with the best adhesion and friction. Be sure to drive carefully during the first 500km to run in the tires well to avoid accidents.
- After replacement, the new brake pads should also go through running-in period in accordance with the above requirements.
- Maintain an appropriate distance with other vehicle while driving to prevent the occurrence of emergency braking; at the moment, both the new tire and brake pad are not fully adapted, emergency braking may cause traffic accident.
- If the brake is damped or frozen, or the vehicle is traveling on salt spreading road, the braking effect will decrease.

⚠ Warning

- Heavy workload can cause brakes overheat while going down a steep hill. We recommend you slow down by shifting to a lower gear so that you can get full use of braking effect from the engine to reduce your brakes' workload.
- Always apply the brake according to the road and traffic conditions. Avoid unnecessary press of brake pedal. Doing so can cause brake overheating, resulting in a longer braking distance and excessive wear.
- Do not coast by turning off your engine. Since the brake booster is disabled, the braking distance will get extended greatly, resulting in accidents.
- Do not use the brake fluid for too long. Be sure to replace the brake fluid according to the maintenance intervals in the Warranty Manual.

3.8.3 Essentials for Driving underVarious Conditions

- Be sure to drive at low speed in lateral gust. This is convenient for controlling the vehicle.
- Maintain an appropriate angle to avoid driving at high, sharp-edged objects or other barriers on roads. Failure to do so may cause tire burst and other serious damage.
- Slow down if driving on very bumpy or uneven roads. Otherwise, the vehicle will be damaged by impact and bottom scratching.
- After washing the vehicle or driving across a deep water area, the brake pad and brake disc will be soaked by water, the braking effect will be greatly decreased when braking; therefore, firstly drive at low gear, continuously gently tread the brake pedal to remove the water remaining on the brake, after the braking effect returns to normal, drive normally.

⚠ Warning

- Before driving, make sure the parking brake is released fully and its indicator light has gone out.
- When you are driving, do not rest your foot on the brake pedal. Doing so can cause dangerous overheating, unnecessary wear and fuel wasting.
- When driving downward on a long slope, decelerate and downshift. Remember that using the brakes excessively can cause them too overheated to work properly.
- Take care during acceleration, upshifting, downshifting or braking on slippery road surfaces. Sudden acceleration or engine braking can cause wheel slip or wheel spin.
- Do not drive any more when brake is wet. If the brakes get wet, the braking distance will be longer than usual when the brake is applied and the vehicle may pull to one side. The parking brake cannot stop the vehicle firmly, either.

Precautions for Driving Across Ponding Road:

1. Before driving into a ponding road, find out the depth of ponding which shall not exceed the lower edge of the vehicle body.
2. In case of driving in water, turn off the air conditioner before vehicle starting, travel at a low speed, slightly tread the accelerator pedal and maintain this gesture, and go through this ponding road at a stable and low speed.
3. Do not park the vehicle in water, nor reverse the vehicle or turn off the engine in water.
4. After successfully driving across the ponding area, continuously slightly tread the brake pedal for several times to evaporate water on the braking disc, so as to recover the normal braking performance as soon as possible.

Essentials of Winter Driving

1. Confirm the anti-freezing solution has correct anti-freezing protection effect.
   - Use the anti-freezing solution with the same model as the original vehicle, and select appropriate model of anti-freezing solution according to the ambient temperature and add it into the cooling system.
   - Using inappropriate anti-freezing solution will damage the engine.
2. Inspect the conditions of battery and cable.
   - Cold weather will decrease the energy of accumulator, so that accumulator shall maintain sufficient electric quantity to be used for winter start.
3. Avoid the door lock from being frozen by ice and snow.
4. Spray deicing agent or glycerinum into the keyhole on vehicle door to avoid freezing.
5. Use cleaning solution containing anti-freezing agent.
   - These products are available in the 4S Shop of the Company and all automobile parts shop.
   - The mixing ratio between water and anti-freezing agent shall be based on the manufacturer’s description.
6. Avoid ice and snow accumulating under the fender.
   - If ice and snow accumulate under the fender, steering will be difficult. When driving in freezing winter, stop frequently to inspect whether ice or snow exists under the fender.
7. Based on different road conditions, it is recommended that necessary emergency tools or articles should be carried.
   - Tire chain, window scraper, a bag of sand or salt, signal flasher, scoop, connecting cable and other necessary articles shall be placed on the vehicle as far as possible.

3.8.4 Efficient Use of the Vehicle

- Maintain the correct tire pressure. Insufficient tire pressure will result in tire wear and fuel waste. Tire pressure parameter (Please refer to page 399).
- Make sure the wheel alignment is accurate. Inaccurate wheel alignment can cause the tires wear out faster, increase the engine load and waste fuel.
- The vehicle shall not overload. Excessive weight increases the engine load, wasting fuel.
- Accelerate slowly and stably, and avoid rapid start. Try to drive in a higher gear as soon as possible.
- Avoid areas with traffic jam or congestion as far as possible, and prevent continuous acceleration and deceleration. stop-and-go driving mode will waste the fuel oil.
- Avoid unnecessary parking and braking and keep a stable vehicle speed. Try to drive by matching up the traffic lights to minimize the number of stops, or take advantage of thoroughfares without traffic lights. Keep an appropriate vehicle-to-vehicle distance so as to avoid emergency braking. This will reduce the wear of the brake.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal. This will cause early wear or overheating of braking pad, and will waste fuel oil.
- Avoid hitting road shoulder while driving. Slow down when driving on rugged roads.
- Don't let the chassis stick mud and other foreign matters. This can reduce self-weight of the vehicle and prevent corrosion.
- Regularly maintain the vehicle to keep it in its best working condition. Dirty air filter, unclean spark plugs, oil and grease, etc., will reduce engine performance and waste fuel. To extend the service life of all components and reduce operating costs, be sure to perform regular maintenance. Maintain your vehicle more frequently if you often drive under a severe condition.

Fuel-Saving Driving

Fuel-saving driving can not only save fuel but also protect environment.

- Travel slowly for several minutes after starting at low temperature, and accelerate after the engine warms.
- Unload the unnecessary items before driving.
- Keep a proper tire pressure.
- Try to drive on good roads.
- Avoid rapid acceleration. Press the accelerator pedal gently. Do not press the accelerator pedal abruptly when starting or press the brake pedal violently to stop.
- Do not open the window when driving at high speed.
- Use the air-conditioning, audio system and other equipments properly.
- Turn off all unnecessary electric equipments.
- When parking for a long time, shut off the engine and prevent the engine from idling for a long time.
- Drive on level road surfaces at economic speed.
- Always drive in an appropriate gear based on the running speed. Do not drive at high speed with low gear.
- Be sure to maintain your vehicle in accordance with the maintenance requirements.

3.8.5 Fire prevention

In order to prevent vehicle fire, the following matters shall be noted when using:

1. Inflammables and explosives shall not be stored in the vehicle;
   - In hot summer, the internal temperature of vehicle parking in the sun can reach more than 70 ℃ , if lighter, cleaning agent, perfume, and other inflammables and explosives exist in the vehicle, it is very easy to cause fire or even explosion.
2. After smoking, confirm the cigarette end goes out completely;
   - If the cigarette end does not go out completely, fire may occur.
3. Have the vehicle regularly inspected in a GAC Motor authorized dealer;
   - Periodically inspect the circuits of the entire vehicle, inspect whether the connector, insulation and fixing position of electric appliances and wire harness are normal, and timely treat the problems found.
4. Refitting the vehicle circuit or adding electrical components is prohibited
   - Adding other electric appliances (e.g. high-power audio device and xenon headlamp, etc.) will overload the circuit, the wire harness will be easy to heat and cause fire.
   - It is strictly prohibited to use fuse beyond the rated specification of electric appliance, or use other metal wire to substitute fuse.
5. Precautions for driving;
   - When parking, especially in summer, be sure to check whether inflammables exist under the vehicle, such as hay, deadwood, leaves, or wheat straw, because the temperature of engine or other components will increase after long-time traveling, which may cause fire if the inflammables exist under the vehicle.
   - When driving the vehicle, try to avoid the road stacking with leaves, wheat straw, weed or other inflammables, or timely stop and inspect whether such inflammables are caught on the vehicle bottom after passing such road. Avoid parking in places exposing to direct sunlight.
6. Portable fire extinguisher shall always be provided on the vehicle, and the using method shall be mastered;
   - In order to guarantee vehicle safety, fire extinguisher shall be provided on the vehicle, which shall also be inspected and replaced periodically; in the meantime, get familiar with the using method of fire extinguisher, so as to be prepared for any accident occurred.
7. During vehicle maintenance, disconnect the negative wire of accumulator;
8. Please use the cigarette lighter provided on this vehicle, do not use inverter to take electricity from cigarette lighter.

4.1 Maintenance Instructions

Safety Precautions

To avoid potential hazards, read this chapter before your operation, and make sure you have the tools and skills required.

- Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the engine is off, and the parking brake is applied.
- To clean components, use a commercially available degreaser or components cleaner, not gasoline.
- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel-related parts.
- Wear goggle and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.

Warning

Driving after incorrect vehicle maintenance or before solving safety related vehicle failures may cause traffic accident and lead to severe injury or death.

Potential Vehicle Hazards

- Carbon Monoxide: Carbon Monoxide from engine exhaust is poisonous. Be sure there is adequate ventilation whenever you operate the engine.
- Scald: the engine and exhaust system will produce high temperature when working, which is very easy to cause scald; therefore, the components cannot be touched until the engine has been stopped for at least 30 minutes, and the engine and exhaust system cool down.

Note

Some of the most important safety precautions are given in this chapter. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can be raised in performing maintenance.

4.2 Interior Maintenance

Cleaning and Maintaining the Instrument and Plastic Parts

Clean the surfaces of the instrument and plastic parts with a clean soft cloth and fresh water.

Otherwise, use the special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent to clean them.

Note

Cleaning agents with solvent may damage the plastic parts.

Warning

Do not use any driver's compartment spray or cleaning agent with solvent to clean the surfaces of instrument panel and airbag module. Doing so could loosen the surfaces and trigger the airbags, resulting in serious personal injury.

Cleaning and Maintaining the Carpet

Please frequently clean dust on the carpet with the vacuum cleaner.

Periodically rinse the carpet with the foam-type cleaner to keep it clean.

Note

Follow the instructions of the cleaner to do the cleaning work.

Warning

It is strictly forbidden to add foam-type cleaner into water. Make sure that the carpet is dry.

Cleaning and Maintaining the Leather (Apply to Certain Models)

- Vacuum dirt and dust from the leather frequently.
- Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with clear water.
- Then, buff it with a clean, dry cloth.
- If further cleaning is needed, use special saddle soap or detergent to clean it.

Note

After you wipe the leather using the special detergent, wipe it dry as soon as possible with a soft, dry cloth.

Warning

Do not place soft cloth soaked with decontaminant on any interior parts for a long time. Not doing so can cause discoloration or breakage to the resin or fiber of the interior braided fabrics.

Cleaning and Maintaining the Seat Belts

– Pull out each belt slowly and hold it there.
– Use a soft brush and neutral soap water to clean dirt.
– Let the seat belts dry completely before retracting them.

Note

- Do not retract the seat belts until they are completely dry. Otherwise, the seat belt retractor may be damaged.
- You should check the condition of your seat belts regularly to keep them clean and ensure their proper operation.

Warning

- If the safety belt base, connecting device, retracting mechanism or buckle damages, come to our vehicle sales and service shop for replacement as soon as possible.
- Whether damage or not, be sure to replace the seat belts after a collision.
- When replacing the belt, be sure to use a new belt of the same model and structure.
- Prevent foreign matters or liquids from entering the seat belt buckles. Failure to do so can cause the buckles and the belts to function abnormally.
- Do not remove or modify the belts in any case by yourself.
- Do not use chemical cleaning agents to clean the seat belts to avoid damaging the seat belt webbing, thus affecting its function.

The Cleanness and Replacement of Filters

The vehicle is equipped with air filter, air conditioner filter, oil filter and fuel filter, which play a role in filtering gas or oil. If the filter is too dirty or blocked, the normal work of the corresponding system will be influenced, so it is recommended that the user should go to 4S Shop of the Company periodically to clean or replace the filter according to the provisions of Warranty Manual.

4.3 Exterior Maintenance

Vehicle Washing

Frequent washing helps preserve vehicle's appearance.

Wash your vehicle in a shady area, not in direct sunlight. If the vehicle is exposed to the sun for a long time,wait unitl the exterior cools down before washing.

Follow the instructions of the operator when using an automatic car washer.

Warning

Close the Start switch before washing the vehicle.

Note

- Although the body paint is strong enough to withstand the flushing from the automatic car washer, pay attention to its impact on the paint. The washer structure, used cleaner, filtration state of fresh water, and type of wax solvent which do not meet the specified requirements are likely to cause damage to the paint.
- After washing, due to dampened or even frozen brakes, the braking efficiency will be reduced to some extent. After washing, try to avoid sudden brake to avoid traffic accidents.

Manual Washing

– Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with clean water to remove floating dust.
– Prepare a bucket of water and mix the water with special washing cleaner.
– Wash the vehicle gently by using a soft cloth, sponge or bristle brush and and rinse it from top to bottom frequently.
– Finally, rinse the wheels, doorsills and others. Remember to replace the sponge or soft cloth during washing.
– After finishing, rinse the vehicle thoroughly with a plenty of water.
– Then, dry it with a chamois or soft towel.

Note

If there is asphalt or other dirts on the vehicle's body, special cleaner needs to be used to clean them. Then rinse the body with water to avoid damage to the finish. As drying the vehicle, check it for chips and scratches. Once found, go to our vehicle sales and service shop for repair.

Extra care must be paid when washing the vehicle with a high-pressure washer. Follow the instructions and requirements of the high-pressure washer when doing so. Pay particular attention to the operating pressure and the spray rinsing distance.

Warning

Water, ice and anti-skid salt in the Brake system can cause reaction retardation of the brakes, resulting in a longer braking distance which is likely to lead to accidents.

- If your vehicle has just been washed, try to avoid emergency braking.
- Press the brake pedal gently to test the brake before driving.
- Try to avoid braking before removing the ice or antiskid salt attached to the brake. Apply the brake with extra care to avoid traffic accidents.

Warning

- Be sure to read and follow the relevant information and warnings before using.
- During manual washing, pay attention to personal safety and beware of angular parts at the underbody to avoid being scratched.
- When washing, pay special attention to the underbody and the inside of the wheel cover and other parts. Protect your hands and arms from being injured by sharp parts.
- Do not spray water into the engine compartment directly when washing your vehicle. Doing so can affect the service life of the components in the engine compartment.

Waxing

Regular waxing helps protect your vehicle body's paint and keep the body bright and clean. In order to protect body paint surface, it is suggested to apply high quality hard wax every year to protect paint surface from being corroded due to poor environment and withstand light mechanical scratch.

The waxing operation must be executed after the surface of finished automobile is wiped dry. High quality paint protective wax shall be used. In general, there are two types of products:

- Body wax: A wax coats the finish and protects it from the damage by exposure to sunlight, air pollution, and other poor external environment. It always apply to new cars.

Note

Do not polish your vehicle in a dusty environment.

- Polishing wax: Polishing wax can restore the luster of oxidized paint or the paint without gloss. They are mainly used to restore the luster to paint.

Cleaning and Maintaining the External Plastic Parts

In general, clean the external plastic parts with fresh water, soft cloth and bristle brush. If further cleaning is needed, use the special solvent-free plastic cleaning agent recommended by GAC MOTOR.

Note

Do not use any cleaning agent with solvent to clean the plastic parts. Doing so can cause damage to the plastic parts.

Cleaning the Windows and Exterior Rear-View Mirror

Clean the window glass and rear-view mirrors with alcoholic glass cleaner, and then dry glass surface with a clean, lint-free, soft cloth or chamois towel.

Note

Do not wipe off the glass of the windows and rear-view mirrors with the chamois towel which has been used to clean the paint. The residual wax on the chamois towel can blur the glass surface.

If there is residual rubber, grease and silicone on the glass, remove it using the special window cleaner or silicone cleaner.

After maintaining the car body surface, the wax remaining on the glass shall be removed by special cleanser and cleaning cloth. So as to prevent scratching the windscreen wiper.

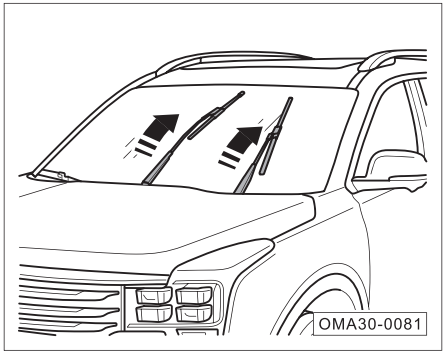
Remove the snows on the windows and rear-view mirrors using a bristle brush.

Remove ice using the special deicing spray. You can also remove the ice using the scraper with extra care to avoid damage to the components. Be sure to scrape the ice in the same direction.

Note

- Do not scrape the ice back and forth.
- Do not use warm or hot water to remove the ice and snow on the windows and rear-view mirrors. Doing so may crack the glass.

Cleaning the Front Wiper Blades



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” gear, and then switch to “OFF” gear.
– Within 10s after finishing the last step, move the combination switch of windscreen wiper to “MIST” gear, by this time, the wiper arm will move for half circle.
– Lift the wiper arm and carefully remove the dust and dirt from the wiper blade with a soft cloth.
– After finishing cleaning, lower the wiper arm gently down against the windshield.
– Switch the Start switch to “ON” gear, the wiper arm will return automatically.

Note

- When lifting the wiper arm, grasp the hard support by hand, and do not grasp soft wiper blade.
- Carefully lower the wiper arm to prevent it from striking the windscreen due to instantaneous drop.

Note

- Replace the damaged blade in time.
- A new wiper blade surface is coated with a layer of graphite which can make the wiper blade move smoothly without scratching noise. Damaged graphite layer may increase scratching noises. Be sure to repair it timely.
- Cleaner with solvent, hard sponge and sharp tools will damage the graphite layer.
- In winter or cold weather, check whether the wiper blades are frozen with the windshield before operating them. If so, remove the ice from the wiper blades firstly. Failure to do so may cause damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor.

Maintaining the Sealing Strips

Frequent and appropriate protection of the rubber sealing strips for the doors, windows and other parts can maintain their flexibility and prolong their service life. By doing so can also improve the leakproofness, making it easier to open doors and reducing the close sound. And it's difficult to get frozen in winter.

When maintaining the sealing strip, use soft cloth to remove the surface dust and dirt. Apply the special protective agent to the rubber sealing strips regularly.

Cleaning and Maintaining the Wheels

Regular wheel maintenance can keep it artistic, and periodically removing the anti-skid salt and brake lining abrasive dust on the wheel can maintain the surface smoothness of the wheel and increase the service life. In order to protect your car, it is suggested that the following operations should be executed periodically:

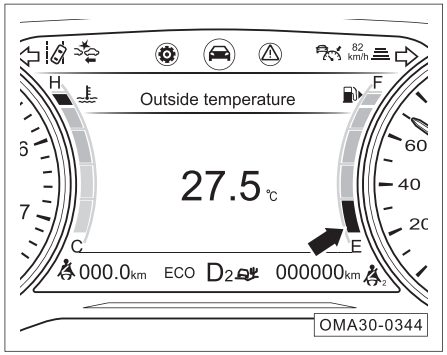
- Use acid-free cleanser to remove the anti-skid salt and brake lining abrasive dust on the wheel every two weeks.
- Wax the alloy wheels with high-quality hard wax every three months.

Note

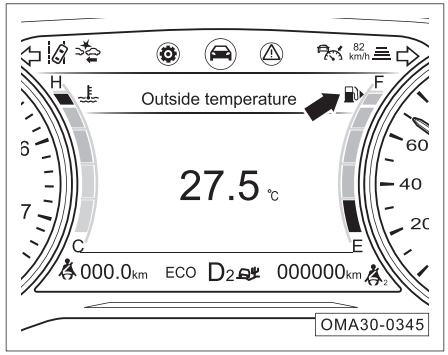
- Be sure to clean the alloy wheels with acid-free cleaner.
- Do not clean the wheels surface with the vehicle polishing agent or other grinding agents.
- If the protective layer of the wheels is damaged, be sure to repair it in time.
- The high-pressure washer may cause permanent visible or invisible damage to the wheels, resulting serious injury or death.
- Never spray the tires with the cluster nozzles. Even a short-time long-distance cleaning may cause damage to the tires, causing traffic accidents.

4.4 Checking and Adding Fluids

4.4.1 Fuel oil

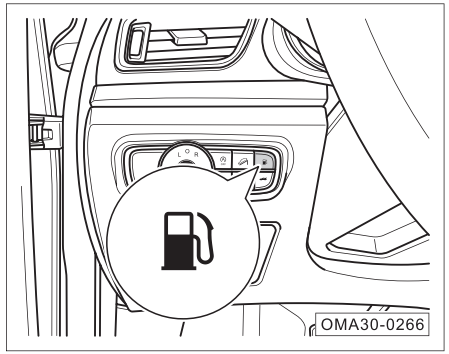


The scale of fuel gauge (see the arrow) will decrease gradually with the decrease of fuel oil during the traveling process.



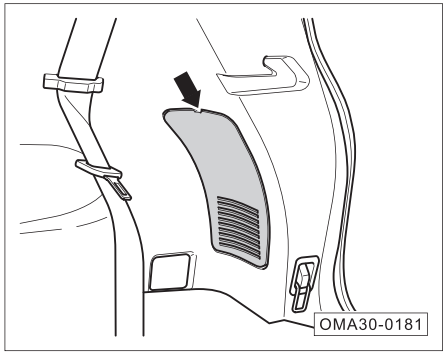
The scale of fuel gauge (see the arrow) will decrease gradually with the decrease of fuel oil during the traveling process.

Filling the Fuel



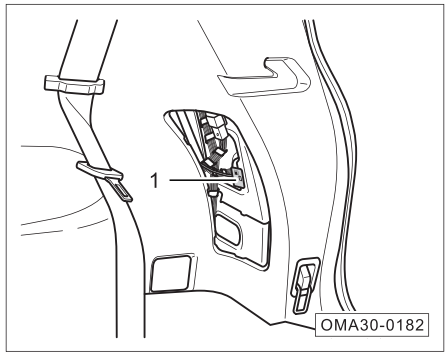
– When the Start switch is on “ACC” gear, long press (≥ 1.5s) the open button of fuel tank cover plate , which will bounce outwards.

Emergency Opening of Fuel Tank Cover Plate

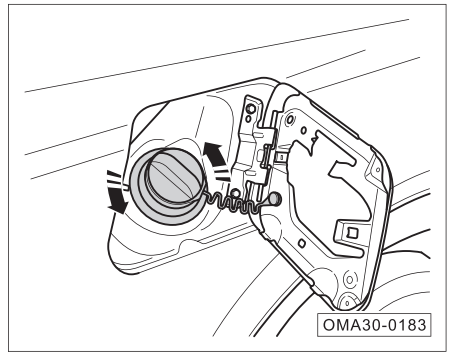


Install an emergency handle of fuel tank cap on the right side of trunk. In special circumstances, the fuel tank cap can be opened from inside:

– Pry the decorative cover at the position indicated by the arrow.



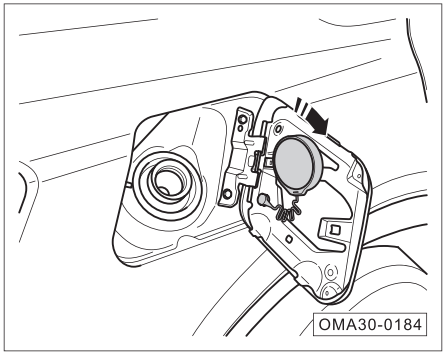
– Pull the Handle (1) to open the fuel tank cap.



– Fully open the fuel tank cover plate, slowly screw out the filler cap anticlockwise, hold the filler cap at the original position for a moment when fully screwing out to allow the fuel tank to release the internal fuel vapor pressure, and then take out the filler cap.

Warning

- When the weather is dry, static electricity is liable to be produced, so that release the static electricity on your body before opening the filler cap to prevent the spark generated by static electricity from igniting the fuel vapor.
- The fuel oil is highly flammable. Therefore, igniting, naked flame or smoking is strictly prohibited when treating the fuel oil.
- Do not let the fuel oil contact skin or clothes. Skin directly contacting fuel oil or inhaling fuel fog will be harmful to health. If fuel oil sticks on the skin negligently, immediately wash with water.



– Hang the filler cap inside the fuel tank cover plate (see the arrow), and start adding the fuel.

- Fuel oil specification: Please refer to the description on the fuel requirement label at the fuel filler door of each vehicle.

– If finishing adding fuel, re-install the filler cap clockwise until you hear three "click" sounds, which indicating the filler cap is fully tightened.

Note

Using fuel oil with lower grade or not meeting the standard may damage the engine or may not satisfy the performance requirements.

Warning

Do not add diesel oil for gasoline engine vehicle. Do not mix diesel oil into gasoline. This will damage the fuel system and engine, and may cause vehicle fire.

4.4.2 Engine Oil

Engine Oil Function

Oil contributes to engine's lubrication, sealing, cooling, anti-corrosion, cleaning, ect.

Engine Oil Specification

High-quality engine oil has been filled into the engine when delivering the vehicle, which can be used throughout the year, except for extreme cold weather.

Check whether the specifications of the oil are applicable to your engine when purchasing.

Hint

- Specification of engine oil: Grade SN or above, the viscosity is Grade SAE 5W-30.
- Engine oil filling amount: 4.7L (including replacing the engine oil filter).

Warning

- Only use the oil applicable to your engine.
- Failure to do so may damage the engine. Beware of accidents.

Oil Pressure Warning Light

After the engine starts, if the warning light is on (please refer to page 58), and meanwhile the system gives out three audible alarms, the combination instrument display screen will also display corresponding text message to prompt or warn the driver. At the moment, immediately turn off the engine, after the engine cools, inspect the engine oil level, and add engine oil if necessary.

If the engine oil level is normal but the warning light still flickers, do not continue driving, nor allow the engine to idle; contact our vehicle sales and service shop as soon as possible to inspect the vehicle.

Warning

Ignoring the oil pressure warning light and the relevant warnings can damage the engine thus causing serious accidents.

Hint

The oil pressure warning light cannot indicate the engine oil level. Be sure to check the oil level regularly. You'd better check the oil level before driving.

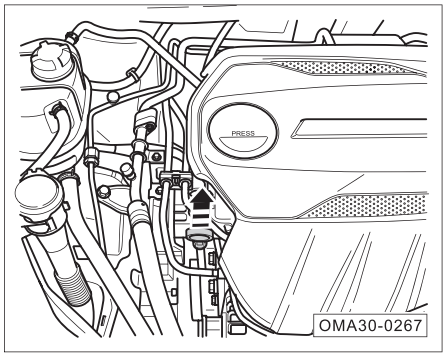
Checking Engine Oil Level

Any engine will consume a certain amount of engine oil. The oil consumption depends on driving mode and vehicle working conditions. Therefore, Oil level must be checked regularly.

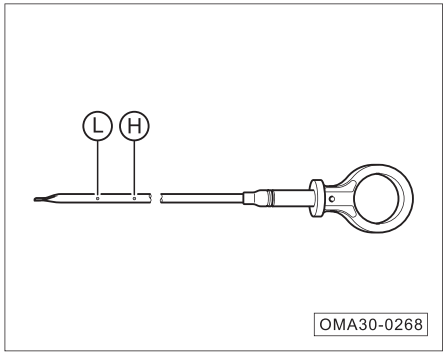
When the vehicle is traveling on the expressway for a long distance in summer, or is traveling with drawbar trailer, or is climbing along the mountain road with the engine operating under severe conditions, the engine oil level shall not exceed the mark of upper limit.

Warning

- Be sure to operate inside the engine compartment with extra care.
- The engine compartment is a high-risk area. Before opening the engine hood, please carefully read and comply with relevant warnings and instructions.



– Park the vehicle on the horizontal road and apply parking braking.
– Close the Start switch.
– Open the engine compartment cover.
– After the engine cools down, pull out the engine oil dipstick in direction of the arrow.



– Wipe off the oil stains on the dipstick with a clean cloth.Then insert the dipstick all the way back into its hole.
– Pull out the engine oil dipstick again, read the measured oil level, and add engine oil according to the oil level (Please refer to page 357).
  - Point H is the engine oil upper limit mark.
  - Point L is the engine oil lower limit mark.
  - The oil level should be between the minimum mark and the maximum mark.

Warning

If the engine oil level should be inspected when the engine is hot, firstly turn off the engine and wait for several minutes until the engine oil fully flows back to the oil sump, and then inspect the engine oil level. When the engine is in cooling condition, immediately check the oil level.

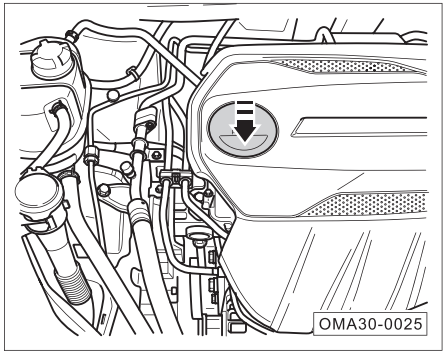
Note

- If the engine oil is insufficient, please timely add a proper amount of engine oil. Otherwise, the engine may be damaged.

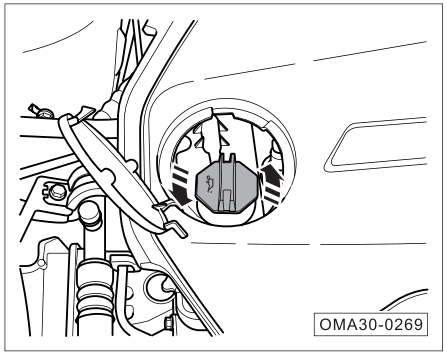
Hint

The shape and color of engine oil dipstick for the vehicle you purchase may be different with those of the engine oil dipstick shown in the figure, but the oil level mark on the engine oil dipstick as shown in the figure applies to the engine oil dipstick of all vehicle models.

Add the Engine Oil.



– Park the vehicle on the horizontal road and apply parking braking.
– Close the Start switch.
– Open the engine compartment cover.
– After the engine cools down, press the engine oil filler cap cover along the direction of arrow to open it.



– Screw out the oil filling cap clockwise in direction of the arrow.
– Fill engine oil into the filler repeatedly by small amount, and pay attention to observe the oil level after each filling (Please refer to page 356).
– When the oil level is close to the upper limit mark, i.e. the engine oil is sufficient, stop adding oil, assemble the filler cap and tighten clockwise.

⚠ Warning

- Engine oil is a type of highly combustible material. Be careful to add the engine oil, do not sprinkle the engine oil onto the scorching hot engine parts or exhaust system piping.
- If too much engine oil is filled, please do not start the engine, and contact our vehicle sales and service shop for treatment. Otherwise, three-way catalytic converter may be damaged.
- After completing the filling, the engine oil filler cap must always be tightened, so as to prevent the engine oil from spilling when the engine is operating, which may cause fire.

Replace Engine Oil

Replace the engine oil as per the intervals specified in the Warranty Manual! The engine oil shall be replaced by our vehicle sales and service shop.

If the vehicle is used under severe conditions, or fuel oil with higher sulfur content is used, or short-distance traveling frequently occurs, or the vehicle will idle for a long time (e.g. taxi), or the vehicle will travel in high dust area, or the vehicle will frequently travel with drawbar trailer, or the vehicle will be used in high and cold area, increase the number of maintenance times or reduce the maintenance period of several maintenance items between periodic maintenances.

Additives in the engine oil may dilute the new oil color. This is normal. There is no need to change the oil in advance.

Warning

Never replace the engine oil by yourself unless you hav e relevant expertise.

- Be sure to operate after the engine cools down, so as to prevent scald by high temperature engine oil.
- To prevent oil from getting into your eyes, be sure to wear goggles when changing the oil.
- When unscrewing the oil drain plug, be sure to place your arm horizontally to prevent the oil from flowing along it.
- If the engine soil splashes on the skin, rinse thoroughly.
- Put the used oil into a special container which is large enough to contain all used oil.
- Do not store the used oil in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning.
- As engine oil is toxic, please first put it on safe place to prevent children from touching it before disposing it.

Note

- No lubricant should be added into engine oil; otherwise, it may damage the engine. Any fault caused by addition of lubricant isn't included in quality guarantee.
- Disposing the used oil is a highly specialized work, requiring relevant expertise and necessary tools. Therefore, a GAC dealer is recommended for such operations.
- Improper disposal of engine oil can be harmful to the environment and water source, so do not discard it in a sewer line or dump it on the ground. In addition, the cost for treating the soil absorbing the waste engine oil is very high.

4.4.3 Coolant

Function of Coolant

The coolant possesses cooling, anti-freezing, and anti-corrosion functions.

Specifications of coolant

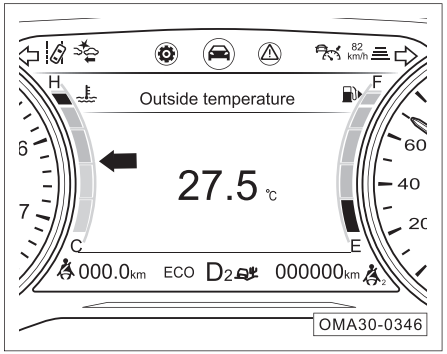
The coolant of this vehicle is made from pure water and coolant additive YA-956.

When delivery, the cooling system of this vehicle has been added with the coolant made from pure water and coolant additive YA-956, which has an anti-freezing ability of -35 , and can prevent corrosion of alloy components of cooling system and limescale generating from the system, and enhance the boiling point of coolant.

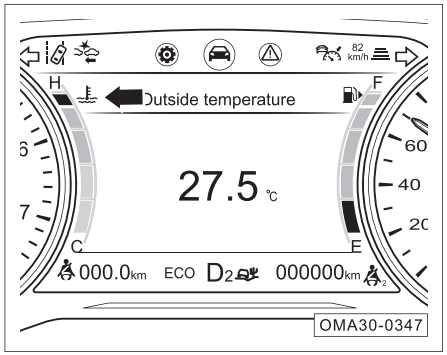
YA-956 concentration of the coolant added shall be not less than 50%, and coolant containing additive shall be used throughout the year regardless of whether anti-freezing is required.

If the anti-freezing ability of coolant needs to be enhanced during severe cold seasons, the proportion of coolant additive can be increased appropriately, but the coolant concentration must not exceed 65%, otherwise the anti-freezing ability of coolant may decrease, thus weakening the cooling effect.

Engine Coolant Temperature Too High



Under normal driving conditions, the scale lighting on the temperature gauge of engine coolant on the instrument cluster shall be approximately at the middle position (see the arrow). When engine runs at heavy load and the ambient temperature is high, the coolant temperature may rise and the scale reading increases.



If the temperature of coolant is too high, the warning light on the combination instrument ( ) (red) (see the arrow) will be on immediately to prompt or warn the driver. At the moment, immediately stop the vehicle and turn off the engine, after the engine cools, inspect the level of coolant.

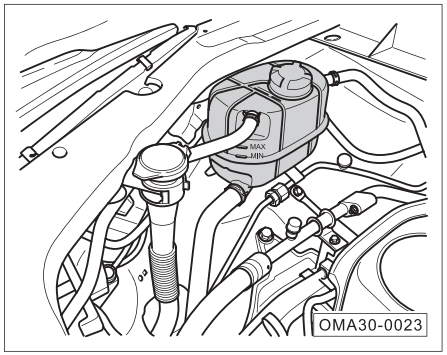
If the coolant level is normal, the system overheating may be caused by the failure of radiation fan. Inspect whether the fuse of radiation fan fuses, and replace the fuse as the case may be (Please refer to page 411).

If the warning light lights again when traveling for a short distance after replace the fuse, immediately stop the vehicle, turn off the engine, and contact our vehicle sales and service shop.

Warning

- Be sure to operate inside the engine compartment with extra care.
- The engine compartment is a high-risk area. Before opening the engine hood, please carefully read and comply with relevant warnings and instructions.
- If it is observed that steam or coolant spills from the engine compartment, do not open the engine hood to avoid scald. Open the engine hood after there is no steam or coolant spilling from the engine compartment.

Check Coolant Level



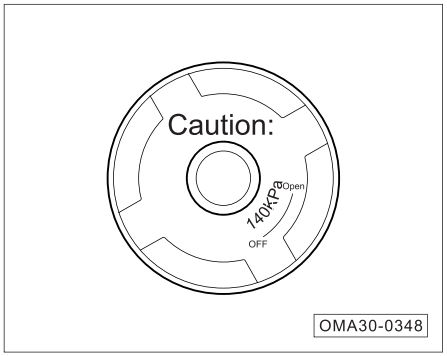
– Park the vehicle on the horizontal road.
– Turn off the engine, and wait until the engine cools down.
– Open the engine hood, and inspect whether the liquid level in the expansion tank is within the scope of marker line on the side. If it is lower than the limit, add the liquid.

- “MAX” refers to the upper limit mark of coolant.
- “MIN” refers to the lower limit mark of coolant.

Add Coolant

Note

- Whether the coolant level is normal or not is crucial to the proper operation of the engine cooling system.
- In order to correctly inspect the coolant level, the vehicle shall be parked on level road and the engine shall be at cold status.



After inspecting the coolant level, if adding is required, the following steps shall be executed:

– Use a large and thick cloth to wrap the expansion tank cover, and carefully screw out anticlockwise.

– Slowly add coolant to make the coolant level reach the scope of marker line on the side of expansion tank.

- Specification of engine coolant: YA-956, -35℃ coolant.

– Install and tighten the expansion tank cover clockwise.

Note

- Please firstly inspect the liquid level before adding the coolant, and get ready according to the inspection requirements.
- When the engine is in warm or hot condition, the cooling system has high pressure. At this moment, never open the coolant expansion tank cover. Doing so may cause serious scalding to you by the overflowing steam.
- Each time when screwing the expansion tank cover, use cloth to wrap the cover to avoid scald.
- Add new coolant only and the discharged coolant can not be reused.

Hint

When the engine is hot, the coolant level may exceed the MAX mark slightly.

Warning

- The coolant must be stored in its original container. Keep both the coolant and the used coolant out of the reach of Children.
- Do not store the coolant in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning.
- Make sure the anti-freezing capability of the coolant is sufficient in cold weather. Add enough YA-956 additive based on the environment temperature. Otherwise, the coolant may be frozen, resulting in break down of the vehicle. In addition, the driver and passengers will be exposed to severe cold due to the disabled heating system.

Note

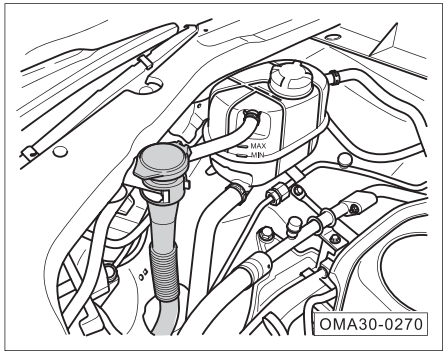
- Do not mix the original coolant additive with other unrecognized coolant. Otherwise, the engine may be seriously damaged.
- If the coolant is needed to be added, only add new coolant. The coolant must meet the provisions of this manual; even if the YA-956 additive cannot be purchased temporarily, other types of additives cannot be added. If necessary, add pure water temporarily. But, to restore the normal concentration, you must add the recommended additive as required as soon as possible.
- If the coolant in the coolant expansion tank discolors, and no coolant of other color mixes, replace the coolant periodically according to the requirements of Warranty Manual.

Note

- Do not add coolant until the engine cools down. After finishing, make sure the coolant level is at or below the MAX mark. Otherwise, the excessive coolant will spill out of the cooling system when the engine becomes hot.
- If the coolant suffers high loss, add cold coolant after the engine cools down; otherwise, the engine may be damaged. If the coolant suffers great loss, leakage failure exists in the cooling system, go to our vehicle sales and service shop to inspect the cooling system as soon as possible, so as to avoid damaging the engine.
- Gather and dispose the used coolant and additives in accordance with the environmental protection laws and regulations.

4.4.4 Windshield Washing Liquid and Wiper Blade

Adding Windshield Washer Fluid



Windshield cleaning device will have its washing liquid supplied by the washing liquid storage tank in the engine compartment. Each time before using the washing liquid, if the washing liquid level is found to be too low, timely add washing liquid into the liquid storage tank.

Pure water is difficult to completely clean the windshield, so that washing liquid additive accepted by the Company must be added into the pure water; please prepare the washing liquid according to the proportion specified in ter packing of additive.

Warning

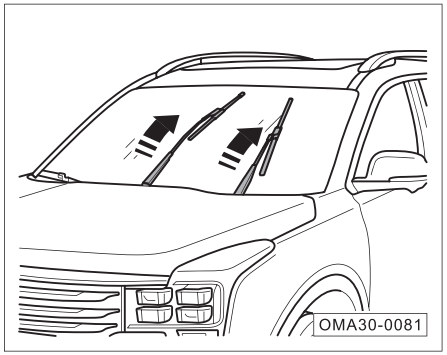
Be sure to operate inside the engine compartment with extra care.

- Carefully Read and fully follow the relevant warnings before operation.
- Windshield washing liquid shall not be added with coolant or any other additive. Otherwise, oil stain may remain on the windshield when cleaning the windshield, which will seriously influence the forward visibility, and is very easy to cause accident.

Note

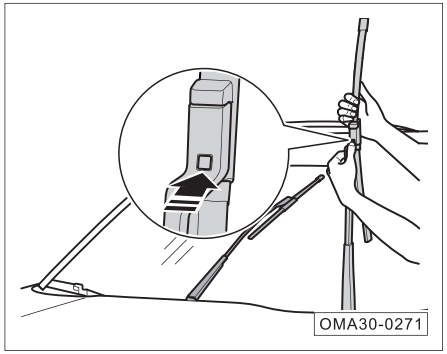
Do not mix the windshield washer fluid with other cleaning agents. Doing so may cause the washer fluid to be decomposed, blocking the windshield washer nozzle.

Replacing Front Windshield Wiper Blade



– Switch the Start switch to “ON” gear, and then switch to “OFF” gear.

– Within 10s after finishing the last step, move the wiper combination switch to MIST gear,;by this time, the wiper arm will move for half circle.



– Raise the wiper arm and press the locking button (see the arrow) to disassemble the wiper blade.
– Slowly lower the wiper arm.
– Place a new wiper blade back to the wiper arm according to reverse steps, and install after hearing the “click” sound.
– Gently lower the wiper arm onto the windscreen.
– Switch the Start switch to “ON” gear, the wiper arm will return automatically.

If wiper blade needs to be replaced, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company for replacement.

Note

- When lifting the wiper arm, grasp the wiper arm with hand, and do not grasp the soft wiper blade.
- Be sure to use new wiper blade with the same length and specification.
- Carefully lower the wiper arm to prevent striking the windscreen due to instantaneous drop.
- Check the condition of the wiper blades regularly, and replace them as required. Timely replace the damaged wiper blade.
- Seriously worn or dirty wiper blade is very easy to scratch the windscreen, and will influence the forward visibility and reduce the driving safety during use.

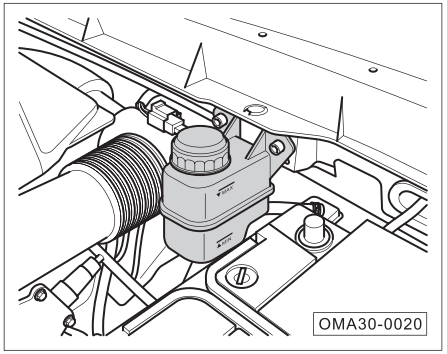
4.4.5 Brake Fluid

Function of Brake Fluid

The brake fluid is used to transfer power in the hydraulic brake system.

Check the brake fluid level regularly as per the Warranty Manual.

Inspect the Brake Fluid Level.



– Check whether the brake fluid level is between the MAX and MIN marks on the side of the reservoir when the engine cools down.

- “MAX” refers to the upper limit mark of brake fluid.
- “MIN” refers to the lower limit mark of brake fluid.
- The brake fluid level should be between the MAX and MIN marks.

– If the liquid level is lower than the “MIN” mark, add the brake fluid.

During the vehicle using process, the system will automatically adjust the brake fluid level due to the wear of braking pad, causing slight decrease of brake fluid level, which is a normal phenomenon and requires no worry.

If the liquid level decreases obviously or decreases below the “MIN” mark within a short time, leakage phenomenon may exist in the braking system. In this case, immediately stop the vehicle (do not continue driving), and contact our vehicle sales and service shop as soon as possible to inspect the braking system.

Hint

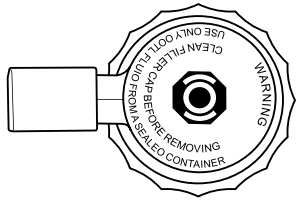
If the brake fluid storage tank is blocked by other parts in the engine compartment, which make it unable to inspect the brake fluid level directly, go to our vehicle sales and service shop to inspect the brake fluid level.

Warning

- Read and follow the warnings before opening the engine hood.
- If the warning light of brake system constantly lights up or lights up during traveling, it may be because the brake fluid level in the tank is too low. To prevent accident, once there is such condition, immediately stop the car. Please contact GAC MOTOR dealer for inspecting the system as soon as possible.

Replace the Brake Fluid

Replace the brake fluid as per the requirements of the Warranty Manual.



OMA30-0272

To ensure the proper function of brake system, it is recommended to have your dealer change the brake fluid which meets the standard.

The brake fluid is water-absorbing. It can absorb moisture from the air around constantly in the process of usage. Excessive moisture content in the brake fluid will corrode the brake system, greatly reduce the boiling point of the brake fluid and reduce the braking effect.

Note

The brake fluid is corrosive to the body paint. If you get brake fluid on the body paint, wipe it off timely.

Hint

Collect and treat the waste brake fluid according to the environmental protection regulations.

Hint

Brake fluid specification: DOT4 synthetic brake fluid.

Total amount of brake fluid: 0.82L.

⚠ Warning

Using waste brake fluid or brake fluid not suitable for this vehicle will greatly decrease the braking effect. Or even cause failure of braking system.

- The brake fluid container is labeled with the specifications. Always use the brake fluid with correct specifications.
- The brake fluid is toxic.
- Do not store the brake fluid in a food container or other non-original container to avoid confusing, resulting in poisoning. Store the brake fluid in its original sealed container and put it in a safe place. Keep the container away from children to avoid poisoning accidents
- Brake fluid must be replaced according to the schedule specified in Warranty Manual, because if the brake fluid stays inside the system for a long time, air lock will be produced inside the pipeline of braking system. In this case, it will reduce brake effect and driving safety, and even cause complete failure of braking system and accidents.

4.4.6Battery

Alert Symbols and Descriptions of Battery Operation

	1. Always wear goggles when operating!
	2. The electrolyte of storage battery belongs to strong corrosive material, so that protective gloves and goggles must be worn when operating!
	3. Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, naked lights and smoke.
	4. Highly explosive mixed gas will be generated when charging the storage battery!
	5. Children must keep away from the electrolyte and vehicle storage battery!

Do not perform any operation on the electrical system unless you are familiar with the operational process and have proper equipment. Otherwise, let your dealer do this.

⚠ Warning

- Before operation, carefully read and comply with the relevant safety warning and instructions about the operation of battery.
- Do not perform operation on the battery unless you have enough expertise.
- Do not open the battery. Beware of chemical burns and battery explosion.
- Damaged or leaked battery isn't allowed to connect. It should be recycled and disposed according to laws and regulations of environmental protection.
- Make sure the workplace is free of open flames, sparks, naked lights and smoke. When operating the cables and electrical equipment, be sure to prevent sparks and static electricity. Do not allow the battery terminals to be short-circuited. Otherwise, high-energy sparks due to short-circuit may injure the operator.

Charging System Warning Light

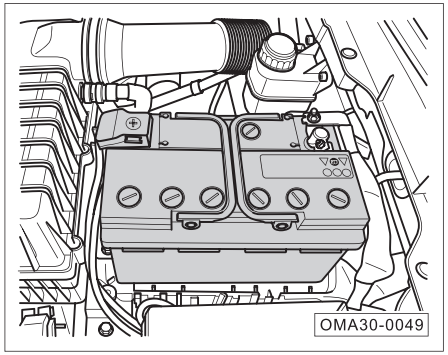
This warning light indicates the generator fault.

Set the start switch at “ON” position, the warning light ( ) of charging system will be on, and shall go out when the engine starts.

If the warning light comes on when the vehicle is moving, it indicates that the generator cannot charge the battery any more. Go to your dealer to have the vehicle checked as soon as possible.

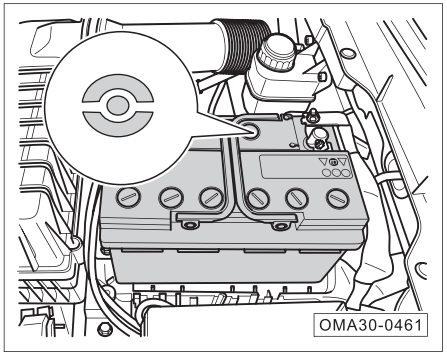
Checking the Battery

Please regularly check the battery capacity when driving for a long distance or in hot areas or using the battery for a long time.



– The accumulator of some vehicles is installed in the accumulator heat shield, so that the outer shield shall be dismantled for inspection.
– Turn over the battery positive pole cover.
– Inspect the storage battery joint and cable connecting conditions, if corrosion or loose phenomenon occurs, go to our vehicle sales and service shop for treatment as soon as possible.

Electric Eye of Accumulator (Apply to Certain Models)



The electric eye will display three different colors:

– If the color of electric eye is blue outside and red inside: the accumulator is of good electric quantity.
– If the color of electric eye is red outside and white inside: the accumulator is of insufficient liquid amount.
– If the color of electric eye is white outside and red inside: the accumulator is of insufficient electric quantity.

Charging Battery and Replacing Battery

If the vehicle always being driven for short distances or stored for a long time, perform more checks for the battery than the specified maintenance intervals.

If the battery is damaged, its capacity will be insufficient, making it difficult to start a car. In this case, we recommend you have your dealer charge or replace the battery.

Charging Battery

Battery charging requires relevant expertise and must be down in controllable environment, so it should be down by your dealer.

If the start switch fails to close after the engine closes, the accumulator will discharge rapidly when using the electric devices on the vehicle.

1. Do not use the electrical equipment for an extended period of time after the engine shutdown.
2. When leaving the vehicle, be sure to close the doors tightly and turn off all the electrical equipment (e.g., lights, etc.)
3. If the engine cannot be started after electric equipment is used, do not continuously start the engine, restart the engine after 5~10min, if the engine still cannot be started, please contact our vehicle sales and service shop for maintenance.

Replace Battery

Your battery is installed properly and safely.

The genuine battery can meet the vehicle maintenance, performance and safety requirements.

Note

- If you replace the battery, please select battery complying with the specified type (Please refer to page 400), otherwise it will affect the normal operation of Start-Stop system. Please go to our vehicle sales and service shop for replacement.
- To avoid damaging your vehicle's electrical system, do not connect the solar panels or battery charger and other power generation equipment to the 12V power outlet or cigarette lighter.
- As the battery contains toxic materials such as sulfuric acid and lead, it must be disposed carefully and don't take it just as a common household waste.

Hint

- Reconnect the storage battery to the electrical system of the finished automobile, and then the warning light of electronic stability program (ESP) will light.
- The warning light shall go out after the vehicle travels at a speed of 15~20km/h for a short distance.

Note

Whenever the battery is disconnected and re-connected, operation needs to be performed on self-learning of the Start/Stop system:

1. Turn off the Start switch and all in-vehicle electrical equipment, and let the vehicle sit for over 4h.
2. Start the vehicle for 3 times, and let it operate continuously for at least 1 minute each time.

4.5 A/C Filter

Check and Clean Air Filter

Periodically inspect or clean the air conditioner filter according to the provisions of Warranty Manual. When driving the vehicle in dusty environment, the air conditioner filter may become very dirty, replacing the air conditioner filter earlier is recommended.

The air conditioner filter is located inside the glove box on the passenger side in front row, when disassembling the air conditioner filter, complex components shall be disassembled; in order to avoid unnecessary components damage, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company to inspect, clean or replace air conditioner filter.

4.6 Replacing Bulbs

Safe Operation Instructions for Replacing the Lights

Check the following lights:

1. LED headlight (low beam and high beam)
2. LED front/rear position lights
3. LED Daytime running lights
4. LED brake light
5. LED turn signal light
6. LED Side turn signal light
7. LED reversing light
8. LED hazard warning indicator light
9. Number plate light
10. LED High brake light
11. LED Front/rear fog light
12. LED Interior light

If you find any bulbs are burned out, replace them as soon as possible. Before replacing the bulb, be sure to check the relevant fuse. The blown fuse can cause the light failure. In addition, you should do the following:

1. Turn the relevant light switch to the OFF position.
2. Move the light combination switch control lever to the middle position.
3. Switch the Start switch to "OFF" gear.

Note

Only replace the burned-out bulb with a new one of the same rating. The bulb specification is marked on the bulb glass or the socket.

The bulb specification in this vehicle (Please refer to page 401).

For example:

LL = long-lasting bulbs, its life is longer than that of a standard bulb.

Blue = blue/white bulbs, matching with the color of gas discharge lights (Xenon).

Procedure of Replacing Bulbs

When replacing a headlight bulb, do not touch the glass with your fingers. Otherwise, the bulb heat may evaporate your fingerprint and make it condense on the bulb reflector, reducing the light illumination.

If you finish, check the light operating condition. After replacing light bulbs, go to our vehicle sales and service shop to inspect the light beam adjustment status of lights.

Hint

Basically the same methods will be used for disassembling and assembling the bulbs on the left and right sides, so that only the disassembling and assembling for one side will be described herein.

Don not touch the bulb glass while removing or installing it.

Warning

Unless you have the expertise about the operational process, safe operation specifications and the tools, have your dealer replace the bulb.

- Turn off the relevant switch and let the bulb cool down before replacing it.
- During operation, pay attention to the sharp components on the headlight housing and the combination taillight housing in engine compartment. Be sure to protect your hands from being scratched.
- Be cautious when operating the high voltage components of gas discharge bulb, the operation shall be correct, otherwise casualty accident may be incurred. Consult our vehicle sales and service shop for the related information.

Replace the Front Combination Headlight

Some vehicles are equipped with all LED front combination headlight, which cannot be replaced separately. Therefore, when the high beam, low beam, turn signal, position light, daytime running light or corner light of the headlight fails, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible to replace the front combination headlight.

Some vehicles are equipped with xenon headlight, the rectifier of which is of high voltage, improper treatment will cause life danger, so that do not operate the xenon headlight or replace the bulb, which can only be done by the professional personnel from the 4S Shop of the Company.

Replacing Front Fog Light

The front fog light uses LED bulb, and the front fog light assembly shall be replaced as a whole, replacing single LED bulb is not allowed.

In case the front fog light fails, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible to replace the front fog light.

Replace Side Turn Signal on Rear-View Mirror

The side turn signal on rear-view mirror uses LED bulb, and the side turn signal assembly on rear-view mirror shall be replaced as a whole, replacing single LED bulb is not allowed.

In case the side turn signal on rear-view mirror fails, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible to replace the side turn signal on rear-view mirror.

Replace the Rear Combination Light

Some vehicles are equipped with all LED rear combination light, which cannot be replaced separately. Therefore, when the rear turn signal, brake light, rear position light or reversing light fails, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible to replace the rear combination light.

Replace the Rear Fog Light Bulb

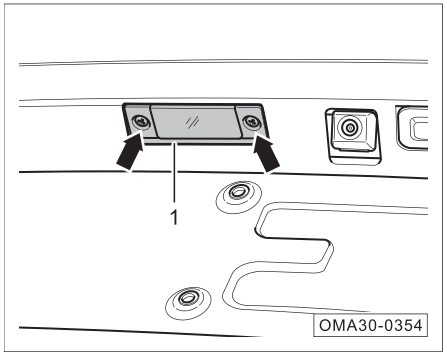
The rear fog light is located on the bottom of rear bumper, disassembling and assembling the bulbs are complex, so that once the rear fog light fails, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible to replace the rear fog light bulb.

Replacing High brake light

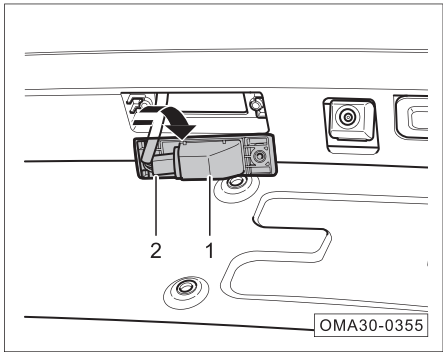
High brake light uses LED bulb, and the high brake light assembly shall be replaced as a whole, replacing single LED bulb is not allowed.

If the high brake light fails, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible to replace the high brake light.

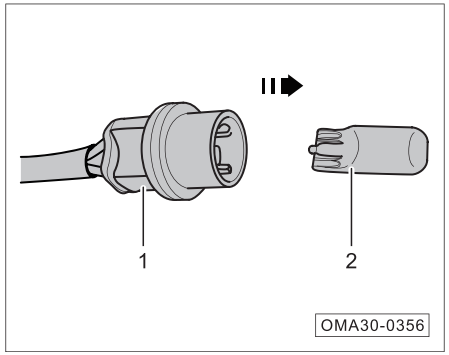
Replacing Number Plate Light Bulb



1. Close the Start switch.
2. Unscrew the fixing screws (see arrows) of left number plate light assembly and take out the assembly 1.



3. Rotate the left number-plate light harness assembly (2) in direction of the arrow to dismantle the lampshade (1).



4. Pull out the left number-plate light bulb (2) from the left number-plate light bulb socket (1) in direction of the arrow.
5. Install in the reverse order.

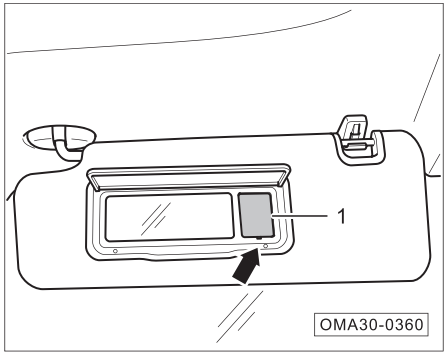
Replace the Front Dome Light Bulb

The front dome light bulb belongs to integrated bulb, which cannot be replaced separately; if the front dome light bulb fails, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible for maintenance.

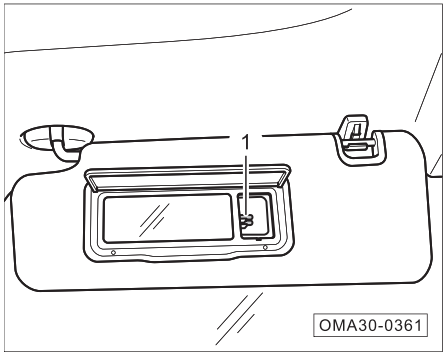
Replace the Bulbs of the Second/ Third Row of Dome Lights

The bulbs of the second/third row of dome lights belong to integrated bulb, which cannot be replaced separately; if the bulbs of the second/third row of dome lights fail, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible for maintenance.

Replace the Bulb of Make-Up Mirror Lighting Lamp

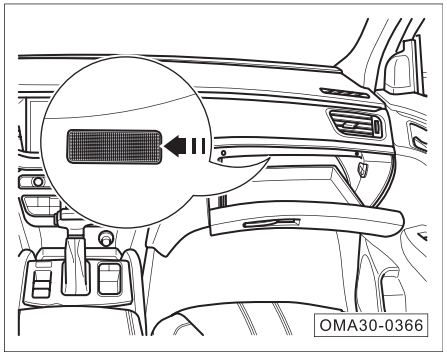


1. Close the Start switch.
2. Open the vanity mirror.
3. Pry the make-up mirror lampshade (1) out carefully at the position indicated by the arrow.

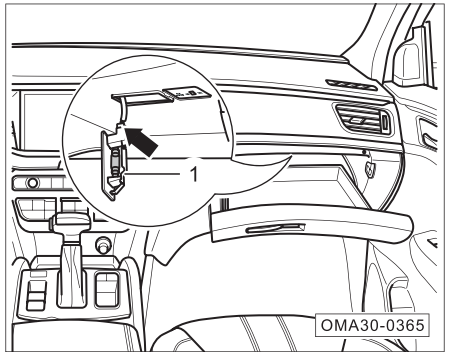


4. Take out the make-up mirror lighting lamp bulb (1).
5. Install in the reverse order.

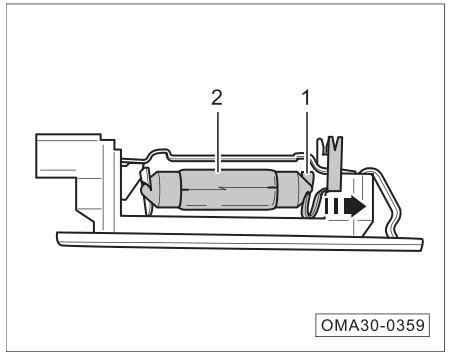
Replacing Glove Box Light



1. Close the Start switch.
2. Open the glove box.
3. Use straight screwdriver to pry downwards in direction of the arrow, and take out the glove box lighting lamp.



4. Disconnect the connecting plug of the glove box lighting lamp (see the arrow), and take down the glove box lighting lamp (1).

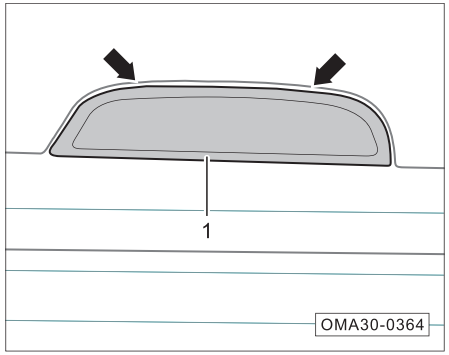


5. Push the metal clamp spring (1) in direction of the arrow, and take out the glove box lighting lamp bulb (2).
6. Install in the reverse order.

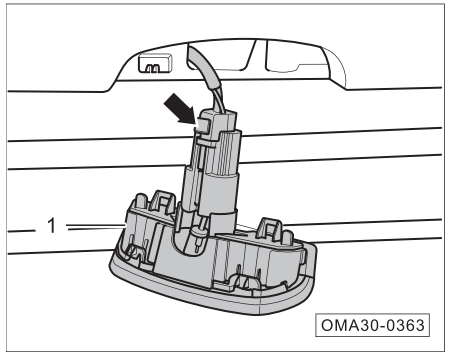
Replacing Ambient Light (Apply to Certain Models)

The instrument panel atmosphere light is located in the instrument panel, and the door atmosphere light is located in the door trim board. Complex components shall be dismantled to replace the instrument panel atmosphere light and door atmosphere light, in order to avoid unnecessary parts damage, if the atmosphere light bulb fails, it is recommended that the user should go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible to replace the atmosphere light.

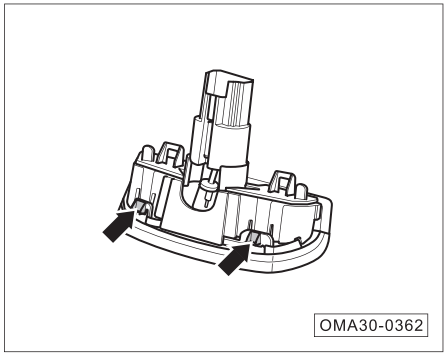
Replace the Door Courtesy Lamp Bulb



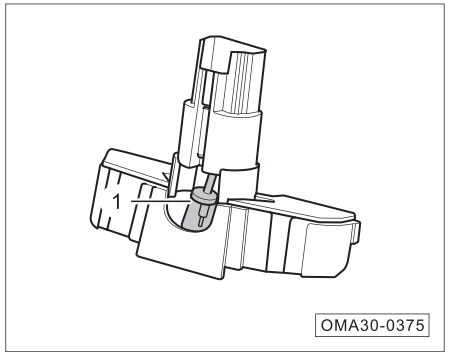
1. Close the Start switch.
2. Pry the door courtesy lamp (1) apart at the position indicated by the arrow.



3. Disconnect the plug at the position indicated by the arrow, and take down the door courtesy lamp (1).

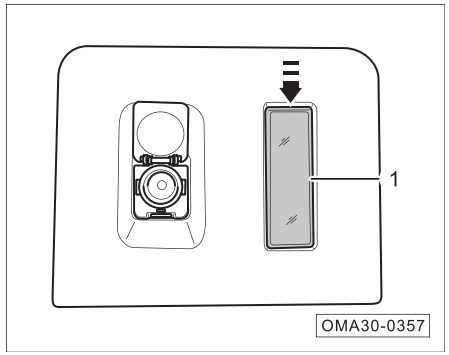


4. Disconnect the plastic clip carefully at the position indicated by the arrow, and dismantle the door courtesy lamp cover.

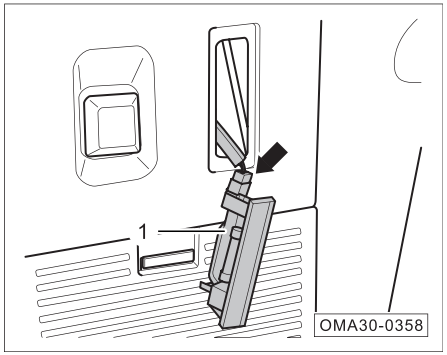


5. Take out the door courtesy lamp bulb (1).
6. Install in the reverse order.

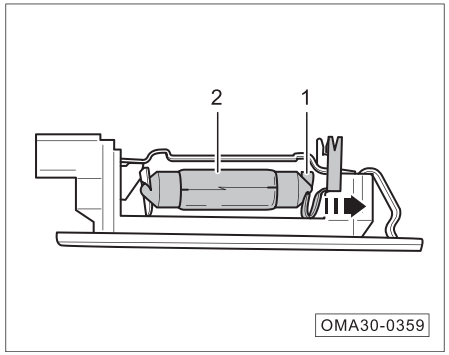
Replacing Trunk Light



1. Close the Start switch.
2. Open hatchback door.
3. Use straight screwdriver to pry the trunk lighting lamp (1) out at the position indicated by the arrow.



4. Disconnect the connecting plug of trunk lighting lamp (see the arrow), and take down the trunk lighting lamp (1).



5. Push the metal clamp spring (1) in direction of the arrow, and take out the trunk lighting lamp bulb (2).
6. Install in the reverse order.

4.7 Wheels

Warning

You cannot get the best adhesion from a new tire during the first 500km, so, drive your vehicle at a moderate speed with care to avoid accidents.

- The tire which has not been run in or has been overworn provides insufficient adhesion, directly affecting the braking effect.
- If the vehicle vibrates abnormally or departures, stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and check the tires for damage.
- If uneven excessive wear of tire is found, go to our vehicle sales and service shop for inspection as soon as possible.

Warning

Tire burst or air leakage during traveling can cause serious traffic accidents.

- Do not drive with damaged tire and wheel, or tire worn to the wear mark of tread pattern. Otherwise, it may cause accidents. Because the damaged tires may explode during traveling and cause traffic accidents and injure persons. Replace such tires and wheels timely.
- Tire pressure must comply with specifications; otherwise, it may cause accidents. If the tire pressure is insuficient, constant high-speed driving will cause tire deflection, resulting in tire overheating which may lead to tire shelling or burst.
- Always prevent the tires from touching chemicals, oil, grease, fuel and brake fluid.

Warning

- Try to avoid using a tire more than six years old. If no other choice, be sure to drive at low speed with extra care.
- Do not use any old wheel and tire with dubious background under any circumstances. Such wheel and tire, which may be already damaged invisibly, will cause the vehicle out of control while driving, resulting in accidents.

Prevention Measures for Wheel Fault

- To cross over curbs or similar obstacles, slow down your vehicle and drive in the vertical direction of the obstacle.
- Prevent the tires from touching grease, oil and fuel.
- Periodically inspect the tire damage state (e.g. tire cut, crack, or bump and other damage).
- Periodically remove sundries embedded in the tire tread.

Notice of Tire Storage

- Make a mark on the tire to indicate the direction of rotation before removing the tire. Re-install the tire according to the mark to keep the direction of rotation of the wheel and ensure the dynamic balance state unchanged.
- Store the removed wheel and tire in a cool and dry place. It's better to store them in a shaded place without direct sunlight.
- Tires which have not been installed on the wheels should be stored upright.

New Tires and Wheels

Carefully select new tire and wheel.

Please use tires of same structural form and size (rolling circumference) on all four wheels, the tire pattern shall be of same specification as far as possible.

Try not to replace one tire only, at least the two tires on the same axle shall be replaced simultaneously.

Do not use any tire whose effective size exceeds the standard approved by our Company.

The tire and wheel combination from our Company is recommended to be installed and used.

Specifications of Rims and Tires

Rim:

7J×18

7.5J×19(optional)

Tire:

235/60R18

245/55 R19 (Optional)

Spare Tire:

Full-size tire

Hint

The tire information label is located below the B-pillar on the driver's side. Select the rims and tires based on the recommended size and type on the information label.

Summer Tire

The tread depth shall be not less than 3mm.

A very high risk of water skiing exists when the tread depth is less than 3mm.

Winter Tire

Winter tire can improve the driving performance of vehicle on snow and ice covered road.

- Winter tire shall be used on all four wheels.
- Only winter tire allowable for this vehicle can be used.
- It should be noted that the maximum speed applicable to winter tire is relatively low.
- It should be noted that sufficient tread depth shall be reserved on the tread of winter tire (which shall be not less than 4mm, otherwise the winter applicability will be restricted).
- After installing the tire, inspect the inflation pressure of the tire.

Warning

- The winter and summer tires are designed according to the traveling conditions on their respective typical lanes under corresponding season conditions. Winter tire is recommended in winter. At low temperature, the adaptability of summer tire is obviously poor, and it may lose adhesive force and braking capacity.
- Under severe cold conditions, if summer tire is used, crack may appear on the tire, which will damage the tire completely, and cause excessive tire noise and out of balance.

Hidden Damage

The damage of tire and rim is often invisible. If abnormal vibration or deflection occurs when the vehicle is traveling, the tire may be damaged. If you are suspicious of tire damage, be sure to decrease the speed immediately. Stop the vehicle and inspect the tire damage condition. If the damage is unable to perceive from outside, slow down and continue driving, and go to the 4S Shop of the Company as soon as possible to inspect the tire.

Tire marked with Rolling Direction

Some tires with rolling direction have an arrow mark on their sides. This rolling direction must be followed when using the tire. This guarantees that the travel performances of the tire are optimized in terms of preventing waterskiing phenomenon, enhancing adhesive ability, reducing traveling noise, and extending the friction durability.

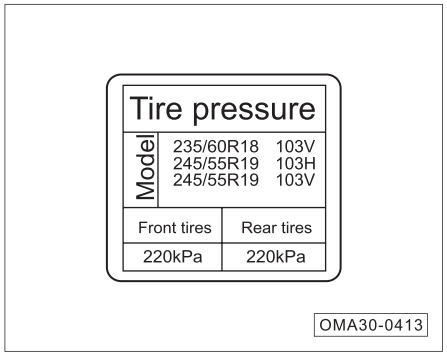
Tire Pressure

Unless the vehicle drove several kilometers at low speed in the past 3 hours, can the tire pressure be checked and adjusted. While the friction and deflection deformation during traveling cause the tire temperature rise and air expansion, resulting in inaccurate inspection of tire pressure, so check the tire pressure when they are cold.

The tire pressure described in this manual is based on the tire pressure in summer and winter under cold condition. The hot tire pressure will be higher than the cold tire pressure. If the cold tire pressure meets the specification, do not let air out when the tire becomes hot. Otherwise, the tire pressure will be insuficient, resulting in tire burst during moving.

Whether the tire pressure is normal or not is crucial for the vehicle moving at high speed. Therefore, check the tire pressure before refueling and long-distance driving. The pressure in the spare tire and the emergency spare tire shall be kept at the maximum pressure specified by your vehicle.

Checking Tire Pressure



The standard pressure data of the original tires are also given on the tire information label on the B-pillar on the driver's side.

– Look up the data label to find out tire pressure suitable for this car (pressure listed is suitable for tires in summer and winter).
– Unscrew the protective cap of the valve stem (If the protective cap is lost, be sure to re-install a new one).
– Install the tire pressure gauge to the valve stem.
– Check the tier pressure when tires are cold. When the temperature arises, the pressure is a little bit higher than specification. But no need to reduce tire pressure.
– Adjust the tire pressure according to the vehicle's load.
– Remember to check the pressure of spare tire or emergency tire at the same time.
– Re-install and tighten the protective cap of the valve stem.

Hint

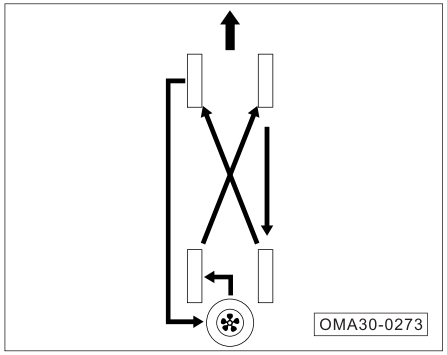
For some models, the cluster screen can display current tire pressure.

Warning

- Improper tire pressure may cause tire burst, resulting in accidents, personal injury or even death.
- Check the tire pressure once a month at least and before long-distance driving. Make sure the tire pressure meets the specification to avoid accidents.
- Insufficient tire pressure will exacerbate tire deflection, resulting in tire overheating which may lead to tire shelling and burst.
- Both underinflated tires and overinflated tires may cause early wear, and adversely reduce vehicle's handling and stability.

Tire Service Life

The service life of the tires depends on tire pressure, driving habits and tire assembly.

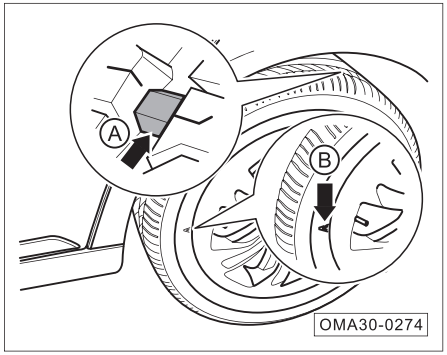


If the front tires wear more seriously than the rear tires do, it's recommended to change the tires positions shown in the figure, thereby making all tires have the similar same service life.

Warning

If the vehicle is equipped with tire pressure monitoring system, the tire change or replacement shall be operated in our vehicle sales and service shop.

Tread Wear Marks



The raised “tread wear indication mark” (see arrow A) is 1.6mm high, if the worn tread pattern is of the same height with such raised mark, the tire cannot be used safely, and must be replaced immediately.

Arrow B is the pattern of external circumference, which is used for directing the position of “tread wear indication mark” raised on the bottom of tire tread pattern groove.

Note

Sudden turning, acceleration and emergency braking can cause tires to wear out faster. Try to avoid the above driving models.

Wheel Balance

The wheels of a new vehicle have been balanced, however, during the running process, the wheels may be out of balance due to various influences, which can be perceived from the shaking of steering mechanism.

The imbalance of wheel will cause excessive wear of steering system, wheel suspension mechanism and tire, so that the wheel shall be rebalanced.

In addition, after installing new tire or repairing the tire, the wheel shall also be rebalanced.

Incorrect Wheel Alignment

The misalignment of wheels will cause uneven excessive wear of tire, and affect the traveling safety; if uneven excessive wear of tire is found, go to our vehicle sales and service shop to inspect the wheel alignment as soon as possible.

4.8 Tire Chain

When driving on snow or ice road or in other severe environments in winter, the tire wear degree may increase or other failure may occur. The following suggestions shall be observed in order to reduce the winter failure:

- When driving in deep snow, it is necessary to install tire chain. If a tire chain is to be installed, equivalent product with its size and type conforming to the wheel tire shall be selected. Otherwise, the vehicle performance and safety will be adversely affected. High risk exists for speeding, emergency acceleration, emergency braking and emergency steering.
- When decelerating, make the best of the braking function of engine. Emergency braking on road with snow or ice will cause vehicle drifting or slipping. Keep a safe distance with the front vehicle, slightly tread the brake pedal, note that the tire chain installed can provide certain force of friction but cannot prevent the occurrence of sideslip.

Hint

Different countries and regions have different laws and regulations on tire chain, which shall be referenced before assembling the tire chain. Do not install tire chain without understanding the laws and regulations of a country or region, which may restrict the use of tire chain.

Note

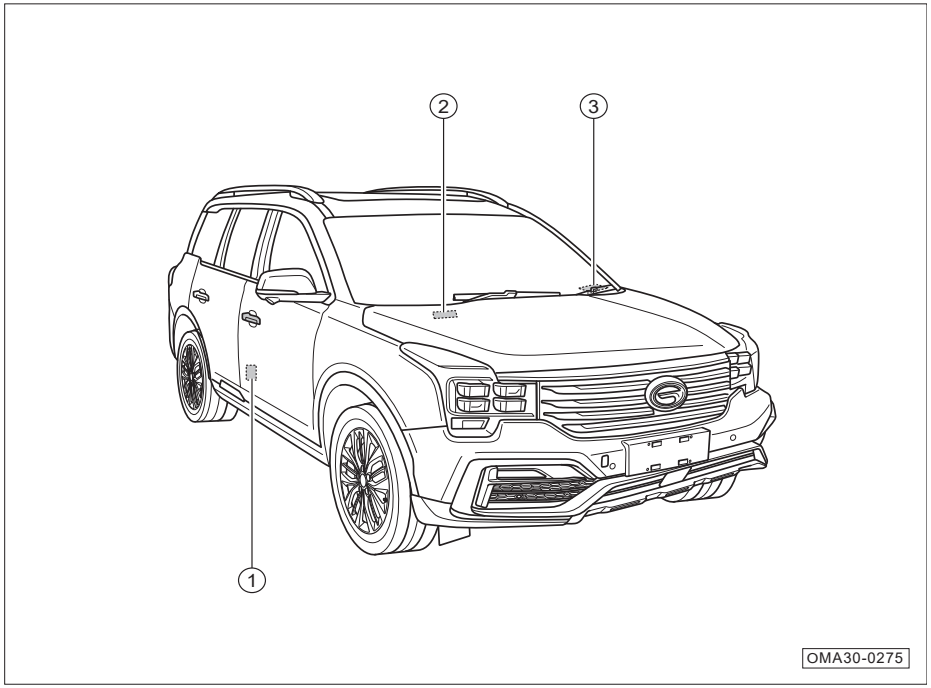
If tire chain is to be installed, confirm the size of tire chain is equal to the size of tire and conform to the loading radial pattern. The size and type of tire chain shall conform to the standard tire of the vehicle. Otherwise, the driving safety and maneuverability of the vehicle will be adversely affected.

Installing tire chain on all tires shall guarantee the balanced driving under various weather conditions. Keep in mind that the vehicle may be short of power after being installed with tire chain. Drive with care even if the road condition is good. The driving speed shall not exceed the specified speed for tire chain, nor exceed 50km/h, whichever is smaller.

4.9 Maintenance Instructions for Car Body Anti-Theft

Normal use requires no maintenance, contact our vehicle sales and service shop when problem occurs.

5.1 Identification Numbers



The location of the identification code (VIN code) is shown in the figure:

① Identification code (VIN code): On the nameplate of the automotive B-Pillar.

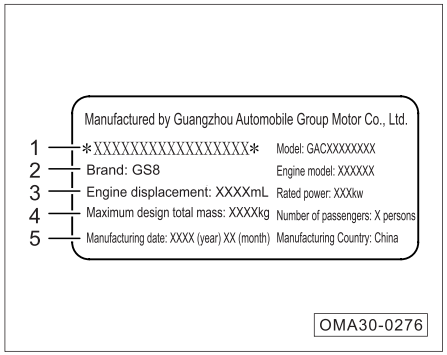
② Identification code (VIN code): On the baffle plate of the front cabin

③ Identification code (VIN code): On the left side of the instrument panel

i Reminder

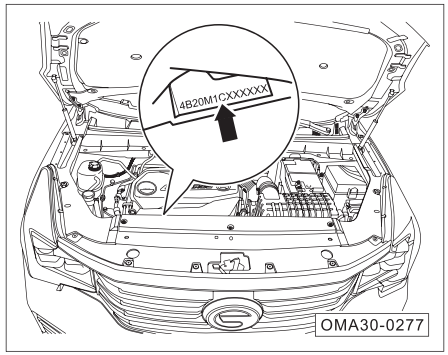
- The location indication and number of the identification codes (VIN code) may be incomplete, please refer to the ones on the rear car.

Vehicle Nameplate



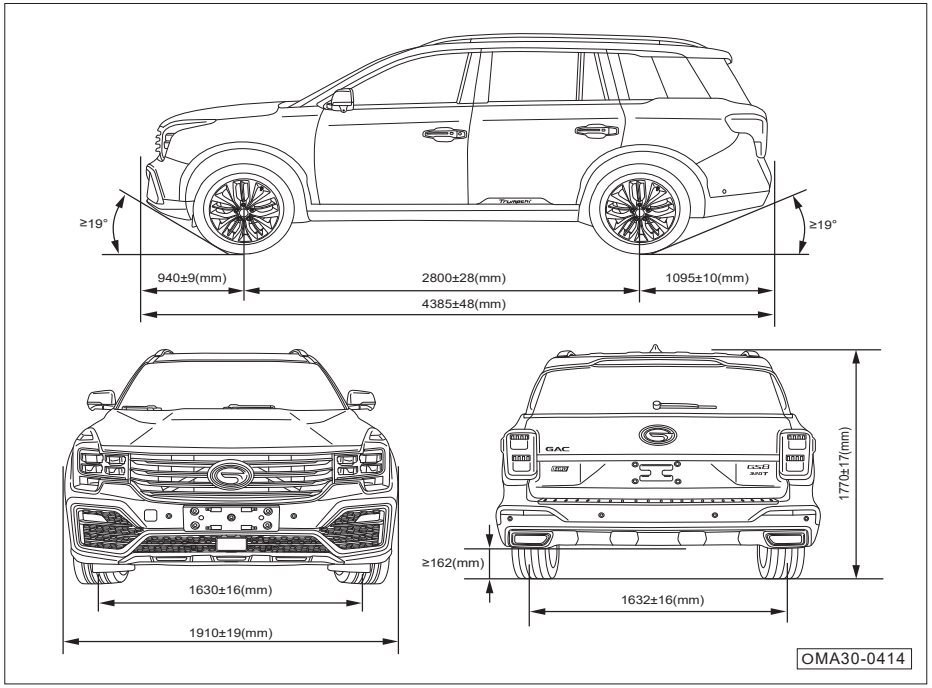
1. VIN, Model
2. Brand, Engine Model
3. Engine displacement, Rated power
4. Total mass, Occupant capacity
5. Manufacturing date and place

Engine No.



Engine number-arrow-located in the engine cylinder block (behind the engine).

5.2 Vehicle Parameters



Dimension

Item		Parameters	
		Numerical Value	Unit
Total length		4385±48	mm
Total width		1910±19	mm
Total height		1770±17	mm
Wheelbase		2800±28	mm
Tread	Front wheel	1630±16	mm
	Rear wheel	1632±16	mm
Front overhang		940±9	mm
Rear overhang		1095±10	mm
Minimum ground clearance (full load)		≥162	mm
Approach angle (full load)		≥19.0	°
Departure angle (full load)		≥19.0	°

5. Technical data

Quality

Model	Complete Vehicle Kerb Mass (kg)			Max. Total Mass (kg)		
	Curb weight	Front axle load	Rear axle load	Max. total mass	Front axle load	Rear axle load
GAC6480J2F5, GAC6480J2F5A	1870±56	1066±32	804±24	2515	1233	1282
GAC6480J2F5B, GAC6480J2F5C	1990±59	1124±33	866±26			

Integrated parameters

Item	Corresponding Vehicle Model Parameters		Unit
	GAC6480J2F5, GAC6480J2F5A	GAC6480J2F5B, GAC6480J2F5C	
Number of occupants	7		Person
Minimum turning diameter	≤11.8		m
Maximum gradeability	≥35	≥40	%
0km/h~100km/h accelerating time	≤11.5	≤12.0	S
Maximum speed	≥185		km/h
Fuel consumption under urban conditions	Start-stop: ≤11.4; Not start-stop: ≤12.3	Start-stop: ≤11.8; Not start-stop: ≤12.5	L/100km
Fuel consumption under suburb conditions	Start-stop: ≤7.3; Not start-stop: ≤7.3	Start-stop: ≤7.9; Not start-stop: ≤8.0	L/100km
Fuel consumption under comprehensive conditions	Start-stop: ≤8.8; Not start-stop: ≤9.1	Start-stop: ≤9.3; Not start-stop: ≤9.6	L/100km

Engine Parameters

Model	4B20M1
Layout pattern	Front-transverse mounted
Type	Para obtener más detalles, consulte la etiqueta de requisitos de combustible en el puerto de llenado real de cada modelo.
Number of cylinders	4
Ignition order	1—3—4—2
Cylinder diameter (mm)	83
Stroke (mm)	92
Displacement (ml)	1991
Compression ratio	9.6:1
Rated power/RPM (kW/(r/min))	148/5200
Maximum net power/RPM (kW/(r/min))	140/5200
Maximum torque/RPM (N•m/(r/min))	320/1750~4000
Maximum net torque/RPM (N•m/(r/min))	300/1750~4000
Idling stabilization RPM (r/min)	700±50

5. Technical data

Oil Specification and Capacity

Item	Specifications	Volume	
Fuel oil	Please refer to the label on the port Vehicle refueling really	–	66 L
Engine Coolant[1)]	YA-956, -35℃ coolant	–	10.18 L
Engine oil	Engine oil specification: Grade SN or above Viscosity of engine oil: SAE5W-30	Replace (including filter)2)	4.7 L
Automatic transmission ATF oil	AW-1	–	6.6 L
Power takeoff gear oil (four-wheel drive vehicle)	SHELL HD AXLE 75W-90	–	0.45 L
Rear difference reducer gear oil (four-wheel drive vehicle)	GL-5 SAE 80W-90	–	0.455 L
Brake fluid	DOT4	–	0.82 L
Windshield washing liquid reservoir	–	–	3.1 L

Note:

1) include the coolant in the storage tank and the coolant remaining in the engine.

2) Exclude the coolant remaining in the engine.

Transmission Parameter

Model	TF-83SC	
Type	Automatic, 6-speed	
Drive	GAC6480J2F5, GAC6480J2F5A	Front-wheel drive
	GAC6480J2F5B, GAC6480J2F5C	Four-wheel drive

Wheels

Rim specification	7J×18 7.5J×19 (Optional)	
Tire specification	235/60R18 245/55 R19 (Optional)	
Tire pressure	Front wheel	Rear wheel
	220 kPa	220 kPa

The standard pressure data of the original tires are also given on the tire information label on the B-pillar of the driver's side.

Suspension

Form	Front	Rear
	McPherson independent type	Multi-connecting rods independent suspension

Steering Gear

Form	Pinion-and-rack mechanical steering gear

Steering Angle Value

Steering angle value	Maximum steering angle of inner wheel	36.6°±2°
	Maximum steering angle of outer wheel	31.06°±2°

Brake

Form	Vacuum servo, X type hydraulic double-loop
Front wheel	Floating caliper, ventilated, disc brakes
Rear wheel	Floating clamp type parking integrated form solid disk brake
Parking brake	Electronic parking brake system (EPB)

5. Technical data

Wheel Dynamic Balancing Value

Name		The residual amount of dynamic unbalance
Front wheel	Inside	⩽8g
	Outside	⩽8g
Rear wheel	Inside	⩽8g
	Outside	⩽8g

Free Travel of Brake Pedal

Name	Parameters
Travel	138±10mm
Free travel	≤10mm

Technical Parameters of Brake Linings

Name	Parameters
Wear limit for front brake lining (excluding its backing plate)	2㎜
Wear limit for rear brake lining (excluding its backing plate)	2㎜

Wheel Alignment Number

Name		Parameters
Front wheel	Toe-in of front wheel	3′ ±5′
	Wheel camber	- 27′ ±45′
	Kingpin caster angle	7°29′ ±45′
	Kingpin inclination angle	13°16′ ±45′
Rear wheel	Toe-in of single wheel	5′ ±5′
	Camber angle	- 1°6′ ±45′

Battery

Model	Version with start-stop: Valta H6 Version without start-stop: Yuasa LN3
Parameters	Version with start-stop: 12V-70Ah Version without start-stop: 12V-75Ah

Fuse

Instrument panel fuse box	(Please refer to page 413)
Fuse box of engine compartment	(Please refer to page 416)

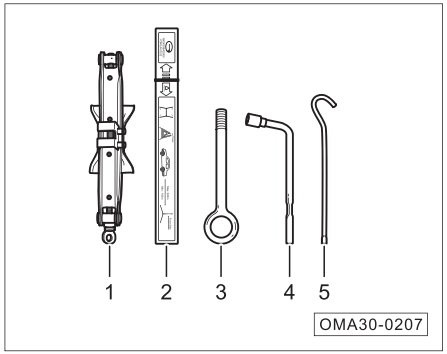
Lights

Low beam	Lens LED	29W
	Reflecting LED	27W
	Xenon HID	33W
Headlights on full beam (LED)		18W
Integrated low beam and high beam (xenon HIDH8)		68W
Front turn signal light (LED)		11W
Daytime running light (LED)		12.5W
Front fog light (LED)		7.2W
Front fog light (H16 Bulb)		19W
Corner light (LED)		5W
Brake light (LED)		19W
High brake light (LED)		4.9W
Rear turn signal light (LED)		2.1W
Rear position light (LED)		8.5W
Rear fog light (Bulb)		21W
Reversing light (LED)		4.2W
Number Plate Light (Bulb)		5W
Front ceiling light (LED)		3.24W
Ceiling lights of the second and third row (LED)		1.62W
Trunk light (W5W)		5W
Vanity mirror light (W5W)		5W
Glove box light (W5W)		5W
Door opening light		1W
Guest greeting light (LED)		1W
Intelligent ambient light	Ambient light of front door interior trim panel	1.2W
	Ambient light of rear door interior trim panel	1.2W
	Ambient light of front door interior buckle	0.0673W
	Ambient light of rear door interior buckle	0.0673W
Ordinary ambient light	Ambient light of front door interior buckle	0.0673W
	Ambient light of rear door interior buckle	0.0673W
	Ambient light of front door interior trim panel	0.0673W
	Ambient light of rear door interior trim panel	0.0673W
	Foot lights on driver side and front passenger side	0.0673W

If the bulb is to be replaced (please refer to page 373), please refer to the configuration of actual vehicle, because some bulbs only apply to certain vehicles!

6.1 Vehicle Tools and Spare Tire

Tool kit



The vehicle tools include the following:

1. Jack
2. Warning triangle
3. Towing hook
4. Removal wrench for wheel bolts
5. Special wrench for jack

Note

After using a jack, recover it to the state before use, and then place the special spanner for jack and the jack into the accompanied tool box.

Warning

- Tighten the wheel bolts according to the specified torque. Failure to do so may cause the bolts become loose when the vehicle is moving, resulting in accidents.
- Be sure to tighten the wheel bolts with the special wrench provided by the vehicle.

Warning

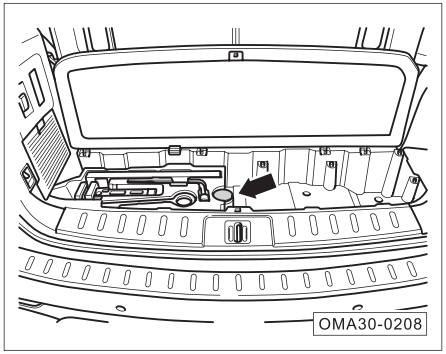
Improper use of the jack can cause serious injury.

- Only use the jack on solid and level ground.
- Only use your jack to jack up your vehicle. Do not use your jack to jack up other weight or vehicle.
- Do not start the engine when using the jack. Doing so can cause accidents.
- To avoid the risk of personal injury, do not put any part of your body under the vehicle when the vehicle is on the jack.
- Place appropriate protective support under the vehicle if the operation has to be down under the vehicle.

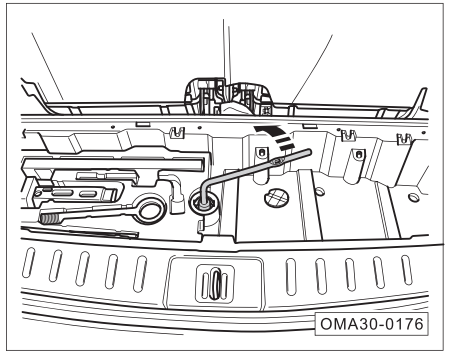
Spare Tire

The spare tire is located on the chassis under the trunk, please take out the spare tire by the following method:

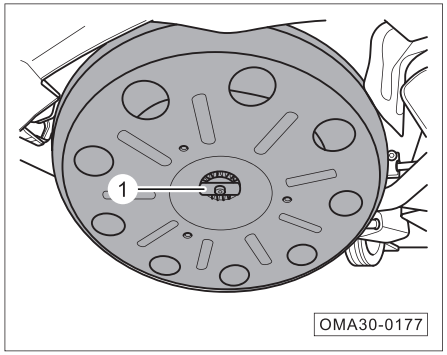
– Open hatchback door.
– Remove the whole trunk carpet.
– Take out the masking curtain.



– Pry the trim cover at the position indicated by the arrow.



– Take out the removal wrench for wheel bolts
– Fix the spanner for disassembling wheel bolts on the bolt.
– Counterclockwise rotate the spanner for disassembling wheel bolts in direction of the arrow until it is unable to rotate; at the moment, the spare tire has completely fallen down to the ground.



– Lift the spare tire, tilt and loosen the lower fixing support (1) of the spare tire.
– Take out spare tire.
– Install in the reverse order.

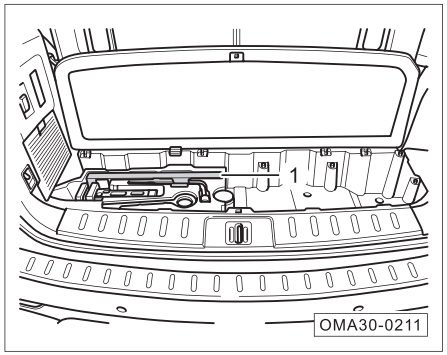
Note

Spare tire has been inflated; check the pressure regularly to ensure the maximum pressure and check it several times a year.

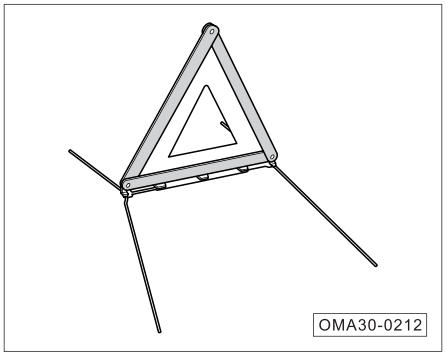
Warning

- Use it according to operating requirements of spare tire to avoid risk.
- It is forbidden to install more than one spare tire.
- Do not use the spare tire which has been damaged or worn down to the wear marks.
- If your spare tire is over six years old, only use it in emergency with extra care.
- After finishing installing the spare tire, check its pressure and make sure it is within the specified range.
- When using the spare tire, the speed shall not exceed 80km/h, avoid rapid acceleration and emergency braking, and re-install standard tire as soon as possible.

6.2 Usage of Warning Triangle



– Open hatchback door.
– Remove the whole trunk carpet.
– Take out the warning triangle (1).



– Unfold the warning triangle.

Note

Use the warning triangles properly following the national laws and regulations.

Location of Placement

General roads		Expressway
Daytime	Night	
≥ 50m	≥ 80m	≥ 150 m

Note

The above data is for reference only. For specific distance please follow the relevant traffic regulations.

6.3 Replacing the Flat Tire

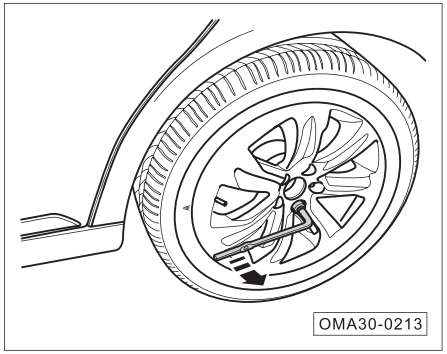
Preparations

– Park the vehicle on firm and level ground far away from traffic lanes.
– Adjust the shift lever to “P” gear.
– Apply the EPB.
– Switch the Start switch to “OFF” gear, and open the hazard warning indicator light.
– Put the warning triangle at the appropriate place behind the vehicle.
– Try to unload the weight in the vehicle. Find appropriate objects to place under the other wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving.
– Take out the driver's tools and the spare tire.

⚠ Warning

- When puncture, air leakage or other problems occur, you must stop the vehicle and replace the tire. Park your vehicle in an area far away from traffic lanes. Turn on the hazard warning indicator lights, and place the warning triangles in position.
- Follow the relevant laws and regulations.
- Park the vehicle on firm and level ground. Place a solid board under the jack as needed.
- All passengers must get out of the vehicle and wait in safe place.

Unscrewing the Wheel Bolts

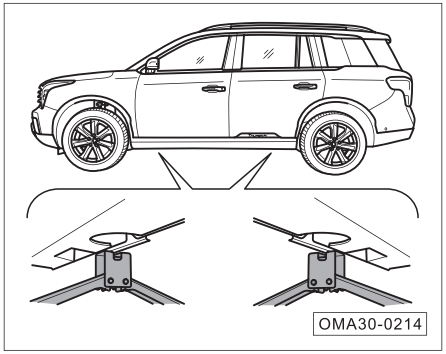


Take dismounting wrench for wheel bolts out of vehicle tool box. Loosen each wheel bolt 1 turn counterclockwise in direction of the arrow with the wheel bolt wrench.

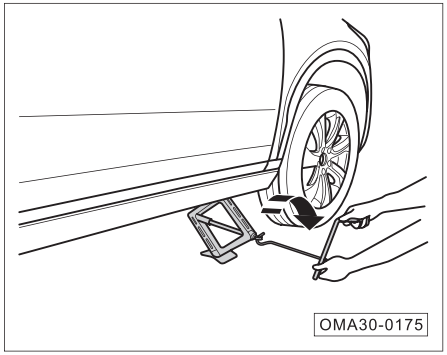
Warning

- Only loosen each wheel bolt 1 turn before using the jack to lift up the vehicle.
- Only use the wheel bolt wrench to unscrew the wheel bolts.

Lifting the Vehicle



– Find the jacking point nearest the flat tire. Place the jack under the jacking point.
– Raise the jack until its notch contacts the jacking point on the bottom of the vehicle body.



– Check whether the jack is placed steadily and fits the ground tightly.
– Assemble the spanner for disassembling wheel bolt, special spanner for jack, and jack.
– Lift the jack in direction of the arrow to lift the vehicle and make the tire off the ground.

Note

After loosen the bolts of the flat tire, execute lifting and other subsequent replacement operations, so as to be convenient for wheel bolt disassembly.

Warning

- Make sure the jack is used on firm and level ground.
- Make sure the jack is placed under the proper jacking point.
- Follow the precautions for operating the jack.
- Disconnect your vehicle from the trailer (if equipped).
- When you raise the vehicle, continually observe the condition of the vehicle. If you observe the vehicle inclines obviously, stop raising it and find out the cause before trying again.

Removing the Flat Tire

– Remove the wheel bolts with the wrench with the tire off the ground.

– Removing the Flat Tire

Installing the Spare Tire

– Mount the spare tire on the vehicle.

– Put all wheel bolts back, then tighten them with the wheel bolts wrench and pre-tighten them.

– Put the vehicle down.

– Use the dismounting wrench for wheel bolts to tighten all wheel bolts.

Note

- Tighten them in accordance with diagonal sequence.
- After installing the wheel, go to our vehicle sales and service shop to inspect the tightening torque of wheel bolts as soon as possible (which is 125±10N•m)

Warning

Keep the threads of the wheel bolts and hub clean, and make sure the bolts can be screwed easily. No grease or other attachment is permitted.

Notification of Tire Replacement

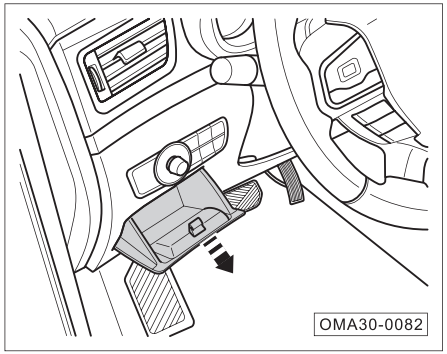
- The replaced tire shall be timely and correctly placed into the spare tire installation position.
- Clean the tools and store the tools to original position after use.
- Check the wheel bolts torque as soon as possible.
- Change the damaged tire as soon as possible.
- When replacing the tire, if any bolt is corroded or difficult to screw, replace it before checking the wheel bolt torque, and clean the threaded hole.

Note

The spare tire/ replaced tire must be securely fixed on the spare tire installation position.

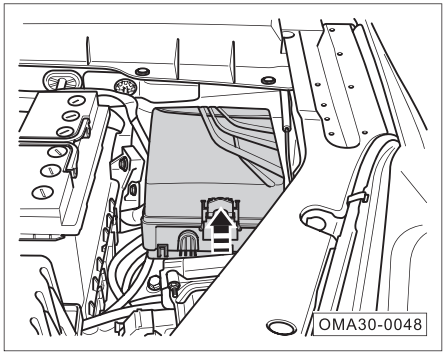
6.4 Fuse

Instrument Panel Fuse Box



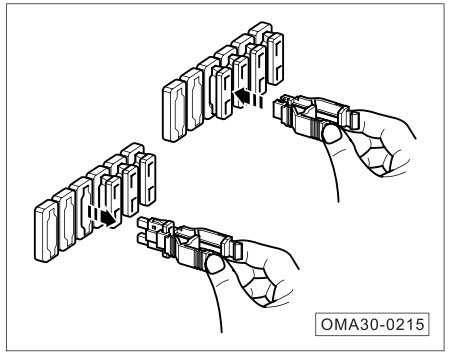
– Open and withdraw the storage box on lower guard plate of the driving cab in direction of the arrow, you will see the fuse on the instrument panel electric box.

Fuse Box of Engine Compartment



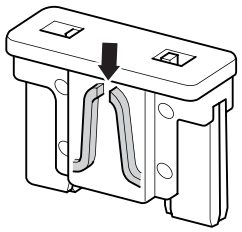
– Open the engine hood (Please refer to page 102)
– Press the fixing clip in direction of the arrow and release fuse box cover.
– Remove the fuse box cover upward, and then you can see the fuses on the electrical box of the engine compartment.

Replacing the Fuse.



– Use the fuse extractor in the fuse box of engine compartment to extract or install fuse.

Fuse Blown



– If the fuse is broken (as indicated by the arrow), replace with a new fuse with same color and identification (our vehicle sales and service shop is recommended for replacement).

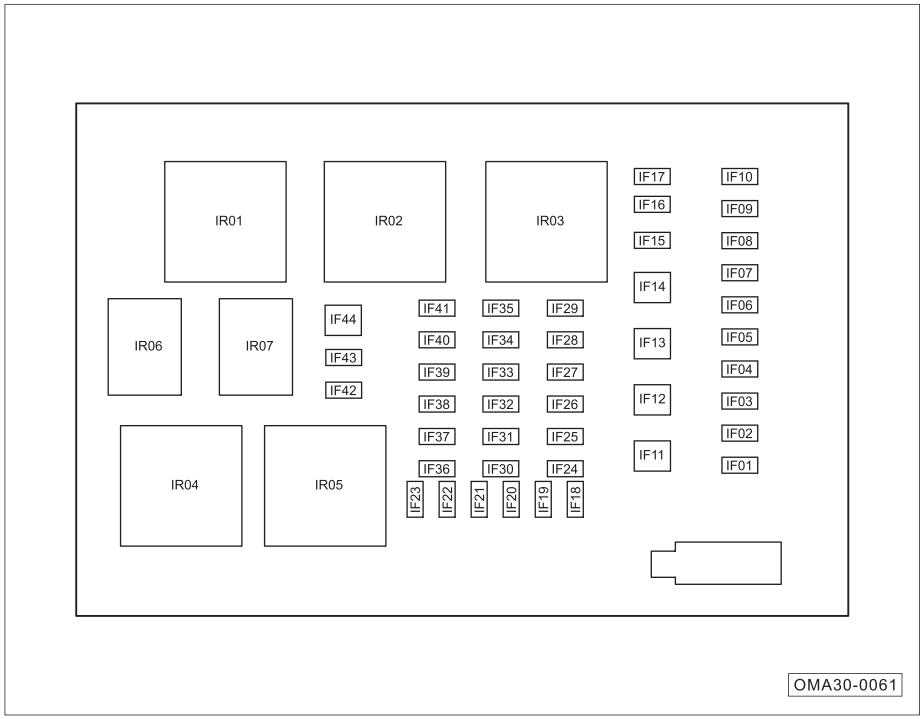
Warning

- Do not reuse any fuse.
- Do not use the fuse whose rated current value is higher than the specified value. Otherwise, other components of the electrical system may be damaged.
- Make sure the color and mark of the replaced fuse are the same as those of the original one.
- Do not use a sheet metal, paper clip to replace the fuse.
- Keep the inside of the fuse box clean and dry.

Note

Turn off all the electrical equipment before replacing the fuses.

6.4.1 Fuses in the Instrument Panel Fuse Box



The pictures do not apply to all vehicle models; please check the purpose of fuse on the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
IF01	SHORT PIN	Short splice
IF02	20A	Body control module (lamplight power supply)
IF03	7.5A	Gateway Control Unit
IF04	10A	Body control module (turn signal power supply)
IF05	15A	Four-wheel drive ECU
IF06	15A	Electric Sunroof/Panorama Sunroof/Seat Motor on Front Passenger's Side
IF07	10A	Rear courtesy lamp/sunroof visor/ front left courtesy lamp/rearview mirror folding relay
IF08	10A	Filler cap locking relay
IF09	20A	Sound System Control Unit
IF10	10A	brake Switch/TCU/Gearshift Lever
IF11	30A	DC-DC Converter

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
IF12	–	–
IF13	20A	Front right window lifting motor/ rear right window lifting motor
IF14	30A	ACC Relay/IG1 Relay
IF15	15A	Front Left Seat Control Unit
IF16	7.5A	OBD Diagnosis Interface
IF17	10A	Instrument Cluster/Front Central Console Panel/T-Box Control Unit/Memory Seat Control Unit/ Panorama Parking Control Unit
IF18	20A	Electric hatchback door control unit
IF19	15A	Body Control Module
IF20	20A	Front left door window lifting motor/front rear door window lifting motor/left courtesy lamp
IF21	7.5A	Electronic stability and parking control module/tire pressure control unit/high brake light/ all-terrain selector switch
IF22	20A	Body control module (door lock power)
IF23	25A	Gearshift Lever, AT Control Unit

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
IF24	25A	Power Amplifier
IF25	7.5A	Front 12V auxiliary power supply/ rear 12V auxiliary power supply/ cigarette lighter
IF26	10A	Smart phone wireless charging module/ memory seat control unit/front central console panel/ exterior rear-view mirror regulating switch/ auxiliary dashboard switch/audio control unit
IF27	20A	220V auxiliary power supply
IF28	7.5A	Anion Generator
IF29	10A	Air quality sensor/front blower relay/rear blower relay/interior rear-view mirror/PEPS control unit/defog relay
IF30	7.5A	Lane Departure Pre-warning Control Unit/Front Left Combination Headlight/Front Right Combination Headlight/ Front Pre-warning Brake Control Unit/Steering Wheel Heating Relay/Panorama Parking Control Unit/Radar Reversing Control Unit

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
IF31	10A	Rainfall and light intensity sensor/sunroof control unit/ sun shade motor/headlight automatic adjustment control unit/ T-BOX control unit/combination instrument/front air conditioner control unit/rear air conditioner control unit/electric hatchback door/ front left seat control unit/ auxiliary dashboard switch block
IF32	7.5A	Instrument Cluster, Front Central Console Panel Switch, Rear Central Console Panel, Body Control Module
IF33	7.5A	Air bag restraint system control unit/all-terrain selector switch/ tire pressure control unit/ electric power steering control unit/ electronic stability system and parking control module/ brake switch/left instrument panel switch block
IF34	10A	Airbag Control Unit
IF35	7.5A	Gearshift Lever/Engine Control Unit/AT Control Unit

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
IF36	–	–
IF37	7.5A	PEPS Control Unit
IF38	7.5A	PEPS Control Unit/Front Left Door Handle/Front Left Door Window Movement Switch/Front Right Door Handle
IF39	7.5A	Smart ambient light control unit/ front air conditioner control unit/ trunk light/electric hatchback door closing switch/electric hatchback door control unit/ headlight automatic adjustment control unit/multi-function touch display screen
IF40	20A	Front left seat control unit (seat heating power supply)
IF41	15A	Body Control Module
IF42	–	–
IF43	7.5A	Exterior rear-view mirror Heater
IF44	30A	Rear defogger
IR01	–	IG2 Relay
IR02	–	ACC Relay
IR03	–	IG1 Relay

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
IR04	–	ACC Relay
IR05	–	Defogging Relay
IR06	–	Exterior Rear-view Foldable Relay
IR07	–	Exterior Rear-view Adjusting Relay

Hint

One electric appliance may be equipped with multiple fuses, or several electric appliances share a common fuse.

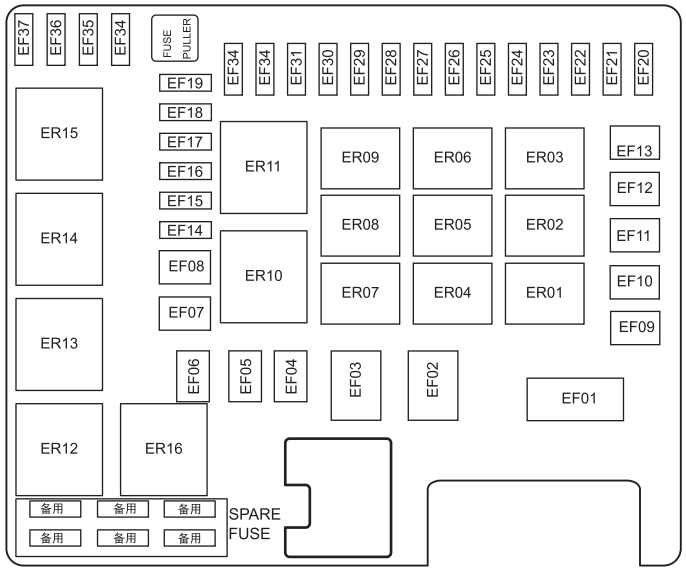
Note

Some fuses must be replaced by our vehicle sales and service shop; consult our vehicle sales and service shop for the detailed information.

Warning

Using an inappropriate or repaired fuse can cause a fire or personal injury or death.

6.4.2 Fuse in the Fuse Box of Engine Compartment



The pictures do not apply to all vehicle models; please check the purpose of fuse on the real vehicle. The fuses depend on the vehicle model.

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
EF01	150A	Main Fuse
EF02	80A	Electrical Power Steering (EPS) Control Unit
EF03	80A	Instrument panel fuse box 2
EF04	50A	Electric Fan
EF05	30A	Rear Blower
EF06	–	–
EF07	–	–
EF08	20A	Front Blower
EF09	40A	Electronic Stability Program and Parking Control Unit 2
EF10	50A	Instrument panel fuse box 1
EF11	40A	Electronic Stability Program and Parking Control Unit 1
EF12	30A	Starter
EF13	–	–

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
EF14	–	–
EF15	–	–
EF16	15A	Steering Wheel Heating Relay
EF17	7.5A	A/C Compressor
EF18	–	–
EF19	–	–
EF20	15A	Fuel Pump
EF21	20A	Front Wiper
EF22	7.5A	Engine Control Unit
EF23	15A	Horn
EF24	7.5A	Battery Sensor
EF25	–	–
EF26	15A	High beam light
EF27	–	–
EF28	SHORT PIN	Short splice
EF29	SHORT PIN	Short splice
EF30	10A	Fuel Injector
EF31	15A	Ignition Coil/Fuel Pump

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
EF32	10A	Engine Control Unit
EF33	10A	Oxygen Sensor/A/C Compressor Relay/Electronic Fan Relay/ Starter Relay 1
EF34	10A	Front Left Low-beam Light
EF35	10A	Front Right Low-beam Light
EF36	7.5A	Engine Control Unit/DC-DC Converter
EF37	10A	Eduction valve/ throttle valve/ carbon canister solenoid valve/ variable cam timing (air inlet end)/ variable cam timing (exhaust end)
ER01	–	Wiper Relay
ER02	–	Wiper speed regulation relay
ER03	–	Fuel Pump Relay
ER04	–	Steering Wheel Heating Relay
ER05	–	–
ER06	–	Horn Relay
ER07	–	Low-beam Light Relay
ER08	–	A/C Compressor Relay
ER09	–	High-beam Light Relay
ER10	–	Starter Relay 2

No.	Rated Value	Function/Components
ER11	–	Main Relay
ER12	–	Electronic Fan Relay
ER13	–	–
ER14	–	Front Blower Relay
ER15	–	Rear Blower Relay
ER16	–	Starter Relay 1

Hint

One electric appliance may be equipped with multiple fuses, or several electric appliances share a common fuse.

Note

Some fuses must be replaced by our vehicle sales and service shop; consult our vehicle sales and service shop for the detailed information.

Warning

Using an inappropriate or repaired fuse can cause a fire or personal injury or death.

6.5 Emergency Start

Jumper Cable

If you can not start the vehicle because of low battery energy, you can use the jumper cable to connect with booster vehicle's battery and start the engine.

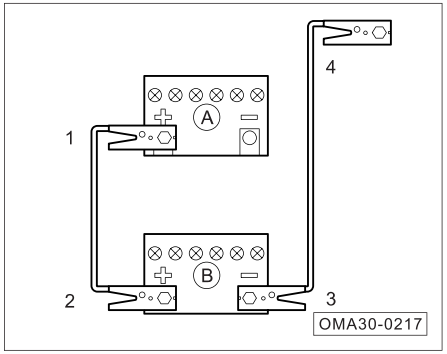
Note

When jump starting, two cars can not contact with each other. Otherwise, once the positive terminals of the two batteries are connected, the current is turned on immediately.

Warning

- Engine compartment is a dangerous area. Improper operation may cause injuries or deaths.
- Before the operation of storage battery, be sure to carefully read and observe the safety warning descriptions related to storage battery operation.

Connect the positive terminals of the batteries before connecting the negative ones.



– Switch the Start switch to "OFF" gear.
– Connect one end (-1-) of the red cable to the positive electrode (+) of "A" of the storage battery with power loss, and connect the other end (-2-) to the positive electrode (+) of "B" of the power supplying storage battery.
– Connect one end (-3-) of black cable to the negative electrode of "B" of the power supplying storage battery, and connect the other end (-4-) to the engine cylinder block or the metal components securely connecting with the engine cylinder block of "A" of the storage battery with power

loss.

Note

Place the jumper cables in position to prevent them from touching the moving parts of the engine.

– Start the engine on the booster vehicle and let it idle, and then start the engine on the disabled vehicle until the engine runs smoothly.

Warning

- Do not remove the jumper cables until the headlights have been turned off.
- Turn on the air blower and rear windshield heater in the vehicle with the disabled battery to reduce the voltage peak resulting from removing the cables.
- Once your engine is running, disconnect the jumper cable in reverse sequence.

Warning

A battery can explode if you can not use the jumper cable properly, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

- Make sure the voltage of the booster battery is equal to that of the disabled battery, and the capacity of the booster battery is similar to that of the disabled battery. Otherwise, it may cause explosion.
- Keep open flames away from the battery to avoid explosion.
- Do not connect the negative cable to the negative terminal of the disabled battery. Make sure there is no static near the battery. Otherwise, combustible gas produced by the battery can be ignited by sparks, causing explosion.
- Do not connect the negative cable to the fuel system component or brake pipe. During operation, do not face the battery to avoid acid burns.

6.6 Emergency Towing

The front and rear parts of the vehicle are both provided with emergency traction port of threaded hole structure, to which the tow hook (a driver's tool) can be installed for traction operation.

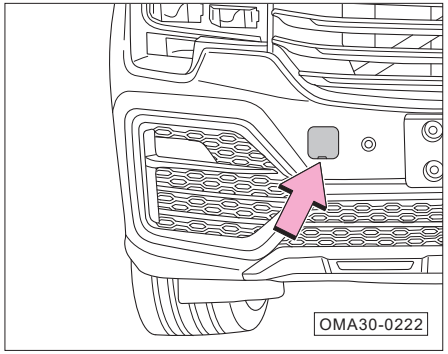
Hint

The tow hook shall be placed on the vehicle so as to be used when needed.

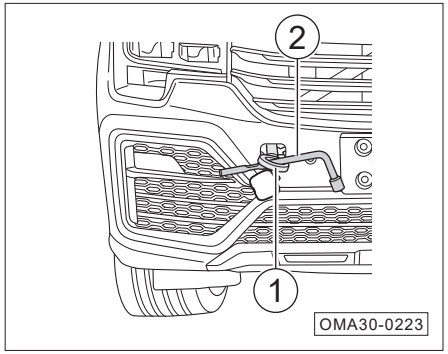
Warning

The emergency traction operation of the vehicle has certain risk. Unless you have the experience, do not tow other vehicle to avoid accidents.

Install Front Towing Hook

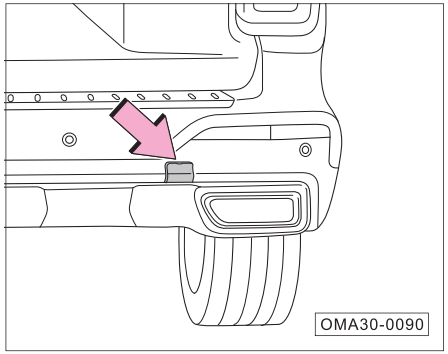


– Take out the towing hook and wheel bolt disassembling wrench from the driver's tool box in the trunk.
– Use finger to push hard the triangle position of the towing hook cover in direction of the arrow to make it cock, and then move the tow hook cover away.

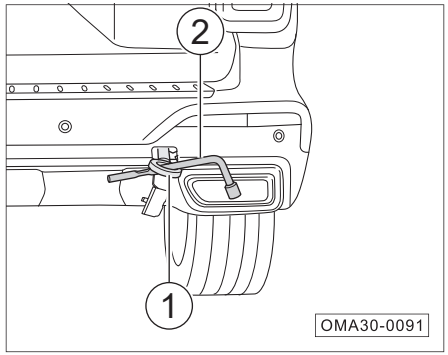


– Screw the towing hook (1) into the threaded hole clockwise.
– Insert the spanner for disassembling wheel bolt (2) into the draw hook port, rotate the spanner clockwise to securely screw the draw hook into the threaded hole.

Install Rear Towing Hook



– Take out the towing hook and wheel bolt disassembling wrench from the driver's tool box in the trunk.
– Use flathead screwdriver to pry the draw hook cover at the position of the arrow.



– Screw the towing hook (1) into the threaded hole clockwise.
– Insert the spanner for disassembling wheel bolt (2) into the draw hook port, rotate the spanner clockwise to securely screw the draw hook into the threaded hole.

Precautions for Traction

Before emergency traction, be sure to operate according to the following matters:

- The drivers of the towing and towed vehicles must turn on the hazard warning indicator lights, and must observe the local traffic regulations.
- The tow hook must be securely screwed into the threaded hole. Otherwise, the tow hook may slip from the threaded hole during traction process.
- The towed vehicle must have its shift lever on “N” gear.
- The towed vehicle shall have its Start switch on “ON” gear. Rotate the steering wheel back and forth to confirm the steering lock does not lock the steering wheel.

During the emergency traction process, be sure to operate according to the following matters:

- Start and move slowly until the tow rope strains, and then accelerate gradually.
- Travel smoothly, and do not accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply.
- Always remember that the brake booster and steering booster of the towed vehicle will not work. Normally, press the brake pedal in advance but press it slightly.
- During the traction operation, the tow rope must always be strained.

If the vehicle transmission suffers oil leakage, during the emergency traction, the vehicle can only lift the driving wheel for traction, and:

- Cannot tow at a speed higher than 50km/h.
- The maximum towing distance shall be 50km.

⚠ Warning

- The oil pump of transmission cannot work when the engine is off, if the driving wheel rotates on the ground, the transmission will be at a working condition of poor lubrication when the vehicle is towed at a higher speed and for a long distance, which will damage the transmission.
- Please do not lift the rear traction of the vehicle, otherwise the wheel will rotate backwards, and the gear in transmission will reach a very high rotating speed, causing serious damage to the transmission within a short time.

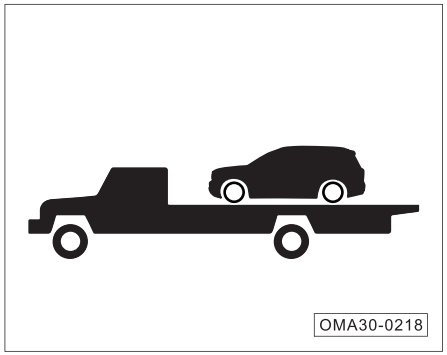
Towing

If your car has an accident and requires to be towed, we suggest using platform truck to tow your car. If it is not available, you can also use wheeled truck to tow your car if necessary.

Select proper towing method according to configuration and fault condition of your car. But the following precautions must be notified:

- Contact our vehicle sales and service shop or the professional towing company for towing, and do not tow the vehicle by yourself without full confidence, otherwise the vehicle is very easy to be damaged.
- All towing methods require the use of safety chain system and comply with relevant traffic law.
- You must tow your car according to the specification; otherwise it may cause the damage to your car and threaten traffic safety.

Tow Car with a Platform Truck

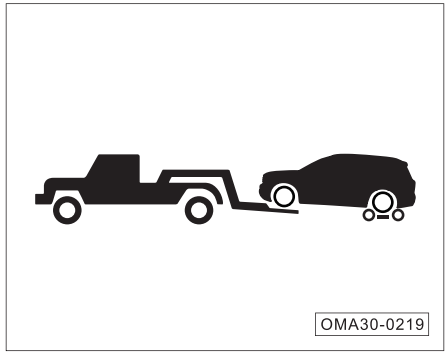


This towing method is applicable to all models of fault cars. We suggest using this method as much as possible.

Note

Pay attention to apply parking brake and fix four wheels, to prevent vehicle from moving during emergent braking when towing the car.

Tow Car from the Front by Using Wheeled Truck

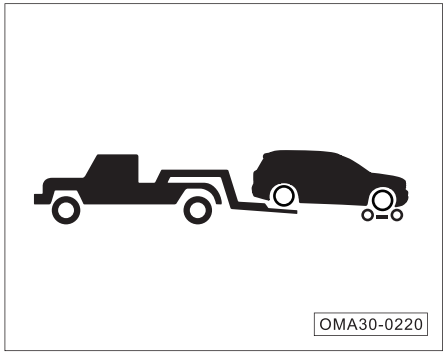


If your vehicle's rear wheels and rear axle are damaged, the towing platform needs to be placed beneath your vehicle's rear wheels.

Note

- For cars equipped with electronic parking brake (EPB) or four-wheel drive cars, when towing them, towing platform must be placed under the rear wheel. Otherwise, components like the brake, tires and four-wheel transmission system are easily damaged.
- When lifting the front part of the vehicle, guarantee that appropriate ground clearance shall be reserved for the rear part, otherwise the outer cover of rear bumper or underbody of the dragged vehicle may be damaged.

Tow the Car from the Rear by Using Wheeled Truck

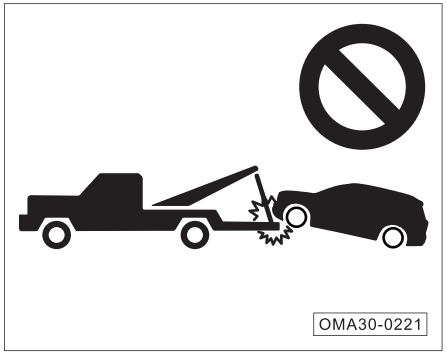


If your vehicle's front wheels and front axle are damaged, the towing platform needs to be placed beneath your vehicle's front wheels.

Note

Do not tow the vehicle with the front wheel down to the ground, which will seriously damage the transmission

Lifting Truck is Strictly Forbidden to Use.



Don't use lifting truck to tow the car from the front or rear of the car; otherwise, it may cause damage to the body.

7.1 Type Approval Number

S/N	Vehicle Type	Type approval number
1	GAC6480J2F5	CN QQ G5 Z2 0B820097
2	GAC6480J2F5A	CN QQ G5 Z2 0B820098
3	GAC6480J2F5B	CN QQ G5 Z2 0B820099
4	GAC6480J2F5C	CN QQ G5 Z2 0B820100

Note: when referring to type approval information, please follow corresponding serial number.

7.2 Type Approval Information

Type approval information	Name of Type			
	1	2	3	4
	GAC6480J2F5	GAC6480J2F5A	GAC6480J2F5B	GAC6480J2F5C
Engine Model /Manufacturer	4B20M1/GAC Motor Co.,ltd			
Catalytic converter model /manufacturer	Front: 1790232X; rear: 1790232X/ Front: Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company; rear: Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company Carrier: front: unit 1: NGK (Suzhou) Environmental Ceramics Co., Ltd.; rear: unit 1: Corning (Shanghai) Co., Ltd. Coating: front: unit 1: Umicore Automobile Catalysts (Suzhou) Co., Ltd.; rear: unit 1: Umicore Automobile Catalysts (Suzhou) Co., Ltd. Encapsulation: front: Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company; rear: Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company			
Fuel evaporative control device model / Manufacturer	2140003BAL00/Guangdong Hengbo Filter Co., Ltd.			
Oxygen sensor model /Manufacturer	Front: LSF4; rear: LSF4/United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.			
Crankcase emission control device/ Manufacturer	10090082040000/Ningbo Shentong Moulding Co., Ltd.			
EGR Model /Manufacturer	/			
OBD Model /Manufacturer	ME17/United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.			
IUPR / NOX monitoring	Yes/Yes			

Type approval information	Name of Type			
	1	2	3	4
	GAC6480J2F5	GAC6480J2F5A	GAC6480J2F5B	GAC6480J2F5C
ECU Model /Manufacturer	ME17/United Automotive Electronic Systems Co., Ltd.			
Transmission model /Number of gear positions	Auto/6	Auto/6	Auto/6	Auto/6
Muffler model /Manufacturer	Front silencer: 1741828X; rear silencer: 1741878X/Faurecia (Guangzhou) Automobile Parts and Systems Co., Ltd. Sanshui Branch Company			
Turbocharger Model /Manufacturer	K03/BorgWarner Automobile Parts (Ningbo) Co., Ltd.			
Intercooler Type	/			

This manual describes relevant information related to configurations, functions, performance parameters and product schematic drawings of GS8 cars. Its contents are effective when printing is allowed. But actual car configurations and functions are subject to actually delivered cars. If there is any difference between the product schematic drawing and actual car, the actual one should prevail.

GAC MOTOR reserves the right to alter, supplement or terminate the contents or technical specifications in this manual without further notification.

All copyright is reserved by GAC MOTOR. Without written permission by GAC MOTOR, no printing and extracting of all or part contents of this manual is allowed.

GAC MOTOR CO., LTD.

Address: No. 60 Donglong Road, Panyu District,
Guangzhou, P.R. China
Postcode: 511434
Customer service hotline: 400-158-9999